

---

To my parents, to whom I owe everything and more.

---

---

Greek: A New Grammar

**Book of Exercises**

Juan Coderch

---

Greek: A New Grammar

**Book of Exercises**

First Edition

© 2016 by Juan Coderch

All rights reserved. This book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law.

ISBN: 978-0-9571387-1-1

Printed by CreateSpace (South Carolina, United States)

---

# Greek: A New Grammar

## Book of Exercises

The numbers make reference to the numbered paragraphs, not to the pages.

### **Preface**

### **ALPHABET AND WRITING**

- a) The alphabet [1]
- b) Pronunciation of diphthongs and special combinations [2]
- c) Iota subscript [3]
- d) Accents [4]
- e) Breathings [5]
- f) Elision, crasis and diaeresis [6]
- g) Punctuation marks [7]

### **THE NOMINAL SYSTEM**

#### **a) Definition of basic grammatical concepts: case, declension and gender**

- 1. Concepts of syntactical function, endings and case [8]
- 2. Main syntactical functions and correspondence to cases [9]
- 3. Concept of declension [10]
- 4. Concept of gender [11]

#### **b) The definite article**

- 1. Accidence [12]
- 2. Syntax [13]

#### **c) Declensions**

- 1. 1<sup>st</sup> declension [14]
- 2. 2<sup>nd</sup> declension [15]
- 3. 3<sup>rd</sup> declension [16]
- Exercises for all declensions [17]

#### **d) Adjectives**

- 1. 1<sup>st</sup> class of adjectives [18]
- 2. 2<sup>nd</sup> class of adjectives [19]
- 3. 3<sup>rd</sup> class of adjectives [20]
- 4. Irregular adjectives [21]
- 5. Position of the adjective [22]

#### **e) Numeral adjectives**

- 1. Cardinals [23]
- 2. Ordinals [24]
- 3. Multiplicatives [25]

#### **f) Comparative and superlative**

- 1. (unapplied in this book)
- 2. Accidence [26]
- 3. Syntax [27]

#### **g) Pronouns**

- 1. Demonstrative pronouns [28]
- 2. Personal pronouns [29]
- 3. Possessive pronouns [30]
- 4. Reciprocal pronoun [31]
- 5. Anaphoric pronoun [32]
- 6. Identity pronouns [33]
- 7. Reflexive pronouns [34]
- 8. Interrogative pronoun [35]
- 9. Other interrogative pronouns [36]
- 10. Relative pronoun [37]
- 11. Indefinite relative pronoun [38]
- 12. Other indefinite pronouns [39]
- 13. Negative pronouns [40]

#### **h) Adverbs and prepositional adverbs**

- 1. (unapplied in this book)
- 2. Modal adverbs [41]
- 3. Comparative and superlative of modal adverbs [42]
- 4. Quantitative adverbs [43]
- 5. Adverbs of time [44]
- 6. Adverbs of place [45]
- 7. Interrogative adverbs [46]
- 8. Indefinite adverbs [47]
- 9. Affirmative and negative adverbs [48]
- 10. Prepositional adverbs [49]
- Exercises on all kinds of adverbs [50]

#### **i) The correlatives**

- 1. Correlative adverbs [51]
- 2. Correlative adjectives [52]

---

## THE VERBAL SYSTEM

### a) General observations

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. The tenses [53]
3. The moods [54]
4. The voices [55]
5. Formation of tenses (all voices) [56]
6. Formation of moods (all voices) [57]
7. Types of verbs [58]

### b) Verbs in -ω: vocalic verbs

1. Non-contract verbs [59]
2. Study of augment and reduplication [60]
3. Contract verbs [61]

### c) Verbs in -ω: consonantal and liquid verbs

1. Consonantal verbs [62]
2. Liquid verbs [63]

### d) Verbs in -ω: important phenomena

1. Strong tenses [64]
2. Deponent tenses [65]
3. A perfect with present meaning [66]
4. Other presents and perfects with swapped meanings [67]
5. Double tenses [68]

### e) Verbs in -μι: observations and verbs with reduplication

1. General observations [69]
2. Verbs with reduplication in the present [70]

### f) Verbs in -μι: verbs with suffix -νυ- and stem verbs

1. Verbs with suffix -νυ- in the present [71]
2. Stem verbs: without reduplication and suffix [72]

### g) Overview of irregularities and peculiar constructions

1. Overview of irregularities [73]
2. Peculiar constructions [74]

### h) Compound verbs

1. Compound verbs with ἀμφί, ἀνά, ἀντί and ἀπό [75]
2. Compound verbs with διά, εἰς, ἐκ and ἐν ... etc. [76]  
[77-79]

## SYNTAX OF CASES

### a) Use of cases

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Nominative [80]
3. Vocative [81]
4. Accusative [82]
5. Genitive [83]
6. Dative [84]

### b) Prepositions

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Prepositions of one case [85]
3. Prepositions of two cases [86]
4. Prepositions of three cases [87]
- Exercises (into Greek) for all prepositions [88]

### c) Expressions of time and place

1. Expressions of time [89]
2. Expressions of place [90]

### d) Regime of verbs and adjectives

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Verbs that rule genitive or dative [91]
3. Adjectives followed by genitive or dative [92]
4. Appendix: Adjectives followed by infinitive or participle [93]

## SYNTAX OF CLAUSES

### a) Simple clauses

1. Describing real actions [94]
2. Expressing potential actions [95]
3. Expressing commands and prohibitions [96]
4. Expressing wishes [97]
5. Asking questions [98]
6. Impersonal verbs [99]

### b) Subordinate clauses

1. The concept of oblique optative [100]
2. Causal clauses [101]
3. Purpose clauses [102]
4. Temporal clauses [103]
5. Concessive clauses [104]
6. Result clauses [105]
7. Conditional clauses [106]
8. Relative clauses [107]
9. Comparative clauses [108]
10. Fear clauses [109]
11. Indefinite clauses [110]
12. Proviso clauses [111]

### c) Infinitive clauses

1. Which verbs use the infinitive and how? [112]
2. Which tense of infinitive? [113]
3. Where there is no change of subject [114]
4. Infinitive with article [115]
5. Infinitive after verbs of negative idea [116]
6. Infinitive absolute [117]
7. (unapplied in this book)
8. Infinitive with ᾶν [118]

### d) Participle clauses

1. Participle with article [119]
2. Participle without article [120]
3. The participle is impersonal [121]
4. The temporal correlation [122]
5. Verbs that usually require a participle [123]
6. Adjectives that usually require a participle [124]
7. Genitive absolute [125]
8. Accusative absolute [126]
9. Participle with ᾶν [127]

### e) Indirect speech

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Indirect statement clauses [128]
3. Indirect command clauses [129]
4. Indirect question clauses [130]
5. Subordinate clauses in indirect speech [131]

### f) Verbal adjectives

1. Ending in -τέος, -τέα, -τέον [132]
2. Ending in -τός, -τή, -τόν [133]

### g) Combination of negatives

1. Negatives cancelling or reinforcing each other? [134]
2. Other combinations of negatives side by side [135]

### h) The use of particles

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Most common particles [136]

### i) Hellenisms: peculiarities and idioms

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Non-verbal expressions [137]
3. Verbal expressions [138]

## ALIA

### a) Elementary rules for accentuation

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Position of the accent [139]
3. Types of accent [140]
4. Position and kind of accent [141]
5. Changes in the accent [142]
6. General tendencies [143]
7. Enclitics [144]

### b) The dual

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. The article [145]
3. Declensions [146]
4. Pronouns [147]
5. Verbal forms [148]

### c) Homeric dialect

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Article [149]
3. Declensions [150]
4. Adjectives [151]
5. Pronouns [152]
6. Prepositions [153]
7. Spelling [154]
8. Suffixes [155]
9. Verbal forms [156]
10. Conjunctions [157]
11. Particle κέν [158]

### d) Words that are easily confused

1. Non-verbal forms [159]
2. Verbal forms [160]

## Preface

This Book of Exercises has been written as a companion to *Classical Greek: A New Grammar* (CG-ANG).

[Please note that we have deleted the word "Classical" from the title of this book of exercises; this is due to the fact that, with respect to the book of exercises that accompanies the Latin grammar, adding "Book of Exercises" to the title of the grammar itself produced two books with almost identical titles and this produced some confusion in the distribution channels. Starting the title of this book of exercises with a different word will prevent the problem.]

With its circa 1,000 exercises, it has the following advantages:

**a) It can be used as a stand alone resource:** Although it has been written taking the content of CG-ANG as point of reference, this does not mean that only students who are using CG-ANG can use this book of exercises: it has been written in such a way that any student who wants to practise and reinforce their grammar can make use of it, no matter what grammar or language course they have previously used. There are no cross-references to CG-ANG.

At the same time, we would like to remind readers that CG-ANG is a grammar book for consultation, not a textbook. Therefore, this book is well-suited to students who want to practise and reinforce their grammar, either in general or by going directly to some concrete points.

**b) This book can be used at any stage:** Students who have recently started studying Greek can easily cope with exercises relating to, for example, the declensions, adjectives, etc. More advanced students or students who have a basic knowledge of the language will be challenged by more difficult exercises (on indirect speech, for instance).

**c) Gradual difficulty:** As said above, this is a book for practising the language at the same time as reinforcing one's grammar. Although there was no intention to produce progressively difficult exercises, the traditional presentation of grammar makes it so. CG-ANG presents grammar in the usual order that all grammar books follow, beginning with declensions and working up to more complicated aspects, like subordinate clauses. It is quite understandable that exercises on indirect speech will be more difficult than those on the first declension, especially taking into account that a student seeking to practise indirect speech will have already covered the basics of the language.

**d) Type of exercises:** The exercises are varied in style, ranging from filling gaps to translation into both Greek and English. This ensures that the student's knowledge is tested thoroughly. It must be said that in many exercises the student is requested to complete a series of sentences either filling in the blanks with one of the suggested options, or changing a verbal form given in brackets, etc. In this kind of exercise we have avoided the usual command ordering the student to translate, as it is assumed that the exercise implies also reading and understanding the whole sentence, not just performing the requested action.

**e) Use of original authors:** A lot of exercises make use of original sentences (around 1850) taken from classical authors (as in CG-ANG, we have considered it unnecessary to add information about the chapter, the paragraph, the line, etc.). However, some of the sentences taken from classical authors may have been shortened in order to illustrate a grammatical point. It could be the case that, in the middle of a sentence, there was some additional language unnecessary for the illustration of that point. In this case, although the quotation and work of the classical author have been kept, this unnecessary information has been removed, as long as doing so did not affect the meaning of the



sentence. So, a sentence like αὐτοὶ οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἀπέδωσαν ταχέως τοῖς ἄρτι ἀφικομένοις Λακεδαιμονίοις τὸ τεῖχος selected for practising the adjective αὐτός can be found here as just αὐτοὶ οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἀπέδωσαν τὸ τεῖχος.

In other cases, some words may have been added in square brackets in order to make it easier for the student; for instance, the word ναῦς is supplied in a sentence like τὰς δὲ [ναῦς] ἀφικομένας εἶδον where the ships would have been mentioned in the former sentence but not repeated in the next one.

Examples that show no reference to any classical author have either been made up or were original sentences that have been adapted to such an extent that it is impossible to attribute them to the author.

**f) Parallelism with CG-ANG:** I have followed the same layout of chapters and points within chapters as in CG-ANG, in order to make it easier for any student who is using it. So, for instance, if adverbs of place are presented in CG-ANG in point 6 of chapter H on adverbs, the exercises about adverbs of place are also presented in point 6 of chapter H in the Book of Exercises. Some chapters in CG-ANG had an introductory point and, because there is no such introductory point in this book of exercises, I have left it with the indication “unapplied in this book”, in order to keep the CG-ANG number system throughout.

**g) Distribution of exercises:** You may notice that sometimes a long exercise has been divided into blocks by using the symbol ◇. For instance, an exercise that contains twelve sentences to be translated has been divided into two blocks of six each. Students work better with groups of five or six sentences rather than with a large block, and this will also allow teachers to distribute the exercises among groups of students more easily if desired.

## Acknowledgments

As this Book of Exercises is a continuation of CG-ANG, I must go on expressing my gratitude to two people who, by helping me to make CG-ANG possible, go on deserving to be mentioned here, even if they have not been directly involved in this book: Dan Batovici, who taught me how to deal with the practicalities of technology, and Geoffrey Steadman, without whose help and guidance in the procedures of POD none of these books would have seen the light.

The cover has been produced by the Reprographics Unit at the University of St Andrews.

It must be mentioned that a good amount of this Book of Exercises was written during my periods of stay at the Fondation Hardt, in Geneva. I would like to express my gratitude to the Fondation for providing me with some wonderful stays and an excellent working environment.

You can download a pdf with a *partial key* from this web site: <http://coderch-greek-latin-grammar.weebly.com>

Juan Coderch

St Andrews, May 2016

## Alphabet and writing

### a) The alphabet

[1]

1/ Write the whole alphabet (in Greek order), both in capitals and lower case, and with the English name for each letter:

<i>Capital / Lower case</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Capital / Lower case</i>	<i>Name</i>

2/ Read aloud these words:

ΠΑΤΗΡ

ΕΥΡΩΠΗ

ΟΙΚΙΑ

ΤΡΟΙΑ

ΑΘΗΝΑΙ

ΦΙΛΟΣΟΦΙΑ

ΑΤΤΙΚΗ

ΓΥΜΝΑΣΙΟΝ

ΒΙΒΛΟΣ

ΑΡΙΣΤΟΤΕΛΗΣ

ΤΡΑΠΕΖΑ

ΤΗΛΕΜΑΧΟΣ

ΣΠΑΡΤΗ

ΨΗΦΟΛΟΓΙΑ

ΠΕΛΟΠΟΝΝΗΣΟΣ

ΑΡΧΑΙΟΣ

ΚΟΣΜΟΣ

ΠΕΡΙΚΛΗΣ

ΠΟΛΙΣ

ΠΟΣΕΙΔΩΝ

3/ Write the words from Exercise 2 in lower case letters:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

4/ Read aloud and copy (in lower case letters) these words (pay attention only to the letters, elements above them will be explained later):

στρατηγός .....	ἀγαθή .....	γνώμη .....
γένεσις .....	ἔρχομαι .....	δυνατός .....
δάφνη .....	βαίνω .....	πλίνθος .....
ἔπαινος .....	διώκω .....	ξύλον .....
μῦθος .....	ἔχω .....	ψεῦδος .....
πρόβλημα .....	πέμπω .....	ζιζάνιον .....
βάρβαρος .....	ὀνομάζω .....	πέπλος .....
ἐλαφρά .....	καμάρα .....	ὀβολός .....
δίκαιος .....	πέτρα .....	σελήνη .....

5/ Write the first five words from Exercise 4 in capital letters:

.....

6/ Write these words (taken from the former exercises) in Greek alphabetical order:

ἐλαφρά δίκαιος ἀγαθή βαίνω ἔχω πέμπω ὀνομάζω πλίνθος ξύλον ψεῦδος ζιζάνιον πέπλος

.....

.....

.....

**b) Pronunciation of diphthongs and special combinations**

[2]

1/ Read aloud paying attention to the diphthongs (highlighted in bold):

αῦθις	λελυκυῖα	βουλή	εἰδέναι	ἄνθρωποι
ἄμαυρός	ψεῦδος	αὐτός	κουφός	κατηῦγμα
βασιλεύς	πευκή	μουσική	αἰτία	

2/ Read aloud paying attention to the double consonants (highlighted in bold):

Ἄχιλλεύς    βάλλω    Ἄπόλλων    πολλάκις.

3/ Read aloud paying attention to the combined consonants (highlighted in bold):

ἄγγελος    ἐγγύς    ἀναγκαῖος    ἐγγέω

**c) Iota subscript**

[3]

1/ Read aloud:

ἀγορᾶ    τῆ    σῶζω    διδασκάλω    ληισταῖς    τέχνη

2/ Write the words above in full capital letters:

.....

**d) Accents**

[4]

1/ Which are the three forms of accent in Greek?

.....

2/ Read aloud:

τούτους καὶ τοῦτο	πόλεις τινὰς καλὰς
Σωκράτης καὶ Περικλῆς	πατὴρ καὶ μήτηρ
τίνα καὶ τινά	καλῶν καὶ κακῶν

**e) Breathings**

[5]

1/ What is the only consonant that can have a breathing on it? .....

2/ Read these words aloud, all of which have a breathing:

ἀπό	ὀρμή	ἐθέλω	ἰσχάνω	ἰκετής
ἐμπόδισμα	ὑποτίθημι	ἀήρ	ὀπλίζω	ἐταιρικός
ἡμέρα	ἱερός	ὑπό	ἐκφεύγω	

3/ Read these words aloud, all of which start with a diphthong and have a breathing:

αὐτός	οὐδείς	εὐθύς	έορτή	αὐξάνω
εὐρίσκω	εἰρεσία	οἰκία	υἱός	εἰσαγγέλλω

4/ Read these words aloud, all of which present a combination of accent and breathing on the same vowel:

εἷς	ἴλαος	ὄντων	ἔλαφος	εἶμι	ἄθυμος
οἶνον	ὄμως	οὗτος	αἴτιος	εἶναι	αὔρα
ὄρνυμι	ἄμαξα	ὔστερον	ὄς	ὔδωρ	ἔτι
ἔν	ἔπειτα	ἔμπροσθεν	ἴημι	ὄτι	ἠὔρον

5/ Read these words aloud, all of which start with a capital letter and present a combination of accent and breathing:

Ἄτλας Ἀθῆναι Ἰκαρός Ἑλλάς Ὀμηρος Ἰπποκράτης

## f) Elision, crasis and diaeresis

[6]

1/ Make the elision and any necessary changes in the consonants between the words wherever possible:

ἀλλὰ ἡ πόλις	.....	ἀντὶ κακῶν	.....
ἀλλὰ τὸ νεώριον	.....	ἀντὶ ὧν	.....
μετὰ τῶν στρατιωτῶν	.....	οὐδὲ αἱ πόλεις	.....
μετὰ αὐτοῦ	.....	ταῦτα ὑμῖν	.....
μετὰ ὑμῶν	.....	ἐπὶ αὐτοῦς	.....
οὐδέποτε οἰκία	.....	ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους	.....
οὐδέποτε ὄρος	.....	ἐπὶ ἡμῶν	.....
ἀντὶ ἀγαθῶν	.....	ὁ δὲ ἀνήρ	.....

2/ Reverse the process and put the words back into their original state:

ἐφ' ὅσον	.....	οὐδέποθ' ἡμέρα	.....
ἐφ' ἑαυτόν	.....	ἀνθ' ἑνός	.....
ἐπ' ὠφελία	.....	ἀντ' εἰρήνης	.....
ἐπ' ἀλλήλους	.....	ταῦθ' ἡμεῖς	.....
οὐδ' ὁ ἀνὴρ	.....	ἀλλ' ἀπράκτους	.....
μεθ' ὀπλων	.....	ἀλλ' ἐπειδή	.....
μεθ' ἀπάντων	.....	ἀλλ' ἱκανοί	.....
μετ' Ἀχιλλέως	.....	οἱ δ' ἄνθρωποι	.....
μετ' αὐτόν	.....		

3/ Link the contractions of the columns with their original forms offered here:

τὰ ἄλλα / τὰ ἀληθῆ / τὰ ἐπί / ἐγὼ οἶδα / καὶ ἔπειτα / καὶ ὅταν / καὶ ἀγαθοί / ὁ αὐτός / καὶ εἶτα / τὸ ἰμάτιον / τὰ ἄνω / τὸ αὐτό / καὶ οὐχί / οἱ ἐμοί / καὶ ὥσπερ / τοῦ ὀνόματος

ἐγῶδα	.....	θοῖμάτιον	.....	χῶσπερ	.....
τάπι	.....	οὐμοί	.....	χῶταν	.....
τοῦνόματος	.....	τᾶνω	.....	κάπειτα	.....
κάγαθοί	.....	ταυτό	.....	τάληθῆ	.....
αὐτός	.....	κούχι	.....		
κᾶτα	.....	τᾶλλα	.....		

g) Punctuation marks

[7]

Read these phrases aloud, paying attention to the punctuation marks:

- ἀλλὰ τί ποιεῖς;
- δεῦρο ἐλθέ, ὦ παῖ.
- ὁ Σωκράτης εἶπεν· ποῖ βαίνεις;
- διὰ τί οὐ βούλει τοῦτο ποιεῖν, καίπερ ἀγαθὸν ὄν;
- τοῦτο κακόν ἐστιν· οὐ βούλομαι τοῦτο ποιεῖν.



## THE NOMINAL SYSTEM

### a) Definition of basic grammatical concepts: case, declension and gender

1. Concepts of syntactical function, endings and case
2. Main syntactical functions and correspondence to cases
3. Concept of declension
4. Concept of gender

### b) The definite article

1. Accidence
2. Syntax

### c) Declensions

1. 1<sup>st</sup> declension
  2. 2<sup>nd</sup> declension
  3. 3<sup>rd</sup> declension
- Exercises for all declensions

### d) Adjectives

1. 1<sup>st</sup> class of adjectives
2. 2<sup>nd</sup> class of adjectives
3. 3<sup>rd</sup> class of adjectives
4. Irregular adjectives
5. Position of the adjective

### e) Numeral adjectives

1. Cardinals
2. Ordinals
3. Multiplicatives

### f) Comparative and superlative

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Accidence
3. Syntax

### g) Pronouns

1. Demonstrative pronouns
2. Personal pronouns
3. Possessive pronouns
4. Reciprocal pronoun
5. Anaphoric pronoun
6. Identity pronouns
7. Reflexive pronouns
8. Interrogative pronoun
9. Other interrogative pronouns
10. Relative pronoun
11. Indefinite relative pronoun
12. Other indefinite pronouns
13. Negative pronouns

### h) Adverbs and prepositional adverbs

1. (unapplied in this book)
  2. Modal adverbs
  3. Comparative and superlative of modal adverbs
  4. Quantitative adverbs
  5. Adverbs of time
  6. Adverbs of place
  7. Interrogative adverbs
  8. Indefinite adverbs
  9. Affirmative and negative adverbs
  10. Prepositional adverbs
- Exercises on all kinds of adverbs

### i) The correlatives

1. Correlative adverbs
2. Correlative adjectives



a) Definition of basic grammatical concepts:  
case, declension and gender

**1. Concepts of *syntactical function, endings and case***

[8]

**a) Concepts of syntactical function and endings**

Choose the right option:

- In Greek, *syntactical function* is the role that a word plays in a sentence. TRUE / FALSE
- In Greek, the order of words tells us their function in the sentence. TRUE / FALSE
- In Greek, the first word of the sentence is always the subject. TRUE / FALSE
- In Greek, endings are used to indicate the syntactical function. TRUE / FALSE
- In Greek, endings can be changed without altering the meaning of the sentence. TRUE / FALSE

**b) Concept of case**

1/ Choose the right option:

- *Case* is the form that a noun can adopt. TRUE / FALSE
- *Case* is not indicated by endings. TRUE / FALSE
- *Case* is used to indicate syntactical function. TRUE / FALSE
- All nouns in Greek change their form according to only one pattern. TRUE / FALSE

2/ Name the five cases in Greek:

.....

.....

## 2. Main syntactical functions and correspondence to cases

[9]

### a) Main syntactical functions

1/ Explain what each of the seven following syntactical functions means and, for each one, write a sentence in English that includes a noun (for instance, the noun "teacher") in this function.

✧ You may need a preposition in some English sentences.

▷ *Subject:*

— It means .....

— Example: .....

▷ *Predicative object:*

— It means .....

— Example: .....

▷ *Addressed object:*

— It means .....

— Example: .....

▷ *Direct object:*

— It means .....

— Example: .....

▷ *Possessive object:*

— It means .....

— Example: .....

▷ *Indirect object:*

— It means .....

— Example: .....

▷ *Circumstantial object:*

— It means .....

— Example: .....

**2/ Observe this sentence:**

*The builder built a house for the general's father, who is a politician.*

What is the syntactical function of the following words?

- |                       |                  |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| ➤ the builder: .....  | ➤ father: .....  |
| ➤ the general: .....  | ➤ a house: ..... |
| ➤ a politician: ..... |                  |

**3/ Now do the same with this sentence:**

*Peter, give me the hammer; didn't you hear me? I must finish this table for the owner of the house.*

- |                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| ➤ Peter: .....      | ➤ me [give me]: ..... |
| ➤ you: .....        | ➤ me [hear me]: ..... |
| ➤ this table: ..... | ➤ the owner: .....    |
| ➤ the house: .....  |                       |

**4/ Read these sentences and choose the right option:**

- |   |                            |                         |                           |
|---|----------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| – <i>Do you see them?</i>                           | ▷ <i>them</i> is           | <b>a/</b> direct object | <b>b/</b> indirect object |
| – <i>Did you give them that?</i>                    | ▷ <i>them</i> is           | <b>a/</b> direct object | <b>b/</b> indirect object |
| – <i>Tell her that I will receive her tomorrow.</i> | ▷ The first <i>her</i> is  | <b>a/</b> direct object | <b>b/</b> indirect object |
|   | ▷ The second <i>her</i> is | <b>a/</b> direct object | <b>b/</b> indirect object |

**b) Correspondences between functions and cases****1/ Deduce the role a noun probably plays in a Greek sentence based on its case:**

<i>If the noun is in the...</i>	<i>it probably plays the role of...</i>
genitive	possessive object
nominative	.....
dative	.....
vocative	.....
accusative	.....

2/ Now do the opposite: write down what case you would use for each function:

For calling someone: ..... For indirect objects: .....

For predicative objects: ..... For possessive objects: .....

For direct objects: ..... For subjects: .....

3/ Analyze these sentences and say what syntactical function each element has and therefore in which case you would put it in Greek:

✧ *Example:* The god brings food for the general.

— *the god:* subject, nominative — *food:* direct object, accusative — *for the general:* indirect object, dative

• The book of the teacher is nice.

— *the book:* .....

— *of the teacher:* .....

— *nice:* .....

• Boy, he has your book.

— *boy:* .....

— *he:* .....

— *your book:* .....

• I say this to you.

— *I:* .....

— *this:* .....

— *to you:* .....

• She tells you this.

— *she:* .....

— *you:* .....

— *this:* .....

• They see the door of the house.

— *they:* .....

— *the door:* .....

— *of the house:* .....

• Children, are you ready?

— *children:* .....

— *you:* .....

— *ready:* .....

• The president of the country has two children

— *the president:* .....

— *of the country:* .....

— *two children:* .....

• He buys books for his friends.

— *he:* .....

— *books:* .....

— *for his friends:* .....

• Peter is the brother of my teacher  
(my teacher's brother).

— *Peter:* .....

— *the brother:* .....

— *of my teacher:* .....

**3. Concept of *declension***

[10]

a/ Briefly define the concept of declension:

.....  
.....

b/ What does "declining a word" mean?

.....  
.....

c/ How many declensions are there in Greek, and which is the most complex one?

.....  
.....

**4. Concept of *gender***

[11]

a/ How many genders are there in Greek? Name them:

.....  
.....

b/ How can you tell what gender a Greek noun is? Does it always follow logical patterns?

.....  
.....

## b) The definite article

### 1. Accidence

[12]

Write the declension of the article:

	singular			plural		
	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neuter</i>
Nom.	-	-	-	-	-	-
Acc.	-	-	-	-	-	-
Gen.	-	-	-	-	-	-
Dat.	-	-	-	-	-	-

### 2. Syntax

[13]

#### a) Differences with English use of articles

1/ Insert the article as appropriate, so that the Greek sentence means the same as the English. In some cases both options (with article or without it) could be acceptable: how would this change the meaning, if at all?

- τίς ..... δίκη; WHAT IS JUSTICE?
- ..... ἀνθρώπινη σοφία ὀλίγου τινοῦ ἀξία ἐστίν HUMAN WISDOM IS WORTHY OF JUST A LITTLE.
- οὐ ..... αὐτό ἐστιν, ἀλλὰ ..... ἐναντιώτατον IT IS NOT THE SAME, BUT THE MOST OPPOSITE.
- ..... τοῦτό ἐστι ..... δίκαιον καὶ ..... ἄδικον THIS IS JUSTICE AND INJUSTICE.
- ὃ δ' ἂν ..... θεοφιλὲς ἦ καὶ ..... θεομισῆς ἐστίν WHAT IS DEAR TO THE GODS IS ALSO HATED BY THE GODS.
- ..... θηρία ταχέα ἐστίν BEASTS ARE FAST.
- ..... ὕδωρ ἐστὶ πρὸς ..... ἡμετέραν χρείαν WATER IS FOR OUR USAGE.
- ἐν ..... πολέμῳ, ..... Περικλῆς ..... ἐλπὶς ταῖς Ἀθήναις ἦν DURING THE WAR, PERICLES WAS THE HOPE OF ATHENS.
- ὃ μὲν ἂν πάντες ..... θεοὶ μισῶσιν ..... ἀνόσιόν ἐστιν, ὃ δ' ἂν φιλοῦσιν, ..... ὅσιον WHAT ALL GODS HATE IS UNHOLY,  
AND WHAT THEY LOVE IS HOLY.

## 2/ Translate into Greek:

- War is bad, but peace is good.

.....

- The enemy are always cruel.

.....

- Those men are the clever ones.

.....

- Those men are clever.

.....

- Birds fly, humans walk.

.....

- Insolence is bad.

.....

## b) Article + adjective

## 1/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the words in bold:

- **τοῖς τρέχουσι** ἄθλον δίδομεν.
- φίλος εἰμὶ **τοῖς δικαίοις**.
- διαφέρουσι μάλιστα ἡμῶν **οἱ τε κακοὶ καὶ οἱ ἀγαθοὶ** (Plato, *Politicus*).
- κακῶς λέγουσιν **οἱ ἀγαθοὶ τοὺς κακοὺς** (Plato, *Euthydemus*).
- κατὰ τὸν σὸν λόγον πάντες ἄνθρωποι φιλοκερδεῖς ἂν εἶεν, καὶ **οἱ χρηστοὶ καὶ οἱ πονηροὶ** (Plato, *Hipparchus*).
- αὐτὸς δὲ καταβαίνων ἐκόλαζε **τοὺς πονηροὺς** τῶν στρατηγῶν (Plutarch, *Alexander*).

## 2/ Complete the sentences, translating the English expression into Greek by means of an article and an adjective:

- [The good people] ..... τοὺς θεοὺς τιμῶσιν.
- οἱ πολῖται [unfair people] ..... καὶ [wicked people] ..... ἐκόλαζον.
- ἄρα [the running one] ..... ὄραξ; [use a participle]

### 3/ Translate into Greek:

- We love the illustrious ones (*masc.*).
- .....

- I will give the prize to the valiant one (*fem.*).
- .....

- The wise ones (*fem.*) converse with the prudent ones (*masc.*).
- .....

- People who write are clever.     ✧ *Use a participle.*
- .....

- Do you see the one (*fem.*) speaking to the soldier?
- .....

### c) Neuter article + neuter adjective

#### 1/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the words in bold:

- τὸ **δίκαιον** φιλοῦσι οἱ ἄνθρωποι.
- ὁ διδάσκαλος κελεύει τοὺς μαθητὰς τὸ **ἀγαθόν** πράττειν.
- **τὰ θεῖα** τιμῶσι οἱ πολῖται.
- **ἄλογά** τε καὶ **κακὰ** λέγουσιν οἱ φιλόσοφοι.     ✧ What difference does the absence of the article make?
- ὁ στρατηγὸς πολλὰ γινώσκει περὶ **τὰ στρατιωτικά**.
- ἔστι δὲ τὸ καλόν, ἔστι δὲ τὸ **ἀγαθόν** (Plato, *Cratylus*).
- πῶς οὖν εἰκόσ σε εἰδέναι **τὰ δίκαια** καὶ **τὰ ἄδικα**; (Plato, *Alcibiades*).

#### 2/ Complete the sentences with a neuter article and adjective in the necessary case:

- ὀρῶμεν [justice] ..... παρὰ τοῖς θεοῖς.
- οὐ πιστεύω [beauty] .....
- [Rightness] ..... ἄρχει τῆς χώρας.
- ὁ ναύτης πολλὰ γινώσκει περὶ [naval matters] .....
- ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ πόλει ἔνεστι [goodness] ..... καὶ [badness] .....



**d) Article alone (i.e. without a noun)**

1/ How should οἱ μὲν... οἱ δέ... be translated into English?

.....

2/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the words in bold:

- οἱ στρατιῶται τοὺς πολεμίους διώκουσιν, **οἱ δὲ** φεύγουσιν.
- ὁ διδάσκαλος τοὺς μαθητὰς καλεῖ, **οἱ δὲ** οὐ πείθονται.
- τῶν αἰχμαλώτων τοὺς μὲν ἐλευθεροῦσι οἱ πολέμιοι, **τοὺς δὲ** δουλοῦσιν.
- ἴσχυον γὰρ οἱ μὲν κατὰ γῆν, **οἱ δὲ** ναυσίν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἀνάγκη [ἔστι] τοῖς μὲν ἐπιβουλεύειν, **τοὺς δὲ** μὴ ἀνιέναι (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἡ μὲν ἐπὶ Ἑλλησπόντου ὄρμησεν, **ἡ δὲ** εἰς τὸ πέλαγος (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). ✧ The subject are triremes.
- προσέβαλλον αὐτῶν τῷ τείχει, **οἱ δὲ** οὐκ ἐδύναντο ἀμύνεσθαι (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

3/ Translate into Greek, using a combination of article + μὲν / δέ for the underlined parts:

- The teacher gives books to some and food to others.

.....

- Some run quickly, others run slowly.

.....

- The enemies fight with the Greeks, and these [the Greeks] try to escape.

.....

- I saw her yesterday, and she told me this.

.....

## c) Declensions

### 1. 1<sup>st</sup> declension

[14]

#### a) First sub-variant

1/ Write the endings without looking them up and decline the noun *ἀπορία*, -ας:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	-	-		- ἀπορία	-
Voc.	-	-		-	-
Acc.	-	-		-	-
Gen.	-	-		-	-
Dat.	-	-		-	-

2/ Write the noun *οικία*, -ας in the requested cases, preceded by the article:

Acc. pl.: .....	Gen. pl.: .....
Nom. pl.: .....	Acc. sing.: .....
Dat. sing.: .....	Dat. pl.: .....
Voc. sing.: .....	Gen. sing.: .....

3/ Translate these common nouns into English:

χώρα .....	αἰτία .....	ἀγορά .....
συμμαχία .....	ἀλήθεια .....	ἀδικία .....
ἀπορία .....	σοφία .....	θυσία .....
δυστυχία .....	ἡμέρα .....	ναυμαχία .....
θεά .....	ἐλευθερία .....	φιλία .....
ἡσυχία .....	εὐδαιμονία .....	ἁμαρτία .....
ἐπιθυμία .....	σωτηρία .....	πενία .....
ἐκκλησία .....	ἀσέβεια .....	βοήθεια .....

**b) Second sub-variant**

1/ Write the endings without looking them up and decline the noun έορτή, -ῆς:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	-	-		- έορτή	-
Voc.	-	-		-	-
Acc.	-	-		-	-
Gen.	-	-		-	-
Dat.	-	-		-	-

2/ Write the nouns σπονδή, -ῆς and αίτία, -ας in the requested cases, preceded by the article:

Acc. pl.:	.....	Gen. pl.:	.....
Nom. pl.:	.....	Acc. sing.:	.....
Dat. sing.:	.....	Dat. pl.:	.....
Voc. sing.:	.....	Gen. sing.:	.....

3/ Translate these common nouns into English:

κόρη	.....	άρχή	.....	κεφαλή	.....
βουλή	.....	γνώμη	.....	έπιστολή	.....
σιγή	.....	έορτή	.....	ειρήνη	.....
φυγή	.....	τέχνη	.....	γή	.....
ψυχή	.....	τιμή	.....	άρετή	.....
μάχη	.....	νίκη	.....	σπονδή	.....
δίκη	.....	όργή	.....	άδελφή	.....

4/ Decline the group adjective-noun δικαία κόρη, with the article:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- ή δικαία κόρη	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

### c) Third sub-variant

1/ Write the endings without looking them up and decline the noun *θάλαττα*, -ης:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	-	-		- <i>θάλαττα</i>	-
Voc.	-	-		-	-
Acc.	-	-		-	-
Gen.	-	-		-	-
Dat.	-	-		-	-

2/ Write the nouns *μοῦσα*, -ης and *συμμαχία*, -ας in the requested cases, preceded by the article:

Acc. pl.:	.....	Gen. pl.:	.....
Nom. pl.:	.....	Acc. sing.:	.....
Dat. sing.:	.....	Dat. pl.:	.....
Voc. sing.:	.....	Gen. sing.:	.....

3/ Translate these common nouns into English (all of them belong to the -α, -ης type):

<i>δόξα</i> .....	<i>ἀμιλλα</i> .....	<i>τόλμα</i> .....
<i>θάλαττα</i> .....	<i>γλῶττα</i> .....	<i>τράπεζα</i> .....
<i>μοῦσα</i> .....	<i>ἄμαξα</i> .....	<i>δίαιτα</i> .....

4/ Decline the group adjective-noun *ἀγαθὴ θόξα*, with the article:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- ἡ ἀγαθὴ θόξα	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

## Exercises for the three first sub-variants

1/ Identify the case and number of each word: (remember that the ending -ας, if the noun belongs to the first sub-variant, corresponds to two cases)

ἀνάγκη	.....	στρατιαῖς	.....	ἡμερῶν	.....
ψυχᾶς	.....	σοφία	.....	σκήναις	.....
νίκης	.....	ἀμάξι	.....	κεφαλαί	.....
δόξαι	.....	οικίαν	.....	μηχανῆ	.....

2/ Put these words into the requested case, also with the corresponding article.

δίκη	dat. pl.	.....	ἡμέρα	dat. sing.	.....
ἀρετή	acc. pl.	.....	θάλαττα	gen. sing.	.....
βοήθεια	gen. sing.	.....	βία	gen. pl.	.....

3/ Read these sentences:

- τὰς ἐπιστολὰς φέρουσι αἱ θεαὶ τῇ κόρῃ.
- τὴν τῆς οἰκίας θύραν κόπτει ἡ ἀδελφή.
- γινώσκωμεν τὴν τῆς θεᾶς σοφίαν.
- ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ τὴν θεὰν ὀρῶμεν.
- ἡ τῶν θεῶν σοφία τὰς δεσποίνας διδάσκει.
- αἱ κόραι βοήθειαν τῇ ἀδελφῇ παρέχουσιν.
- ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ ἡ Ἀθήνη τὴν νίκην ταῖς κόραις παρέχει.

4/ Translate into Greek:

- The goddess of the country sends help to the girl.
- .....

- The messenger brings the sister's letter to the goddess.
- .....

- The girls offer a table to the goddess Athene.
- .....

- We know the language.
- .....

### d) Fourth sub-variant

1/ Write the endings without looking them up and decline the noun ταμίας, -ου:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	-	-		- ταμίας	-
Voc.	-	-		-	-
Acc.	-	-		-	-
Gen.	-	-		-	-
Dat.	-	-		-	-

2/ Write the nouns νεανίας, -ου and δόξα, -ης in the requested cases, preceded by the article:

Acc. pl.: ..... Gen. pl.: .....  
 Nom. pl.: ..... Acc. sing.: .....  
 Dat. sing.: ..... Dat. pl.: .....  
 Voc. sing.: ..... Gen. sing.: .....

3/ Decline the group adjective-noun κακός νεανίας, with the article:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- ό κακός νεανίας	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

### e) Fifth sub-variant

1/ Write the endings without looking them up and decline the noun μαθητής, -οῦ:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	-	-		- μαθητής	-
Voc.	-	-		-	-
Acc.	-	-		-	-
Gen.	-	-		-	-
Dat.	-	-		-	-

2/ Write the nouns *δικαστής, -οῦ* and *ἀρχή, -ῆς* in the requested cases, preceded by the article:

Acc. pl.: ..... Gen. pl.: .....  
 Nom. pl.: ..... Acc. sing.: .....  
 Dat. sing.: ..... Dat. pl.: .....  
 Voc. sing.: ..... Gen. sing.: .....

3/ Translate these common nouns into English (all of them belong to the *-ης, -ου* type):

ὀπλίτης ..... κριτής ..... τοξότης .....  
 πολίτης ..... μαθητής ..... σοφιστής .....  
 Πέρσης ..... στρατιώτης ..... προδότης .....  
 κυβερνήτης ..... ναύτης ..... κλέπτης .....

4/ Decline the group adjective-noun *ἀγαθὸς δικαστής*, with the article:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- ὁ ἀγαθὸς δικαστής	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

### Exercises for the fourth and fifth sub-variants

1/ Put these words into the requested case, preceded by the article and the adjective *ἄδικος*:

ὀπλίτης acc. pl. .... κυβερνήτης dat. sing. ....  
 νεανίας nom. pl. .... πολίτης acc. sing. ....  
 δικαστής gen. sing. ....

2/ Identify the case and add the article and the adjective *σοφός* in the necessary form:

δεσπότης ..... ὀπλίται .....  
 στρατιώταις ..... πολίτη .....  
 τοξότου ..... δικασταί .....

3/ Read these sentences (only the underlined nouns belong to the 4<sup>th</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> subtypes of the 1<sup>st</sup> declension):

- ὁρῶ τὸν δεσπότην τὸν τῶν δούλων.
- πολλοὶ θεαταί εἰσιν ἐν τῷ θεάτρῳ.
- πολλοὺς νεανίας ὁρᾷ ὁ δικαστής ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ.
- οἱ λησταί καὶ οἱ κλέπται πάντα λαμβάνουσιν.
- τοὺς προδότας οὐ φιλᾷ.
- οἱ πολῖται τῷ κυβερτήτῃ τὴν νίκην παρέχουσιν.

4/ Translate into Greek (only the underlined nouns belong to the 4<sup>th</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> subtypes of the 1<sup>st</sup> declension):

- The archers pelt the enemies with stones.
- .....

- The soldiers kill many citizens.
- .....

- The judge and the students hate the traitor.
- .....

- You give money to the wise steersman.
- .....

## 2. 2<sup>nd</sup> declension

[15]

### a) First sub-variant

1/ Write the endings without looking them up and decline the noun λόγος, -ου:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	-	-		- λόγος	-
Voc.	-	-		-	-
Acc.	-	-		-	-
Gen.	-	-		-	-
Dat.	-	-		-	-



2/ Write the nouns ἄνθρωπος, -ου and ναύτης, -ου in the requested cases, preceded by the article:

Acc. pl.:	.....	Gen. pl.:	.....
Nom. pl.:	.....	Acc. sing.:	.....
Dat. sing.:	.....	Dat. pl.:	.....
Voc. sing.:	.....	Gen. sing.:	.....

3/ Some of these nouns are feminine, and some are masculine. Can you identify the gender and translate them?

ὔπνος	.....	μῦθος	.....	νόσος	.....
ὄμιλος	.....	νησος	.....	νόμος	.....
ἄμπελος	.....	τόπος	.....	οἶκος	.....
ὁδός	.....	σίτος	.....	βίβλος	.....
στέφανος	.....	νηφός	.....	ὄρος	.....

4/ Translate these common nouns into English:

ἐνιαυτός	.....	θάνατος	.....	βίος	.....
ἵππος	.....	ἄνθρωπος	.....	ἄγγελος	.....
θεός	.....	ἀδελφός	.....	τόπος	.....
οἶνος	.....	καιρός	.....	φόβος	.....
λόγος	.....	σίτος	.....	ὔπνος	.....
στρατηγός	.....	ποταμός	.....	πόλεμος	.....
δημος	.....	ξένος	.....	οὐρανός	.....
χρόνος	.....	κίνδυνος	.....	ὄμιλος	.....
νόμος	.....	διδάσκαλος	.....	ιατρός	.....

5/ Decline the group adjective-noun καλή νῆσος, with the article:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- ἡ καλή νῆσος	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

## b) Second sub-variant

1/ Write the endings without looking them up and decline the noun δένδρον, -ου:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	-	-		- δένδρον	-
Voc.	-	-		-	-
Acc.	-	-		-	-
Gen.	-	-		-	-
Dat.	-	-		-	-

2/ Write the nouns ὄπλον, -ου and νόμος, -ου in the requested cases, preceded by the article:

Acc. pl.:	.....	Gen. pl.:	.....
Nom. pl.:	.....	Acc. sing.:	.....
Dat. sing.:	.....	Dat. pl.:	.....
Voc. sing.:	.....	Gen. sing.:	.....

3/ Translate these common nouns into English:

πεδῖον	.....	μαντεῖον	.....	πλοῖον	.....
ναυτικόν	.....	δικαστήριον	.....	ἔργον	.....
δένδρον	.....	ὄπλον	.....	δεῖπνον	.....
στρατόπεδον	.....	παιδίον	.....	ζῶον	.....
δῶρον	.....	τεκμήριον	.....	ἄθλον	.....

4/ Decline the group adjective-noun χρήσιμον μαντεῖον, with the article:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- τὸ χρήσιμον μαντεῖον	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

## Exercises for the first and second sub-variants

1/ Identify the case and number of these words:

λίθου	.....	θεῶν	.....	δούλοις	.....
ἄγροί	.....	διδασκάλῳ	.....	μῦθος	.....
ἄγγελον	.....	ἵππους	.....	φίλε	.....

2/ Put these words into the requested case, with the corresponding article (disregard changes in the accent):

βίβλος	acc. pl.	.....	ποταμός:	dat. pl.	.....
πλοῖον	gen. pl.	.....	ξένος:	acc. sing.	.....
φίλος	gen. sing.	.....	δειπνον:	gen. sing.	.....
βίβλος	dat. sing.	.....	ὁδός (f.):	dat. sing.	.....
νῆσος (f.)	dat. pl.	.....	μαντεῖον:	acc. sing.	.....
ἀργύριον	acc. pl.	.....	θάνατος:	gen. pl.	.....

3/ Read these sentences:

- οἱ ἄνθρωποι τῷ ἀγαθῷ στρατηγῷ ὄπλα παρέχουσιν.
- τὰ πλοῖά ἐστιν ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ.
- τὴν τοῦ διδασκάλου βίβλον ἀναγιγνώσκετε.
- ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ ἐστὶ τὰ ζῷα.
- ἄγγελους πέμπομεν πρὸς τοὺς στρατηγοὺς.
- τεκμήριον παρέχω τῆς τοῦ δήμου εὐσεβείας.
- κατὰ τὸ μαντεῖον, τὸ ναυτικὸν νικήσει.

4/ Translate into Greek:

- I see trees in the country.

.....

- The lawcourt is in Athens.

.....

- I am on the island.

.....

- I have many weapons.

.....

- The illness kills the maiden.

.....

- I know the oracles.

.....

### c) The Attic declension

1/ Write the endings without looking them up and decline the noun *λεώς*, -ώ:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	-	-		- λεώς	-
Voc.	-	-		-	-
Acc.	-	-		-	-
Gen.	-	-		-	-
Dat.	-	-		-	-

2/ Write the nouns *νεώς*, -ώ and *ποταμός*, -οῦ in the requested cases, preceded by the article:

Acc. pl.: ..... Gen. pl.: .....

Nom. pl.: ..... Acc. sing.: .....

Dat. sing.: ..... Dat. pl.: .....

Voc. sing.: ..... Gen. sing.: .....

3/ What are the optional "non Attic" forms for *νεώς* and *λεώς*?

.....

4/ Decline the group adjective-noun *θεῖος νεώς*, with the article:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- ὁ θεῖος νεώς	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

### d) The contract declension

1/ Write the endings without looking them up and decline the noun *πλοῦς*, -οῦ:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	-	-		- πλοῦς	-
Voc.	-	-		-	-
Acc.	-	-		-	-
Gen.	-	-		-	-
Dat.	-	-		-	-

2/ Write the nouns *ὄστοῦν*, -οῦ and *ἄμαξα*, -ης in the requested cases, preceded by the article:

Acc. pl.:	.....	Gen. pl.:	.....
Nom. pl.:	.....	Acc. sing.:	.....
Dat. sing.:	.....	Dat. pl.:	.....
Voc. sing.:	.....	Gen. sing.:	.....

3/ What are the optional non-contracted forms for *νοῦς* and *ὄστοῦν*?

.....

4/ Decline the group adjective-noun *καλὸς πλοῦς*, with the article:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- ὁ καλὸς πλοῦς	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

### Exercises for the Attic and contract declensions

1/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the words highlighted in bold:

- ἐπιθυμητὴς γάρ εἰμι, ὦ φίλε, τῆς σῆς σοφίας καὶ προσέχω τὸν **νοῦν** αὐτῆι (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- τῶν κνημῶν τὰ **ὄστα** παχέα χρῆ εἶναι (Xenophon, *De Re Equestri*).
- ὄπισθεν δὲ τοῦ **νεῶ** τῆς Ἀφροδίτης Ἰσιδος ἔστιν ἱερόν (Strabo, *Geographica*).

- γραφαῖς τὸν νεῶν διεκόσμησαν (Plutarch, *Aristides*).
- τί δ' οὕτως οἱ λεῶ τιμῶσί με; (Aristophanes, *Aves*).

2/ Complete these sentences:

- οἱ τῶν Ἀθηνῶν [temples] ..... καλοὶ εἰσιν.
- χαλεπὸν ἐστὶν τὰ τοῦ [people] ..... βουλευύματα γνῶναι.
- ἄρα περὶ τὸν πρὸς τὴν Ἰταλίαν [navigation] ..... ἤκουσας;
- ὁ κύων δάκνει τὸ [bone] .....

3/ Translate into Greek; the words in italics correspond to Greek words of the Attic or the contract declensions:

- We see nice *temples*.

.....

- Animals have many *bones*.

.....

- I pay attention to the teacher's words. ◇ "To pay attention": idiom that you can find in the sentences above.

.....

- The *temples* in Athens are large.

.....

### 3. 3<sup>rd</sup> declension

[16]

#### a) Introduction

1/ Write the standard endings without looking them up:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	-	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

2/ What case will give us the real stem of the noun? .....

## b) Consonant stems

1/ Stems ending in *labial* (β, π, φ) or *guttural* (γ, κ, χ) consonants

a/ Decline the nouns θώραξ, -ακος and γυνή, γυναικός:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- θώραξ	-		- γυνή	-
Voc.	-	-		-	-
Acc.	-	-		-	-
Gen.	-	-		-	-
Dat.	-	-		-	-

b/ Write the nouns ἡ σάλπιγξ, -ιγγος and ἡμέρα, -ας in the requested cases, preceded by the article:

Acc. pl.:	.....	Gen. pl.:	.....
Nom. pl.:	.....	Acc. sing.:	.....
Dat. sing.:	.....	Dat. pl.:	.....
Voc. sing:	.....	Gen. sing.:	.....

c/ Decline the group adjective-noun σοφός κήρυξ, with the article:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- ὁ σοφός κήρυξ	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

2/ Stems ending in *dental* (δ, τ, θ) or *nasal* (ν) consonants

a/ Decline the nouns ὁ παῖς, παιδός, ὁ ἡγεμών, -όνος and τὸ πράγμα, -ατος:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- παῖς	-	- ἡγεμών	-	- πράγμα	-
Voc.	-	-	-	-	-	-
Acc.	-	-	-	-	-	-
Gen.	-	-	-	-	-	-
Dat.	-	-	-	-	-	-

b/ Write the nouns ἡ ἐλπίς, -ίδος and δῆμος, -ου in the requested cases, preceded by the article:

Acc. pl.: ..... Gen. pl.: .....  
 Nom. pl.: ..... Acc. sing.: .....  
 Dat. sing.: ..... Dat. pl.: .....  
 Voc. sing.: ..... Gen. sing.: .....

c/ What is the Acc. sing for χάρις, -ιτος? Why is its ending different from that of ἐλπίς, -ίδος?

.....

d/ In what other way can the accusatives ὄρνιθα and κόρυθα be written?

.....

e/ What are the Voc. sing. for παῖς and ἄναξ?

.....

f/ Translate these common nouns into English:

ἄσπις, -ίδος ἡ	.....	χειμών, -ῶνος ὁ	.....	ἄγαλμα, -ματος	.....
λειμῶν, -ῶνος ὁ	.....	ἔρις, -ίδος ἡ	.....	αἶμα, -ματος	.....
ἄγών, -ῶνος ὁ	.....	ἡγεμών, -όνος ὁ	.....	σῶμα, -ματος	.....
ὔδωρ, ὔδατος τό	.....	πούς, ποδός ὁ	.....	χρήματα, -των	.....
κόρυς, -υθος ἡ	.....	ὄνομα, -ματος	.....	ἀδίκημα, -ματος	.....
μήν, μηνός ὁ	.....	στράτευμα, -ματος	.....	πρᾶγμα, -ματος	.....

g/ Decline the group adjective-noun ἀγαθός ἡγεμών, preceded by the article:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- ὁ ἀγαθός ἡγεμών	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-



	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- τὸ κακὸν ἀδίκημα	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

### Exercises for parts 1/ and 2/

1/ Identify gender, case and number:

λιμένα	.....	ἀγάλμασι	.....	ἐλπίδος	.....
ἑλλάδι	.....	παῖδας	.....	πράγματα	.....
κτίματα	.....	νύξ	.....	σώματι	.....

2/ Put the following nouns with the article into the requested case:

ἡ Ἑλλάς, -άδος	acc. sing.	.....	τὸ στράτευμα, -ατος	nom. pl.	.....
ὁ πούς, ποδός	dat. pl.	.....	ὁ παῖς, παιδός	voc. pl.	.....
ὁ κήρυξ, -υκος	dat. sing.	.....	ἡ ἐλπίς, -ίδος	acc. sing.	.....
τὸ στόμα, -ατος	acc. pl.	.....			

3/ Complete these sentences:

- οἱ [guards] ..... τοὺς [heralds] ..... διώκουσιν.
- οἱ στρατιῶται τὴν [shield] ..... λαμβάνουσιν.
- [Hope] ..... ἔχομεν ἐν τῇ μάχῃ.
- ἡ τῆς [Greece] ..... ἀρχὴ τοῖς πολεμίοις ταχέως ἀπαντᾷ.
- οἱ τοῦ παιδός [feet] ..... μικροὶ εἰσιν.
- τὰ τῆς [homeland] ..... στρατεύματα ἀεὶ νικᾷ.

4/ Translate into Greek. The words in italics correspond to 3<sup>rd</sup> declension words:

- In the *body* there are *feet* and a *mouth*.

.....

- Do you see the *fortifications*?

.....

- I protect the *boy* with the *shield* and the weapons.

.....

- In *Greece*, there are *statues* and many *harbours*.

.....

- The inhabitants of *Greece* love *contests*.

.....

### 3/ Stems ending in the group -ντ-

a/ Decline the noun λέων, -οντος ό:

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	- λέων	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

b/ Write the nouns *θεράπων*, -οντος and *μαθητής*, -οῦ in the requested cases, preceded by the article:

Acc. pl.: ..... Gen. pl.: .....

Nom. pl.: ..... Acc. sing.: .....

Dat. sing.: ..... Dat. pl.: .....

Voc. sing.: ..... Gen. sing.: .....

c/ Complete the table of endings for the Dat. pl.:

Type -ων, -οντος: Dat. pl. -ουσι

Type -εις, -εντος: Dat. pl. ....

Type -ους, -οντος: Dat. pl. ....

Type -ας, -αντος: Dat. pl. ....

d/ Decline the group adjective-noun δίκαιος ἄρχων, preceded by the article:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- ὁ δίκαιος ἄρχων	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

e/ In which case are the words below?

θεράποντι ..... θεράποντας ..... ἄρχοντος ..... γέροντα .....

#### 4/ Stems ending in liquid (ρ, λ) consonants

a/ Decline the noun αἰθήρ, -έρος ὀ:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- αἰθήρ	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

b/ Write the nouns μάρτυς, -υρος and μῆν, μηνός in the requested cases, preceded by the article:

Acc. pl.: ..... Gen. pl.: .....  
 Nom. pl.: ..... Acc. sing.: .....  
 Dat. sing.: ..... Dat. pl.: .....  
 Voc. sing: ..... Gen. sing.: .....

c/ Decline the irregular nouns μήτηρ and ἀνήρ:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- μήτηρ	-		- ἀνήρ	-
Voc.	-	-		-	-
Acc.	-	-		-	-
Gen.	-	-		-	-
Dat.	-	-		-	-

d/ What is the Dat. pl. for ἀστήρ, -έρος? .....

e/ Decline the group adjective-noun ἀγαθὴ θυγάτηρ, preceded by the article:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- ἡ ἀγαθὴ θυγάτηρ	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

### Exercises for parts 3/ and 4/

1/ Write down the case of these three words and give their nominative singular:

ρήτορσι ..... πυρί ..... θεράπουσι .....

2/ Put the words in brackets into the necessary form to make them agree with the underlined words and translate:

- τοὺς δειλοὺς [ἄρχων] ..... ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ πάσχοντας αἰσθανόμεθα.
- παύομεν τὴν [μήτηρ] ..... γράφουσαν.
- ὁ διδάσκαλος παύσει τοὺς [άνήρ] ..... διαλεγόμενους.
- παραινῶ τῇ [θυγάτηρ] ..... τὸν βασιλέα τὰς βίβλους αἰτεῖν.

3/ Complete these sentences

- οἱ [witnesses] ..... τοὺς [servants] ..... κολάζουσιν.
- τοῖς [old men] ..... σῖτον φέρουσι οἱ θεράποντες.
- οἱ τοῦ [father] ..... θεράποντες ἰσχυροὶ εἰσιν.
- οἱ [speakers] ..... τοὺς [old men] ..... μάχεσθαι κελεύουσιν.

4/ Translate into Greek. The words in italics correspond to 3<sup>rd</sup> declension words:

- The good *governors* set up *statues* to the gods.
- .....

- In the land there were many *beasts*.
- .....

- The servants see the *fire*.

.....

- You (sing.) see the *orator* in the *harbour*.

.....

### 5/ Stems ending in sigma

#### a) Group of variable *-εξ*

1/ Decline the nouns *κράτος, -ους* and *ἔπος, -ους* :

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- κράτος	-		- ἔπος	-
Voc.	-	-		-	-
Acc.	-	-		-	-
Gen.	-	-		-	-
Dat.	-	-		-	-

2/ Write the nouns *γένος, -ους* and *ὄνομα, -ατος* in the requested cases, preceded by the article:

Acc. pl.:	.....	Gen. pl.:	.....
Nom. pl.:	.....	Acc. sing.:	.....
Dat. sing.:	.....	Dat. pl.:	.....
Voc. sing:	.....	Gen. sing.:	.....

3/ Translate these common nouns into English (all of them belong to the *-ος, -ους* type):

πλήθος	.....	τέλος	.....	ψεῦδος	.....
κλέος	.....	μέγεθος	.....	τείχος	.....
ἔπος	.....	κράτος	.....	ὄνειδος	.....
βέλος	.....	πάθος	.....	μέρος	.....
ξίφος	.....	γένος	.....	ὄρος	.....

4/ Decline the group adjective-noun μικρὸν μέρος, preceded by the article:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- τὸ μικρὸν μέρος	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

*b) Group of invariable -ες*

1/ Decline the names Διογένης, -ους and Περικλῆς, -έους (obviously, only in singular):

Nom.	- Διογένης	-Περικλῆς
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

2/ Write the nouns τριήρης, -ους and κήρυξ, -υκος in the requested cases, preceded by the article:

Acc. pl.: ..... Gen. pl.: .....

Nom. pl.: ..... Acc. sing.: .....

Dat. sing.: ..... Dat. pl.: .....

Voc. sing.: ..... Gen. sing.: .....

3/ What are the two possible Accs. of Σωκράτης? .....

4/ Decline the group adjective-noun θαυμαστή τριήρης, preceded by the article:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- ἡ θαυμαστή τριήρης	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

## c) Group of -ας

1/ Decline the noun κέρας, -ως in both of its possible forms:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- κέρας	-		- κέρας	-
Voc.	-	-		-	-
Acc.	-	-		-	-
Gen.	-	-		-	-
Dat.	-	-		-	-

2/ Write the nouns γέρας, -ως and θώραξ, -ακος in the requested cases, preceded by the article:

Acc. pl.: ..... Gen. pl.: .....  
 Nom. pl.: ..... Acc. sing.: .....  
 Dat. sing.: ..... Dat. pl.: .....  
 Voc. sing.: ..... Gen. sing.: .....

3/ Decline the group adjective-noun ἀγαθὸν γέρας, preceded by the article:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- τὸ ἀγαθὸν γέρας	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

### Exercises for the stems ending in sigma

1/ Identify the case of the following words:

μέρη ..... ξίφους ..... τείχη ..... ἔπεσι ..... γένει ..... ὄρη ..... κράτους .....

2/ Put the word in brackets in Greek and in the necessary case:

- αἱ τῶν Ἀθηναίων [triremes] ..... διώκουσι τὴν τῶν Περσῶν [trireme] .....
- τὰ τοῦ ἄρχοντος [words] ..... ἀναγιγνώσκουσιν οἱ μαθηταί.
- τὰ τῶν Ἀθηνῶν [walls] ..... ὀρῶ.
- ἄρα ἔχεις [strength] .....

- τὸν [Socrates] ..... τιμῶσι οἱ πολῖται.
- ἐν [the mountains] ..... μάχονται οἱ στρατιῶται.
- ἡ [of the crowd] ..... ἀρχὴ δικαία ἐστίν.

3/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the nouns in bold type:

- οἱ ναῦται εἰσβαίνουσιν εἰς τὴν **τριήρη**.
- πολλὰ **ἔτη** ἐμένομεν ἐκεῖ.
- τὰς **τριήρεις** ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ ὀρώμεν.
- καλὸν **ξίφος** ὁ ὀπλίτης εἶχεν.
- αἱ **τριήρεις** ταχέως πλέουσιν.



- τὰ τοῦ ρήτορος **ἔπη** σοφά ἦν.
- οὐ μὴν ἐάλω τὸ **τεῖχος** ἀπὸ **κράτους** (Dionysius Halicarnassensis, *Antiquitates Romanae*).
- Ἀντώνιος τῷ **ξίφει** παίει τὸν Σερτώριον (Plutarch, *Sertorius*).
- δύο **μέρη** ποιήσαντες τοῦ στρατεύματος ἔπλεον (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

4/ Translate into Greek. Words in italics correspond to Greek words of sigma stem:

- They see *Socrates* in the agora.

.....

- Are the sailors in the *trireme*?

.....

- The *triremes* of the Athenians attack the *triremes* of the enemies.

.....

- The power of the Greeks conquers the *crowd* of the enemies.

.....

- We destroy the *walls* quickly.

.....

- They kill the servants with a *sword*.

.....



## c) Vowel stems

## 1/ Stem ending in -ι or -υ

## a) Invariable stem

1/ Decline the noun *ἰσχύς, -ύος ἡ* :

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- ἰσχύς	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

2/ Write the nouns *οἶς, οἰός* and *ἐλπίς, -ίδος* in the requested cases, preceded by the article:

Acc. pl.: ..... Gen. pl.: .....

Nom. pl.: ..... Acc. sing.: .....

Dat. sing.: ..... Dat. pl.: .....

Voc. sing: ..... Gen. sing.: .....

3/ *ἰχθύς* can have two Accs. pl. What are they? .....4/ Decline the group adjective-noun *φοβερὸς ἰχθύς*, preceded by the article:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- ὁ φοβερὸς ἰχθύς	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

## b) Variable stem

1/ Decline the nouns *πρᾶξις, -εως ἢ* and *ἄστυ, -εως τό* :

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- πρᾶξις	-		- ἄστυ	-
Voc.	-	-		-	-
Acc.	-	-		-	-
Gen.	-	-		-	-
Dat.	-	-		-	-

2/ Write the nouns *πέλεκυς, -εως* and *ἡγεμών, -όνος* in the requested cases, preceded by the article:

Acc. pl.: ..... Gen. pl.: .....  
 Nom. pl.: ..... Acc. sing.: .....  
 Dat. sing.: ..... Dat. pl.: .....  
 Voc. sing.: ..... Gen. sing.: .....

3/ When declining an adjective using this declension, the Gen. sing. will not be *-εως*. What will it be?

.....

4/ Translate these common nouns into English (all of them belong to this *-ις -εως* type):

ὑβρις ..... πρᾶξις ..... πόλις .....  
 πίστις ..... αἴσθησις ..... πρόφασις .....  
 μάντις ..... φύσις ..... φρόνησις .....

5/ Decline the group adjective-noun *ἀγαθὴ τάξις*, preceded by the article:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- ἡ ἀγαθὴ τάξις	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

### Exercises for 1/ a) and b)

1/ Write down the case and number of the words below and add in the corresponding article:

δύναμιν ..... πρᾶξις ..... ὕβρει .....  
 πόλεως ..... πρέσβυν ..... ἄσθη .....

2/ Put the noun in brackets into the necessary case and translate:

- οἱ πολῖται ἄρχουσι τῆς [πόλις].....
- ὁ παῖς τὸν [μάντις] ..... πρὸς τὸ πεδῖον ἄγει.
- ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ πολλοὶ [ιχθύς] ..... εἰσίν.
- οἱ πολέμοι, ὀλίγοι ὄντες, τὴν [ἀκρόπολις] ..... αἰροῦσιν.
- οἱ ναῦται μισοῦσι τὴν τοῦ τυράννου [ὑβρις] .....
- οἱ στρατηγοὶ πράττουσι τὰ τῆς [πόλις] ..... πράγματα.

◇

- οἱ ἄνθρωποι τὴν [δύναμις] ..... φιλοῦσιν.
- ἡ τῆς θεᾶς [δύναμις] ..... δεινὴ ἐστίν.
- ἔνια δένδρα ἐν τῇ [πόλις] ..... κόπτω.
- τὸ τοῦ [μάντις] ..... [ἄστου] ..... οὐ φιλοῦμεν.
- ὁ στρατηγὸς τῇ τῶν στρατιῶν [τάξις] ..... πιστεύει.
- πολλοὺς [ιχθύς] ..... ἐσθίουσι οἱ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ οἰκοῦντες.
- ἡ τοῦ [ἄστου] ..... δύναμις μεγάλη ἐστίν.

3/ Read these sentences and identify the nouns that belong to the vowel stems:

- οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἔθουον τῇ τῆς πόλεως θεᾶ.
- ὁ θεὸς τὴν τῶν πρεσβέων ὑβριν ἐκόλαζον.
- οἱ τῆς μάντεως λόγοι τὸν δῆμον ταράττουσιν.
- οἱ πρέσβεις εἰς τὰς Ἀθῆνας ἔρχονται.
- πάντες μὲν οἱ ἐκ τῶν ἀγρῶν Ἀκαρνᾶνες ἔφυγον εἰς τὰ ἄσθη (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

- πέμπει εἰς τὸ στράτευμα κελεύων εἰς τάξιν καθίστασθαι (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- δεῖ τὰς πράξεις θεωρεῖν (Plutarch, *Comparatio Solonis et Publicolae*).

4/ Translate into Greek. Words in italics correspond to Greek words of the 3<sup>rd</sup> declension:

- The *actions* of the *ambassador* are good.

.....

- The *soothsayers* have houses in the *acropolis*.

.....

- Judges punish *insolence*.

.....

- You always have an *excuse*.

.....

## 2/ Stem ending in diphthong -εο, -αο and -οο

a/ Decline the nouns ἱερεὺς, -έως and γραῦς, γραῶς :

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- ἱερεὺς	-		- γραῦς	-
Voc.	-	-		-	-
Acc.	-	-		-	-
Gen.	-	-		-	-
Dat.	-	-		-	-

b/ Write the nouns βασιλεύς, -έως and γέρον, -οντος in the requested cases, preceded by the article:

Acc. pl.: .....

Gen. pl.: .....

Nom. pl.: .....

Acc. sing.: .....

Dat. sing.: .....

Dat. pl.: .....

Voc. sing.: .....

Gen. sing.: .....

c/ Decline the irregular noun ναῦς, νεώς ἡ :

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- ναῦς	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

d/ Translate these common nouns into English (all of them belong to the -εύς, -έως type):

συγγραφεύς ..... ἀλιεύς ..... βασιλεύς .....  
 ἱερεύς ..... ἱππεύς ..... φωνεύς .....

e/ Decline the group adjective-noun ἰσχυρὸς ἀλιεύς, preceded by the article:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- ὁ ἰσχυρὸς ἀλιεύς	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

### 3/ Stem ending in -οι and -ω

a) First type: -ως, -ους

1/ Decline (only in singular) the noun χρώς ὁ both as χρώς, -ῶ and as χρώς, χρωτός :

Nom.	- χρώς		- χρώς
Voc.	-		-
Acc.	-		-
Gen.	- χρωῶ		- χρωτός
Dat.	-		-

2/ Decline (only in singular) the group adjective-noun φοβερὸν φῶς, preceded by the article:

Nom.	- τὸ φοβερὸν φῶς
Voc.	-
Acc.	-
Gen.	-
Dat.	-

b) *Second type: -ω, -ους*

1/ Decline (only in singular) the nouns ἡχώ, -οῦς ἡ and τεῖχος, -ους :

Nom.	- ἡχώ		- τεῖχος
Voc.	-		-
Acc.	-		-
Gen.	-		-
Dat.	-		-

2/ Decline (only in singular) the group adjective-noun θεία Λητώ, preceded by the article:

Nom.	- ἡ θεία Λητώ
Voc.	-
Acc.	-
Gen.	-
Dat.	-

c) *Third type: -ως, -ωος*

1/ Decline the nouns δμῶς, δμῶος ὁ and πατρίς, -ίδος ἡ :

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- δμῶς	-		- πατρίς	-
Voc.	-	-		-	-
Acc.	-	-		-	-
Gen.	-	-		-	-
Dat.	-	-		-	-

2/ Decline the group adjective-noun θαυμαστός ἥρωας (including the alternative forms for ἥρωας), preceded by the article:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- ὁ θαυμαστός ἥρωας	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

### Exercises for 2/ and 3/

1/ Work out the case and number of the words below and write down the article that corresponds to each:

..... ἱερεῖς                      ..... βασιλεῖ                      ..... ἱερέα                      ..... βοῦς  
 ..... Ἀχιλλεῦ                      ..... ἵππεῖ                      ..... βασιλεῦσι                      (two options)

2/ Put into the requested case:

Ἀχιλλεύς    acc. sing.    .....                      ἥρωας            acc. sing.    .....  
 ναῦς        dat. sing.    .....                      ἵππεύς            gen. sing.    .....  
 ἱερεύς     dat. sing.    .....                      Ὀδυσσεύς     dat. sing.    .....  
 γραῦς     gen. sing.    .....

3/ Put the words in brackets into the necessary form to make them agree with the underlined words:

- τὰ δένδρα τοῖς τὴν ἀλήθειαν ἀγγέλουσιν [ιερεύς] ..... τὸ πρότερον σκίαν παρεῖχεν.
- ὁ πονηρὸς ἡγεμὼν τοῖς [ἵππεύς] ..... ὄπλα δώσει.
- οἱ [βασιλεύς] ..... τὴν τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἱστορίαν γράψουσιν.
- τοὺς δειλοὺς [άλιεύς] ..... ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ πάσχοντας αἰσθανόμεθα.
- οἱ [ἥρωας] ..... ἐπιμέλειαν ἔξουσι τῆς χώρας.
- τῇ ἀποκρινομένη [γραῦς] ..... δῶρα παρέξουσι οἱ πάσχοντες.
- ὁ διδάσκαλος παύσει τοὺς [διμῶς] ..... διαλεγομένους.

4/ Read these sentences and identify the nouns that belong to the vowel stems:

- οἱ πολῖται τοῖς ἱερεῦσι δῶρα παρέχουσιν.
- τοὺς ἰππέας ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ὀρῶμεν.
- ἄρα τὸν ἀγαθὸν ἀλιέα ἐκεῖ ὀρᾷς;
- πάντες τὰ τοῦ ἥρω ὄπλα κτᾶσθαι βούλονται.
- πάντες οἱ νεανίαι ἥρωσ γενέσθαι βούλονται.



- διὰ τί τὸν ἥρω ἀπέκτεινας;
- Τάραντα δὲ τὸν ἥρω Ποσειδῶνός φασι καὶ ἐπιχωρίας νύμφης παῖδα εἶναι (Pausanias, *Graeciae Descriptio*).
- αἱ νῆες ἐταράσσοντο καὶ ναῦς τε νηὶ προσέπιπτε (Thucydides, *Historiae*). ◇ Because of the wind
- κῆρυξ δὲ φέρων ἐν χερσὶν ἔθηκεν ἥρω Δημοδόκῳ (Homer, *Odyssea*).

5/ Translate into Greek:

- Achilles will give the king's arms to Odysseus.
- .....

- We will look at the old woman.
- .....

- The kings will write about the priests.
- .....

- I see Sapho's brother.
- .....

- They lead the oxen.
- .....

- Trojans never win.
- .....

- I always use persuasion.
- .....



### d) Irregular nouns

1/ Decline the noun *υῖός* in all its possible forms, both as 2<sup>nd</sup> and as 3<sup>rd</sup> declension:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- υῖός	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

2/ Translate these nouns and write the Gen. sing. for each:

τὸ οὖς ..... ἡ θρίξ .....

ὁ Ζεὺς .....

3/ Read these sentences and underline the irregular nouns:

- οἱ υἱεῖς τὰς τῶν Ἀθηναίων ναῦς ὀρῶσιν.
- τὰ τοῦ υἱέος ἔπη ἀκούω.
- ὦ παῖ, λέγε τῷ Διὶ τὸν μῦθον.
- νοσοῦμεν καὶ τὰ ὄτα καὶ τὰ ὄμματα (Plutarch, *De Pythiae Oraculis*).
- ἔχει δὲ καὶ τὴν τρίχα στεγανὴν [= covered] (Xenophon, *Cynegeticus*).

4/ Translate into Greek; the words in italics correspond to Greek irregular nouns:

- Alexander will cut his *hair*.

.....

- Tomorrow I will see *Zeus*.

.....

- The boy has *ear* pain.

.....

- Give this to my *son*.

.....

## Exercises for all declensions

[17]

1/ Write these nouns in the requested cases:

	<i>Acc. pl</i>	<i>Dat. sing.</i>	<i>Dat. pl.</i>	<i>Nom. pl.</i>	<i>Gen. sing.</i>
κρίσις, -εως	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
ἄστυ, -εως	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
μάχη, -ης	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
φίλος, -ου	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
ἱερεύς, -έως	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
ἔτος, -ους	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
ναῦς, νεώς	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....

	<i>Dat. pl.</i>	<i>Acc. sing.</i>	<i>Gen. pl.</i>	<i>Dat. sing.</i>
παῖς, παιδός	.....	.....	.....	.....
θώραξ, -ακος	.....	.....	.....	.....
ὄνομα, -ματος	.....	.....	.....	.....
ποιμήν, -ένος	.....	.....	.....	.....
δεσπότης, -ου	.....	.....	.....	.....
τόλμα, -ης	.....	.....	.....	.....

2/ Change the words below from singular to plural and vice-versa, keeping the same case (there may be more than one option):

ὄρει	.....	κέρυκα	.....	πολέμους	.....
ψεύδη	.....	πράγμασι	.....	ἀνδρί	.....
στάσεως	.....	ἄγαλμα	.....	ξίφους	.....
τοξότη	.....	γειτόνων	.....	πράξεις	.....
ὄνειροις	.....	ἄρχουσι	.....	δεσπότην	.....
βασιλέας	.....	μάρτυς	.....		

3/ In each group of four words there is a form that does not exist; can you identify it?

νήσον - νήσου - νήσει - νήσων

φυγάδος - φυγάς - φυγάσι - φυγάδον

ἄμιλλα - ἀμιλλῶν - ἀμίλλοις - ἀμίλλη

στρατιώτοις - στρατιώτης - στρατιώτην - στρατιώτας

λέοις - λέοντος - λέουσι - λέοντας

χειμών - χειμῶνι - χειμῶσι - χειμόνους

κτήμας - κτήματα - κτήματος - κτήμασι

δυνάμεις - δυνάμοις - δύναμιν - δυνάμει

ἰπέων - ἰπεύς - ἰπέον - ἰπεῦσι

4/ Do the same with these words of different declensions:

γονεῖς - πεδίας - αἰτία - φόβοι

ἄστη - ὄρνιθα - τόποις - νομοθέτους

πατέρας - τειχίσματα - ἄθλα - κριτής

γίγασι - θηρός - ἀμαρτήματα - ἀμπέλους

σωμάτει - κλέος - υἱεῖς - κράτους

μαντεῖα - μάρτυρες - ἔριδι - ἀνδράσας

ἀγγέλας - ἔπεσι - χαλκεῖ - νῆες

μαθητῆ - θυσίας - ἀδελφέσι - ὠτός

5/ Choose the right option so that the sentence is grammatically right and makes sense:

- τὴν [ἀλήθειαν - ἀλήθειην] ..... ἀκούειν βουλόμενος πρὸς τὴν [ἀγορὴν - ἀγορὰν] ..... ἔρχομαι.
  - οἱ Συρακόσιοι δύο [τροπαῖα - τροπαίους] ..... πρὸ τῆς [πολέης - πόλεως - πολέας] ..... ἔστησαν.
  - οἱ ἐν τῇ [νήσῳ - νήσῃ - νήσῳ] ..... οὐδὲν ἀπὸ τῶν [συγγραφῶν - συγγραφέων] ..... δέχονται.
  - οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι [νήσιν - ναυσὶν - νέαις] ..... εἴκοσι τοῖς πολεμίοις [ναύταις - ναύτοις] ..... ἐναυμάχουν.
  - [ἡγεμόνον - ἡγεμόνα - ἡγεμόνην] ..... καὶ τρεῖς [ἰπέας - ἰπέους] ..... ἡμῖν παρέχουσιν οἱ σύμμαχοι.
  - διὰ τί τὴν αἰτίαν τοῖς [στρατιώτοις - στρατιώταις - στρατιῶσι] ..... λέγειν οὐκ ἐθέλεις;
  - θαυμάζω τοὺς στρατιώτας οἱ ἐπὶ τοῦ [τείχου - τείχους - τείχης] ..... μάχονται.
- ◇
- [ἰπέας - ἰπεῖς] ..... πολλοὺς πρὸς τὴν μάχην ἐλαύνω.
  - εἰς τὴν [πόλιν - πόλιν - πόλεα] ..... ἀφίκετο [ὀπλίτας - ὀπλίταις - ὀπλίτους] ..... ἔχων χιλίους.
  - οἱ πολέμοι τὰ τῆς χώρας [ἄστη - ἄστεα - ἄστα] ..... λαβεῖν ἐβούλοντο, ἀλλὰ [δυνάμην - δύναμιν] ..... οὐκ εἶχον.
  - οἱ [προδόται - προδότοι] ..... τοῖς [πρέσβεσι - πρέσβοις] ..... τὰ χρήματα παρέσχον.

- οἱ στρατιῶται τοῦ [θέρου - θέρους - θέρεως] ..... ὑπὲρ τῆς [πατρίδος - πατρίδας - πατρίδος] ..... μάχονται.
- αἱ τοῦ κυβερνήτου [νήας - νῆες - νάες] ..... εἰς τὸν [λιμένον - λιμέναν - λιμένα] ..... ἔπλευσαν.

6/ Put the word in brackets in the necessary case so that the sentence makes sense:

- μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα τοὺς [ναύτης] ..... εἶδομεν.
- οἱ [στρατιώτης] ..... τὴν [πόλις] ..... λαβεῖν βούλονται.
- οἱ [πολίτης] ..... τὰ [τεῖχος] ..... περιεβάλλοντο.
- τῷ ἐμῷ [πατῆρ] ..... τὰ [ἱμάτιον] ..... φέρω.
- τούτου τοῦ [ἔτος] ..... οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι τοὺς τοῦ [βασιλεύς] ..... στρατιώτας ἐνίκησαν.

◇

- τοὺς τῆς [δέσποινα] ..... λόγους ἀκούω.
- πάντες [σιγή] ..... ἤκουον τοῦ [ρήτωρ] ..... ἐν τῇ [πόλις] .....
- οἱ ἄνθρωποι [ὁδοὺς] ..... πολλοὺς ἐν τῷ [στόμα] ..... ἔχουσιν.
- αἱ [γυνή] ..... τοῦτο εἶπον τοῖς [φύλαξ] .....
- πέμψω σοι πέντε [ἰππεύς] ..... καὶ δύο [ναῦς] .....

7/ Some nouns in this text have been underlined. Give the nominative and genitive singular for each one of them (i.e., identify their declension and their sub-type):

... ἐπαγόμενος θανάτου ὕστερον ἐν Λακεδαίμονι διὰ τὴν προδοσίαν ἀπέφυγεν, ἀπολογούμενος ὅτι οὐ προδιδοίη τὴν πόλιν, ἀλλὰ σώσαι, παῖδας ὄρων καὶ γυναῖκας λιμῷ ἀπολλυμένους, Βυζάντιος ὦν καὶ οὐ Λακεδαιμόνιος· τὸν γὰρ ἐνόητα σίτον Κλέαρχον τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίων στρατιώταις δίδουσι· διὰ ταῦτ' οὖν τοὺς πολεμίους ἔφη εἰσέσθαι, οὐκ ἀργυρίου ἕνεκα οὐδὲ διὰ τὸ μισεῖν Λακεδαιμονίους· ἐπεὶ δὲ εὐτοῖς παρεσκεύαστο, νυκτὸς ἀνοίξαντες τὰς πύλας ... εἰσήγαγον τὸ στράτευμα. ... Φαρνάβαζος δὲ καὶ οἱ πρέσβεις τῆς Φρυγίας ἐν Γορδεῖφ ὄντες τὸν χειμῶνα τὰ περὶ τὸ Βυζάντιον πεπραγμένα ἤκουσαν. ἀρχομένου δὲ τοῦ ἔαρος πορευομένοις αὐτοῖς παρὰ βασιλέα ἀπήντησαν ...

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

d) Adjectives

**1. 1<sup>st</sup> class of adjectives**

[18]

**a) The standard -ος, -α/-η, -ον scheme**

1/ Translate these common adjectives into English:

θαυμαστός .....	ἐλεύθερος .....	ὅμοιος .....
αἴτιος .....	μόνος .....	χαλεπός .....
ῥάδιος .....	δειλός .....	ἀνδρεῖος .....
κακός .....	δυνατός .....	πονηρός .....
θνητός .....	φοβερός .....	ἱερός .....
θεῖος .....	ἀναγκαῖος .....	δίκαιος .....
ἰσχυρός .....	δῆλος .....	

2/ Decline the adjective-noun groups κακὸς ἀνὴρ and σοφὴ γυνή :

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- κακὸς ἀνὴρ	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- σοφὴ γυνή	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

3/ Read these sentences, paying attention to what or whom each adjective (in italics) qualifies:

- πᾶς ὄχλος *φοβερός* (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- οὐδὲν ἄλλο *κακόν* ἐργασάμενος ἐν τῇ πόλει *ἀπέπλευσεν* (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ὑμεῖς οὖν ἦτε ἄνδρες *ἀγαθοί* (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- οἱ *δειλοὶ* κύνες τοὺς μὲν παρίοντας διώκουσιν τε καὶ δάκνουσιν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ἐμοὶ ὁ πατήρ καὶ οἰκίματα *καλὰ* καὶ *παραδείσους* καὶ *δένδρων* καὶ *θηρίων* *μεστούς* *κατέλιπεν* (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

◇

- πολλὰ μὲν *καλὰ* καὶ *ἀφέλιμα* [ἐστίν] (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- ὕβρις *κακῆ* *δειλῶ* βροτῶ (Plutarch, *Fragmenta*).
- ἦκω ἀνδρῶν *συμμάχων* *κενὸν* δόρυ ἔχων (Euripides, *Orestes*).
- φεύγειν *αἰσχρὸν* καὶ *βλαβερὸν* τῇ Σπάρτῃ (Plutarch, *Aprophthegmata Laconica*).
- οὐκέτι *καθαράν* φρέν' ἔχω (Euripides, *Hippolytus*).

4/ Write the English adjective in Greek in the necessary form:

- αἱ [good] ..... θεαὶ ἐν τῇ [nice] ..... πόλει οἰκοῦσιν.
- ὀρῶ [a long] ..... στάδιον καὶ [a nice] ..... ὄρος.
- παρέχω [a little] ..... νῆσον τῇ [rich] ..... κόρη.
- ἔχομεν [bad] ..... ξίφη.
- ἐν τῇ [terrible] ..... ἠπεύρω οἰκοῦμεν.
- [A good] ..... δένδρον [good] ..... καρπούς φέρει, [a bad one] ..... κακούς.
- ὀρῶμεν [a difficult] ..... ὁδόν.

## b) The -ος, -ως, -ον scheme

1/ Some of these adjectives have (almost always) a feminine equal to the masculine; can you identify them?

ἄδηλος / ἰσχυρός / χρήσιμος / ἔνδοξος / κενός / σύμμαχος / ἔσχατος / ἐτοῖμος / ἄπιστος / λοιπός / ἄξιος / ἀδύνατος  
/ ἄσμενος / τελευταῖος / ἴσος / πρῶτος / ἔμπειρος / ἀθάνατος

2/ Write the English adjective in Greek and in the necessary form:

- ἡ τῆς πόλεως θεά [immortal] ..... ἐστίν.
- φοβερὰ ὄπλα ἔχουσι οἱ [unfair] ..... στρατιῶται.
- τῆ [eager] ..... γυναικὶ τὰς [worth mentioning] ..... βίβλους δίδωμι.
- αὐτὴ ἡ γῆ [allied] ..... ἡμῖν ἐστίν.
- αἱ γυναῖκες [ready] ..... πρὸς τὴν μάχην εἰσίν.
- τοῦτο ἔρομαι τὴν [experienced] ..... γυναῖκα.

### c) Adjectives following the contract or Attic declensions

1/ Decline the adjective-noun groups ἴλεως θεά, χρυσοῦν ξίφος and εὐνους θεός:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- ἴλεως θεά	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- χρυσοῦν ξίφος	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- εὐνους θεός	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

2/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the adjectives in bold type:

- **διπλοῦν** τεῖχος περὶ τῆς πόλεως ἐποίησαν.
- πόνο<sup>υ</sup>ς **διπλοῦς** ἔχω τοῦτο ποιῶν.
- νῦν μὲν γὰρ ὑμῖν ὁ δῆμος ἐν πάσαις ταῖς πόλεσιν **εὐνοῦς** ἐστίν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- τεῖχος **ἀπλοῦν** παροικοδομήσομεν.
- καὶ γὰρ ἐκεῖνος ταύτην μὲν ἐμίσει καὶ **κακόνουν** τοῖς αὐτοῦ πράγμασιν ἠγεῖτο (Isocrates, *Aegineticus*).

3/ Complete the sentences by choosing one of the options:

- ὁ Φίλιππος ..... ἐστὶ καὶ ἐχθρὸς ὅλη τῇ πόλει (Demosthenes, *Philippica* 4). [κακόνος / κακόνουν / κακόνους]
- τὰ σώματα διδόντες ἰδίᾳ τὸν ..... ἔπαινον ἐλάμβανον (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [ἀγήρων / ἀγήρας / ἀγήρον]
- τοιαῦτα ποιήσαντες, οὗτοι οἱ ἄνθρωποι ..... γενήσονται. [ἀγήροι / ἀγήρω / ἀγήρους]
- χάριν ..... ἔξομεν (Euripides, *Supplikes*). [ἀγήραν / ἀγήρον / ἀγήρων]
- ὃ ποντίας παῖ Λευκοθέας, ..... ἡμῖν γενοῦ (Euripides, *Iphigenia Taurica*). [ἰλεος / ἰλεω / ἰλεως]
- ὑμεῖς δὲ ἡμῖν ..... τε καὶ εὐμενεῖς ὄντες ... (Plato, *Leges*). [ἰλεῶ / ἰλεω / ἰλεως]

## 2. 2<sup>nd</sup> class of adjectives

[19]

a/ Decline the adjective-noun groups εὐφρων γυνή and εὐσεβῆς ἀνὴρ :

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- εὐφρων γυνή	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- εὐσεβῆς ἀνὴρ	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-



b/ Translate these common adjectives into English:

εὐτυχής	.....	ἐπιστήμων	.....	εὐδαίμων	.....
συγγενής	.....	δυστυχής	.....	πλήρης	.....
κακοδαίμων	.....	ἄχαρις	.....	άμαθής	.....
άσεβής	.....	άσθενής	.....	άληθής	.....

c/ Read these sentences and pay attention to the case of the adjectives in bold type:

- διὰ τί **σώφρονα** νομίζεις τὸν **δυστυχῆ** πατέρα;
- τοὺς **άσεβεῖς** κολάζουσιν οἱ **εὐδαίμονες** θεοί.
- τοὺς **άσθενεῖς** πολεμίους οἱ **εὐτοχεῖς** Ἀθηναῖοι νικῶσιν.
- ὃ **άσεβές, ψευδέσι** λόγοις πειρᾶς τοὺς **δυστοχεῖς** πολίτας ἐξάπατᾶν.

d/ Write the adjectives in the necessary form:

- οἱ [σώφρων] ..... βασιλεῖς τοῖς [εὐφρων] ..... παισὶ [ψευδής] ..... λόγους λέγουσιν.
- τὸ θέατρον [πληρής] ..... ἐστὶ [ἔμφρων] ..... θεατῶν.
- διὰ τί αἰεὶ τοὺς [εὐγενής] ..... ἀνθρώπους ἐν ταῖς [κακοδαίμων] ..... μαχαῖς ἀποκτείνουσιν;
- ὁ λέγων ῥήτωρ μέμφεται τοὺς [άσεβής] ..... λόγους τοὺς τοῦ [ἄφρων] ..... ποιητοῦ.

◇

- οἱ φυλάττοντες θεοὶ σφζουσιν ἡμᾶς ἀνδρείους ὄντας ἐκ τῶν [δυστυχής] ..... κινδύνων.
- πρὸς τὴν [κακοδαίμων] ..... πόλιν ἐρχόμεθα μετὰ τῶν [εὐφρων] ..... φίλων.
- ἀνὰ τὸ [δυσμενής] ..... ὄρος ἀναβαίνουσιν οἱ [άμελής] ..... παῖδες.
- οὕτως [ἐπιστήμων] ..... εἰσὶν οἱ διδάσκαλοι ὥστε οὐποτε [ψευδής] ..... λόγους λέγουσιν.

e/ Change the underlined words from singular to plural and vice-versa:

- δυσμενεῖς πολεμίους ὄψομαι.
- .....

- ὁ γέρων άσθενής ἐστίν.
- .....

- μάλα κάμνεις καὶ εὐδαίμων γενήσει.
- .....

- οἱ εὐδαίμονες θεοὶ ἀποκτενοῦσί σε διότι ἀσεβεῖς βίβλους γράφεις.
- .....

- τὸν μαχόμενον στρατιώτην τιμῶμεν καὶ εὐτυχῆ νομίζομεν.
- .....

f/ Translate into Greek using a 3<sup>rd</sup> declension adjective for the words in italics:

- *Precise* words always help *prudent* men.
- .....

- The *prudent* herald makes a proclamation with a *false* voice.
- .....

- I will ask the *noble* son about the *clear* matter.
- .....

- Do not dishonour the *blessed* people, o *fortunate* boy.
- .....

- You will disrupt the *fortunate* sophist with your *impious* words.
- .....

### 3. 3<sup>rd</sup> class of adjectives

[20]

a/ Decline the adjective-noun group βραδὺς μαθητῆς in singular and πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται in plural:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	- βραδὺς μαθητῆς	- πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

b/ Read these sentences and pay attention to the words in bold:

- ἡ πορεία οὐ **βραδεῖα** ἔσται ἀλλὰ **ταχεῖα**.
- δῶρα δώσω **πᾶσι** τοῖς ἀνδράσι καὶ **πάσαις** ταῖς γυναίξιν.

- **πάντα** ἐποίησα ἤδη.
- καταλιπόντες φυλακὰς τοῦ **ἡμίσεος** τείχους (τὸ δὲ **ἡμισυ** Βοιωτοὶ ἐφύλασσαν) ἀνεχώρησαν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- στρατεύονται δὲ ἐπὶ ἀρμάτων, ἵππους ἔχοντες μικροὺς καὶ **ταχεῖς** (Dio Cassius, *Historiae Romanae*).
- **βαθὺν** ῥόον εἰσεπέρησαν (Apollonius Rhodius, *Argonautica*).
- τὰς ἀπορροίας τοῦ σώματος ἀυξήσομεν **ὄξεσι** γυμνασίαις (Galenus, *De Sanitate Tuenda*). [Sport is good for everything]

c/ Write the adjectives written in brackets in the necessary form to complete the sentence:

- αἱ νύκτες νῦν [βραχύς] ..... εἰσιν.
- [εὐρύς] ..... ὁδοὺς ἔχει ἢ πόλις καλὴ οὕσα.
- σπεῦδε κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν [εὐρύς] ..... οὔσαν.
- διὰ τῆς [εὐρύς] ..... θαλάττης πλέομεν.
- βουλόμεθα τοὺς τοῦ εὐδαίμονος διδασκάλου [ἡδύς] ..... λόγους ἀκούειν.
- [βαρύς] ..... ὅπλα τῷ βραδεῖ στρατιώτῃ δίδως.

d/ Change the underlined words from singular to plural and vice-versa:

- βαρέα ὅπλα ἔξεις ἀνδρεῖος ὄν.

.....

- ἐν εὐρεῖ λειμῶνι εἰμί μετὰ πονούντων φίλων.

.....

- ὁ ἰατρὸς θεραπεύει τὸν ταχὺν στρατιώτην.

.....

- βαθὺν ποταμὸν διαβήσομαι.

.....

- παρὰ εὐθεῖαν ὁδὸν βαίνομεν.

.....

e/ Translate into Greek:

- The field is wide.

.....

- We eat all the sweet food.
- .....

- She has a heavy sword.
- .....

- The soldiers did this willingly.
- .....



- All the slow triremes sail towards the wide island through the deep sea.
- .....

- The teacher told this to all the students.
- .....

- All the men are in the agora.
- .....

- I see all the women on the island.
- .....

#### 4. Irregular adjectives

[21]

a/ Decline in singular the groups adjective-noun groups μέγας οἶκος and πολὺς χρόνος :

Nom.	- μέγας οἶκος	- πολὺς χρόνος
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-

b/ Put the adjective in the necessary form to make it agree with the underlined word:

- [μέγας] ..... κίνδυνον ὁρῶ ἐν τῇ [μέγας] ..... μάχῃ.
- [πολύς] ..... πολεμίους ἀπεκτείνουμεν.
- τὰ ἀληθῆ εἶπον τῷ [τάλας] ..... παιδί.
- χρήματα δίδωμι τοῖς [πένης] ..... πολίταις.



- [πολύς] ..... μὲν χρόνον ἠπόρουν (Plato, *Apologia*).
- παρὰ [μέγας] ..... βασιλέα ... ἀφίκετο (Plato, *Charmides*).
- [μέγας] ..... σοι ἐρῶ τεκμήριον (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- οὐδὲ [πολύς] ..... τὰργύριόν ἐστίν (Plato, *Crito*).

c/ Translate into Greek:

- I don't have much money.

.....

- In battle he always shows much courage.

.....

- In Athens I saw many things and large buildings.

.....

- In Greece, he did great things.

.....

- The king received a big crown, but I received a big prize.

.....

## 5. Position of the adjective

[22]

a/ Some of these expressions are whole sentences; identify them. Then, rearrange the words of those that are not in order to make them whole sentences:

ὁ στρατιώτης ταχύς .....	ἡ μέλαινα ναῦς .....
ἡ μεγάλη μάχη .....	τὸ βαρὺ ξίφος .....
ὁ ὑψηλὸς παῖς .....	ὁ ἱερεὺς ἀσεβής .....
τὸ χρῆμα μέγα .....	

b/ Read these sentences and pay attention to the position of the adjective in bold type:

- οὕτω δὴ ἀναγκάζονται ναυμαχεῖν κατὰ **μέσον** τὸν πορθιόν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- οἱ δὲ Πελοποννήσιοι μέχρι **μέσου** ἡμέρας δηώσαντες τὴν γῆν ἀπέπλευσαν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

- (speaking about the soul) τοῦτο ὃ δὴ φάμεν οἰκεῖν μὲν ἡμῶν ἐπ' **ἄκρῳ** τῷ σώματι (Plato, *Timaeus*).
- ... ὅρη ὅλα κινεῖν **ἄκρῳ** τῷ δακτύλῳ δυνάμενον (Lucian, *Navigium*). [There are people who are really strong...]

c/ Translate into Greek, taking care how to translate the words in italics:

- The soldiers are now *in the middle of* the mountain.

.....

- And now they are *on the high [part] of* the mountain.

.....

- She is standing *in the middle of* the agora.

.....

- The camp is located *on the top of* the hill.

.....

## e) Numeral adjectives

### 1. Cardinals

[23]

a/ Decline εἷς, μία, ἕν:

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nom.	-	-	-
Voc.	-	-	-
Acc.	-	-	-
Gen.	-	-	-
Dat.	-	-	-

b/ Write these numbers in Greek words:

1	.....	9	.....	80	.....
2	.....	10	.....	90	.....
3	.....	20	.....	100	.....
4	.....	30	.....	200	.....
5	.....	40	.....	500	.....
6	.....	50	.....	1000	.....
7	.....	60	.....	2000	.....
8	.....	70	.....	10000	.....

c/ Now write these compound numerals in Greek words:

85	.....	24	.....	93	.....
37	.....	56	.....	48	.....

d/ What is the difference between μύριοι and μυρίοι? (mind the accent!)

.....

e/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the numerals:

- οἱ δὲ ἀνηγάγοντο ἐπ' αὐτὸν **εἴκοσι** ναυσίν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

- καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν **ὀκτώ** ναυσὶν ἀπέπλευσε εἰς Κύπρον (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἔφυγον ἀπολέσαντες **πεντεκαίδεκα** τριήρεις (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἐγένοντο δὲ αἱ πᾶσαι πλείους ἢ **πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑκατόν** (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ταύτας δὲ πάσας [τὰς ναῦς] ἀθροίσας, οὕσας **τετταράκοντα καὶ ἑκατόν**, παρεσκευάζετο ὡς ἀπαντησόμενος τοῖς πολεμίοις (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

f/ Complete the sentences by writing the given numbers in words; the number refers to the words in italics:

- Ἀθηναῖοι δὲ ἀπέπλευσαν, [30] ..... ναῦς τῶν πολεμίων λαβόντες (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- τῶν νεῶν [3] ..... ἀπόλλυνται ἐν τῷ Ἑλλησπόντῳ ὑπὸ τῶν Ἀττικῶν [9] ..... νεῶν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἀπώλοντο δὲ τῶν μὲν Ἀθηναίων νῆες [25] ....., τῶν δὲ ἄλλων συμμάχων πλείους ἢ [60] ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Συρίας *σταθμοὺς* [9] ..... *παρασάγγας* [50] ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

◇

- ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἐκέλευσε μὲν ὁ τῶν [30] ..... κῆρυξ τοὺς [11] ..... ἐπὶ τον Θηραμένην (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). ✧ *κελεύω ἐπὶ* means "to order the arrest of"
- μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα κατελέξατο στρατιάν, *ὀπλίτας* μὲν [1,500] ....., *ἰππέας* δὲ [150] ..... *ναῦς* δ' [100] ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- Καλλικράτιδας δὲ συνεισέπλευσεν εἰς τὸν λιμένα, *διώκων ναυσὶν* [170] ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- Ἀντίγονος δὲ ἐτελεύτησεν *ἐτῶν* [81] ..... (Lucian, *Macrobii*). ✧ Be careful: "1" must be declined.
- στρατεύσαντες ἐπὶ Σικελίαν αἰροῦσιν ἐν [3] ..... *μησὶ* [2] ..... πόλεις Ἑλληνίδας (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

g/ Translate into Greek:

- I have not seen anybody.

.....



- You have not done anything.

.....

- I have told nobody about this.

.....

- You have told five people about this.

.....

- No one (fem.) gave me the letter.

.....

- I gave the four books to the three women.

.....

## 2. Ordinals

[24]

a/ Write these ordinals in Greek and in feminine:

1 <sup>st</sup> .....	4 <sup>th</sup> .....	7 <sup>th</sup> .....	10 <sup>th</sup> .....
2 <sup>nd</sup> .....	5 <sup>th</sup> .....	8 <sup>th</sup> .....	15 <sup>th</sup> .....
3 <sup>rd</sup> .....	6 <sup>th</sup> .....	9 <sup>th</sup> .....	20 <sup>th</sup> .....

b/ Write the ordinal number in Greek (it must agree with the word in italics):

- *ἡμέρα* [5<sup>th</sup>] ..... ἐκκλησία αὐθις ἐγίγνετο (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- Κυαζάρης μὲν οὖν τῶν Μήδων ἔχων τὸ [3<sup>rd</sup>] ..... μέρος κατέμενεν (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- [2<sup>nd</sup>] ..... δὲ καὶ [3<sup>rd</sup>] ..... δρόμῳ ταχὺ ἀλίσκονται (Xenophon, *Cynegeticus*).  
 ✧ Talking about the capture of animals.
- ἐκ τούτου δὴ *ἡμέρα* [3<sup>rd</sup>] ..... ἢ [4<sup>th</sup>] ..... προῆλθον οἱ ἵππεῖς εἰς τὸν ἵππόδρομον (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- [15<sup>th</sup>] ..... ἔτος τῷ πολέμῳ ἐτελεύτα (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

## 3. Multiplicatives

[25]

Write the English multiplicative given in brackets in Greek; if there is a word in italics, the multiplicative is an adjective and it must agree with it:

- [Double] ..... πόλεμον ἔχομεν, μαχόμενοι ἐνθάδε καὶ ἐκεῖ.

- οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐτρέψαντο τοὺς ἐναντίους [four times] ..... . (Herodotus, *Historiae*).
- Ἀθηναῖοι δὲ ἀκούσαντες ἀμφοτέρων, γενομένης καὶ [twice] ..... ἐκκλησίας, ... (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ὁ μέντοι Ἀλκιδάμας αὐτοῦ ἔμεινεν· οὐ γὰρ ἠδυνήθησαν ἐκβαλεῖν τὸν ἄνδρα, ἐπεὶ [once] .....  
καταβάλων ἑαυτὸν ἐπὶ τῆς κλίνης πλαγίως ἐκάθευδε (Lucian, *Symposium*). [This is what happens with some guests.]
- προσευξάμενος τοῖς θεοῖς, παρέτατε τὴν φάλαγγα, τὴν τάξιν [triple] ..... ποιῶν (Plutarch, *Caesar*).
- [Four times] ..... γὰρ χίλιοι ὀπλιταὶ αὐτῶν Ἀθηναίων καὶ τριακόσιοι ἵππης καὶ τριήρεις ἑκατὸν συνέπλευσαν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- εἴη δ' ἂν καὶ [triple] ..... καὶ [quadruple] ..... ὄνομα (Aristotle, *Poeticā*).

## f) Comparative and superlative

### 1. (unapplied in this book)

### 2. Accidence

[26]

#### a) First paradigm

1/ Of these adjectives, say which ones form the comparative with -ότερος, which ones with -τερος, which ones with -αίτερος and which ones with -έστερος:

μέλας .....	σοφός .....	ἥσυχος .....
χαλεπός .....	εὐδαίμων .....	
ἀληθής .....	παλαιός .....	

2/ Form the comparative and superlative of these adjectives, keeping the same case, gender and number:

βραχέος .....	.....	.....
δικαίους .....	.....	.....
γεραίας .....	.....	.....
εὐδαίμονες .....	.....	.....
εὐτυχῆ .....	.....	.....
φίλον .....	.....	.....

#### b) Second paradigm

1/ Form the comparative and superlative of these adjectives (some of them may have more than one option):

μέγας .....	.....	.....
μικρός .....	.....	.....
ἀγαθός .....	.....	.....
κακός .....	.....	.....

◇

καλός	.....	.....
ἐχθρός	.....	.....
πολύς	.....	.....
ῥάδιος	.....	.....
ταχύς	.....	.....

2/ Decline the comparative *πλείων, -ον* in all its possible forms, including the optional contract ones:

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
	<i>M. / F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. / F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.	-	-	-	-
Voc.	-	-	-	-
Acc.	-	-	-	-
Gen.	-	-	-	-
Dat.	-	-	-	-

### 3. Syntax

[27]

#### a) The basic construction

1/ Replace the genitive construction of the second term with a construction with *ἢ* or vice-versa:

- ὁ βασιλεὺς εὐδαιμονέστερος ἐστὶν ἢ ὁ φιλόσοφος.

.....

- αἱ ἐμαὶ βιβλῖοι ἀμείνωνες τούτων εἰσὶν.

.....

- ὁ πατὴρ μείζων ἐστὶν ἢ ὁ υἱός.

.....

- διὰ τί εὐδαίμων εἶμι;

.....

- οἱ τότε οὐκ ἀμείνους ἦσαν ἡμῶν.

.....

2/ Read these sentences and pay attention to the words in bold type:

- ὄρᾱς ἐκείνην τὴν **ὕψηλοτάτην** πλάτανον; (Plato, *Phaedrus*).
- ὁ Ἄρης γὰρ οὐ **φοβερότερος** ἦν; (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 19*).
- τὸ **νεώτερον**, ὃ Σώκρατες, γέγονεν; (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- αὐτοὶ γὰρ οἱ ἄνθρωποι τυγχάνουσι νομίζοντες τὸν Δία τῶν θεῶν **ἄριστον** καὶ **δικαιότατον** (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- τὸ θέαμα **ἡδιστον** ἐμοὶ ἔδοξε (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 17*).
- [ὁ Ἄρταξέρξης] Μακρόχειρ ἐπεκαλεῖτο, τὴν δεξιὰν **μείζονα** τῆς ἐτέρας ἔχων (Plutarch, *Artaxerxes*).
- **γελοιότατα**, ὃ Ἄπολλον, εἶδον (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 17*).

3/ Choose the necessary comparative or superlative from the list below and put it in the necessary case. If it must agree with a word in the sentence, the word has been underlined:

*βέλτιστος / δεινότατος / ισχυρότερος / μείων / κακίων / βελτίων / ἀνδρειότατος*

- [Smaller] ..... τραπέζαν ἔχεις.
- δεῖ τιμᾶν τοὺς ἐν τῇ μάχῃ [very terrible things] ..... παθόντας.
- πολλῶ [stronger] ..... εἶ αὐτοῦ.
- οἱ [bravest] ..... τῶν Ἀθηναίων δῶρα ἐδέξαντο.
- ὁ χρόνος [the best] ..... ιατρός ἐστίν.
- οἱ μὲν [better] ..... δούλους ἔχουσιν, οἱ δὲ [worse] .....

4/ Complete these sentences by using the necessary comparative or superlative of πολὺς:

*πλείω / πλείους / πλείστας / πλείστοι / πλείονες / πλείονι*

- ἄδειπνοι ἦσαν οἱ [most] ..... τῶν Ἑλλήνων (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ἵκοντα δὲ Λύσανδρον οὐκ εἶα ναυμαχεῖν πρὸς Ἀθηναίους, ἐὰν μὴ πολλῶ [more] ..... ναῦς ἔχη (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἐπεὶ ταῦτα εἶπε, πολὺ [more (people)] ..... ἀνίσταντο (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- πολὺ δὲ ὑμεῖς ἐκείνοις [more] ..... φόβον παρέχετε (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- πολὺ ἐν [more] ..... ἀπορία εἰμί (Plato, *Cratylus*).
- [Most] ..... τέχνας πάντων σοφώτατος εἶ ἄνθρώπων (Plato, *Hippias Minor*).

## 5/ Translate into Greek:

- This oracle is *more famous* than that one.

.....

- Your brother is the tallest of all of us.

.....

- I have *more* money than you.

.....

- Achilles was *faster* than Agamemnon.

.....

- Achilles always killed *more* enemies than anyone else.

.....

- I live in a city *nicer* than yours.

.....

- They live in the *niciest* city of all.

.....

## b) ὡς / ὅτι + superlative

## 1/ Read these sentences:

- ἐκέλευεν ἀποστέλλειν ὡς **τάχιστα** ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- πολλὰ προσέταττον, βουλόμενοι ὡς **πλείστους** ἀναπλῆσαι αἰτιῶν (Plato, *Apologia*).
- ἀντεπετίθει αὐτῷ πράττειν ὡς **ἄριστα** καὶ πιστότατα (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ὁ δὲ βουλόμενος ὡς **ἥκιστα** ὑποπτος εἶναι ἀνεχώρει εἰς Σπάρτην (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- οἱ μὲν ὡς **μάλιστα** τιμωρήσασθαί τινα βούλονται (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

## 2/ Choose the right option to complete the sentences. The word related to the choice has been underlined:

πλεῖστα / μέγιστον / φρονιμώτατος / πλείστη / ἀρίστη / βέλτιστοι

- οἱ μὲν Πελοποννήσιοι ἐτάξαντο κύκλον τῶν νεῶν ὡς ..... οἳ τ' ἦσαν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἔδει γὰρ καὶ τοὺς Ἀθηναίους ναυσί τε καὶ στρατιᾶ ὡς ..... ἐπὶ τοὺς Χαλκιδέας παραγενέσθαι (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

- ὡς ..... οἱ νεώτεροι ἔσονται (Plato, *Apologia*).
- χρημάτων οὐκ αἰσχύνῃ ἐπιμελούμενος ὅπως σοι ἔσται ὡς ..... (Plato, *Apologia*).
- ... ἐπιμελεῖσθαι τῆς ψυχῆς ὅπως ὡς ..... ἔσται (Plato, *Apologia*).
- ... ὅπως ὡς βέλτιστος καὶ ..... ἔσοιτο (Plato, *Apologia*).

### 3/ Translate into Greek:

- They arrived as quickly as possible.

.....

- I will do it as well as possible.

.....

- I will give you the best possible books.

.....

- I want you to write a letter as long as possible.

.....

- They gave a prize to the bravest possible soldiers.

.....

### c) Other usages

1/ The sentence αὕτη ἡ πόλις μείζων ἐστίν can have three translations. Write down the remaining two:

THIS CITY IS LARGER.      THIS CITY IS .....      THIS CITY IS .....

2/ Translate into Greek, taking into account that you are comparing two adjectives:

- He is *more strong* than *clever*.

.....

- They are *more rich* than *wise*.

.....

3/ Read these two sentences and pay attention to the words in bold type:

- οἱ μὲν νεώτεροι **μᾶλλον** χαίρουσι **τοῦ δέοντος** (Isocrates, *Panathenaicus*).
- οἱ δ' ἐχθροὶ **μείζους** **τοῦ δέοντος** γεγονάσιν (Demosthenes, *Philippica 1*).

What is the meaning of **τοῦ δέοντος**? .....

4/ Read these sentences that show the comparative of inferiority:

- ἥττον μὲν ὢν **πολεμικὸς** τοῦ Κίμωνος, ἀγοραῖος δὲ καὶ πολιτικὸς **μᾶλλον**, ταχὺ τὴν πολιτείαν εἰς ἀντίπαλον κατέστησεν (Plutarch, *Pericles*).
- οἱ θεοὶ οὐδὲν ἥττον εἰσι **κύριοι** τῶν ἐν τῇ γεωργίᾳ ἔργων ἢ τῶν ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ (Xenophon, *Oeconomicus*).
- παρ' ὑμῖν οὐχ **ἥκιστα** **δῆλον** ὃ λέγω (Plato, *Politicus*).
- [ἡ ἀρητὴ] οὕτως ἂν **ἥκιστα** εἴη **διδακτόν** (Plato, *Protagoras*).

5/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the way you translate the words in bold type:

- This man is *rather strong*.

.....

- This house is *too small*.

.....

- You work more *than is necessary*.

.....

- You are *less clever* than your sister.

.....

- I live in a city *less famous* than yours.

.....

- This would be *the least necessary* action.

.....



## g) Pronouns

## 1. Demonstrative pronouns

[28]

a/ Write the corresponding form of οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο to make it agree with the noun:

..... τῷ ξίφει	..... αἱ βιβλίοι	..... ταῖς ναυσί
..... τὰ ὀνόματα	..... τοὺς ἄνδρας	..... ὁ λιμὴν
..... τὰς γυναῖκας	..... τῇ ἀγορᾷ	..... τῷ δεσπότῃ
..... τοῖς στρατοπέδοις	..... τὴν ἐλπίδα	..... αἱ πόλεις
..... τῆς κόρης	..... οἱ βασιλεῖς	..... τὰ ἱερά

b/ Read these sentences:

- **ταῦτα** μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐχέτω· **τάδε** δέ, ὃ Σώκρατες, εἰπέ μοι (Plato, *Crito*).  
 ✧ Make sure you know the difference in meaning between **ταῦτα** and **τάδε**.
- πάντες θεοὶ ἡγοῦνται **ἐκεῖνον** ἀδίκως τεθνάναι (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- **τοῦτό** ἐστὶν **ἐκεῖνο**, ἔφη, ὃ Σώκρατες (Plato, *Charmides*).
- οὐκοῦν πορεύεσθαι χρὴ καὶ ἐπὶ **τούτους** (Plato, *Sophista*).
- Μέλητός με ἐγράψατο τὴν γραφὴν **ταύτην** (Plato, *Apologia*).

c/ Put the demonstrative in the necessary form in Greek:

- [These] ..... τοὺς ἄνδρας ἐν [that] ..... τῇ πόλει ὄρῳ.
- διὰ τί [this] ..... τὰ χρήματα [to that] ..... τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ δίδως;
- τίνες γυναῖκας ὄρῳ; [these ones] .....
- ὁ Περικλῆς [this] ..... εἶπεν· ὦ πολῖται, ...  
 ✧ Attention: Should you use a form of **οὗτος** or of **ὅδε** ?
- ὁ [this] ..... τοῦ στρατηγοῦ υἱὸς αἶε ἐν [that] ..... τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἐστίν.

d/ Translate into Greek:

- *Those* boys were here yesterday.

.....

- Give water to *this* man.

.....

- Have you read *this* book?

.....

- Agamemnon destroyed *those* cities.

.....

- Have you seen *this*?

.....

- What do you think about *this*?

.....

## 2. Personal pronouns

[29]

a/ After each personal pronoun, write the one in brackets in the same case:

σε	(ὕμεις)	.....	ἡμῖν	(ἐγώ)	.....
ἐμου	(ἡμεῖς)	.....	ἐμοί	(ἡμεῖς)	.....
σοι	(ἐγώ)	.....	σου	(ὕμεις)	.....
ὑμῶν	(σύ)	.....	ἡμᾶς	(σύ)	.....

b/ Write the given personal pronouns in Greek in the necessary case:

- οἱ στρατιῶται [you sing.] ..... αἰρήσονται στρατηγόν.
- ὁ στρατηγὸς τιμᾶ [you pl. ] ..... διὰ τὴν ἀρετήν.
- ὁ ἱερεὺς [to me] ..... λέγει τὸ χρηστήριον.
- οἱ πολέμιοι [us] ..... ἀποκτείνειν πειρῶσιν.

◇

- [To me] ..... πατρις οὐκ ἔστιν.
- ὁ Περικλῆς ἐπαινεῖ [you pl. ] ..... , ὃ πολῖται.
- διὰ τί ἐθέλεις [me] ..... ὁρᾶν;
- διὰ τί [you sing.] ..... κελεύεις [me] ..... δίδοναι [to you] ..... τὰ ὅπλα;

c/ Translate into Greek, paying special attention to the translation of the words in italics:

- I see *you*. I give *you* the books.

.....

- I see *her*. I give *her* the books.

.....

- You saved *me*. You gave *me* money.

.....

- Honour *us*. Tell *us* the truth.

.....

- Honour *them*. Tell *them* the truth.

.....

d/ Read these sentences and, with Plato's permission, replace the personal pronouns of 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> person with the corresponding form of αὐτόν as 3<sup>rd</sup> person pronoun:

- δίδαξον καὶ ἐμέ / ..... , ἵνα σοφώτερος γένομαι (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- μέγα σοι / ..... ἐρῶ τεκμήριον (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- οὐδὲν ἡμῖν / ..... ἐστιν ἀγαθόν (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- ἡδίκηκε ἡμᾶς / ..... ἡ πόλις καὶ οὐκ ὀρθῶς τὴν δίκην ἔκρινεν (Plato, *Crito*).

◇

- οὗτος ἐμοὶ / ..... φαίνεται τὰ ἐναντία λέγειν (Plato, *Apologia*).
- δεῖ πρὸς ὑμᾶς / ..... τᾶληθῆ λέγειν (Plato, *Apologia*).
- ὡς ἐμοὶ / ..... δοκεῖ, ... (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- μάρτυρα ὑμῖν / ..... παρέξομαι (Plato, *Apologia*).

### 3. Possessive adjectives

[30]

a/ Write the possessives in the necessary case:

- ἡ [my] ..... πατὴρ καλὴ ἐστίν.
- βούλομαι τὰ [your, sing. ] ..... ὄπλα ἔχειν.
- ἐν τῇ [our] ..... οἰκία τοὺς [your, plural] ..... πολεμίους ἀποκτενοῦμεν.
- ... οὐδεὶς τῶν [my] ..... κατηγορῶν ... (Plato, *Apologia*).
- ἐγὼ μὲν γὰρ ἐρῶ ἐν τῷ [your, sing. ] ..... μέρει, σὺ δ' ἐπειδὴν παύσει, ἐν τῷ [mine] ..... (Plato, *Symposium*).
- ὁ [our] ..... πρόγονος Ἀσκληπιὸς συνέστησεν τὴν [our] ..... τέχνην (Plato, *Symposium*).

b/ Rewrite the sentence replacing the possessive adjective with the corresponding personal pronoun in the genitive:

- ἔχω τὸ σὸν ζῆφος.

.....

- ἔβλεπον πρὸς τὴν ἐμὴν πόλιν.

.....

- ὁ παῖς ἀφίκετο εἰς τὴν ἡμέτεραν οἰκίαν.

.....

- τοὺς ὑμετέρους συμμάχους νικήσω.

.....

- τοῦτο ἔδωκα τῷ σῷ πατρί.

.....

c/ Translate into Greek:

- We will write a letter to his father.

.....

- She took his sword and killed your enemy.

.....

- I saw their enemies walking towards our city.
- .....

- I will send your money to our friends.
- .....

#### 4. Reciprocal pronoun

[31]

a/ Read these sentences and fill in the gaps:

- ὡς δεῦρ' ἐπανάηθομεν, ἦν ἡμῖν, οἷον εἰκός, ὀργή καὶ ἔχθρα πρὸς [each other] ..... (Demosthenes, *Or.* 54).
- ἐπέπλεον δὲ οὐδέτεροι ἀλλήλοις (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ὡς δὲ κατεῖδον ἀλλήλους, ἀντιπαρετάσσοντο (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- οἱ θεοὶ διαφέρονται [from each other] ..... καὶ ἔχθρα ἐστὶν ἐν αὐτοῖς πρὸς ἀλλήλους (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- αἱ πόλεις πρὸς [each other] ..... οὐκ ἀμφισβητοῦσιν αἱ μὲν ταυθ' αἱ δ' ἄλλα φάσκουσαι; (Plato, *Alcibiades*).

b/ Translate into Greek:

- Brothers always fight with each other.
- .....

- Greek cities hated each other.
- .....

- They are different from each other.
- .....

- They talked with each other for a long time.
- .....

#### 5. Anaphoric pronoun

[32]

a) Normal usage

1/ Read these sentences and pay attention to the words in bold type:

- οἱ στρατιῶται **αὐταῖς** διδάσασι τὰ ὅπλα.
- ὁ στρατηγὸς τίθησι **αὐτὰ** εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν.

- ἄρα πιστεύεις **αὐτῷ**;
- ἐπιθυμητῆς εἰμι τῆς σῆς σοφίας καὶ προσέχω τὸν νοῦν **αὐτῇ** (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- ἐστρατεύοντο οἱ Θηβαῖοι ἐπὶ τὰς πόλεις καὶ **πάλιν αὐτὰς** ἀνελάμβανον (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).



- ἐπειρώμην **αὐτῷ** δεικνύναι ὅτι ... (Plato, *Apologia*).
- οὐ λέγεις **αὐταῖς** τὸν λόγον; (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- ἄνεμος καὶ χειμῶν διεκάλυψεν **αὐτούς** (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- [Ψυχρόν ἐστι τὸ ὕδωρ.] καὶ οἱ οἰκέται σου ἄχθονται πίνοντές τε **αὐτὸ** καὶ λούμενοι **αὐτῷ**; (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- ἡ Ἰασία πολεμία **αὐτοῖς** ἦν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

## 2/ Write the pronoun in the necessary form:

- δώσω (to her) τὰ ὅπλα.
- ἄρα οὐχ ὄρᾳς (them) προερχομένους;
- δός (to him) τὰς βίβλους αὐτίκα.
- οἱ νόμοι κελεύουσι (them, masc.) τὴν πόλιν φιλεῖν.
- λέγε (them, fem.) τὴν ἱστορίαν.

## 3/ Translate into Greek:

- Why don't you give the money to him?

.....

- Do you (pl.) see her?

.....

- The general calls them (masc.).

.....

- Have you seen them (fem.)?

.....

## b) No need for anaphoric pronoun in Greek:

1/ Read these sentences and add in Greek the otherwise unnecessary anaphoric pronoun:

- ὁ γεωργὸς προσέβη πρὸς τὴν θύραν καὶ ἀνέωξε .....
- ὁ στρατηγὸς ὄρᾳ τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ διώκει .....
- ὁ ἰατρὸς φίλους ἔχει καὶ ἰατρεύει .....
- ὁ Ἀχιλλεύς, ἐκεῖνον τὸν στρατιώτην ἐλών, ἀπέκτεινε .....

2/ Translate into Greek but avoid translating the word in italics:

- They send a messenger and you capture *him*.

.....

- The teacher writes myths and shows *them* to his friends.

.....

- After attacking the city, they destroyed *it*.

.....

- The father sees his son and calls *him*.

.....

## 6. Identity pronouns

[33]

a/ Read these sentences and decide whether the word in bold type means SAME or SELF :

- ἐθέλουσι πάλιν μάχεσθαι τοῖς **αὐτοῖς** (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- **αὐτὸς** πολλῶν ἤδη πολέμων ἔμπειρός εἰμι (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἐπορεύετο τὴν **αὐτὴν** ὁδὸν ἣνπερ βασιλεὺς ὅτε ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἐστράτευσεν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- **αὐτῇ** ἡ δύναμις τῆς πολέως [τοῦτο] σημαίνει (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

◇

- ὁ **αὐτὸς** ἄρξει ὑμῶν ὅσπερ καὶ πρότερον· οἰκήσετε δὲ τὰς **αὐτὰς** οἰκίας καὶ χώραν τὴν **αὐτὴν** ἐργάσεσθε καὶ γυναῖξι ταῖς **αὐταῖς** συνοικήσετε ὅσπερ νῦν (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- περὶ τὰς **αὐτὰς** ἡμέρας καὶ οἱ Καμαριναῖοι ἀφικνοῦνται (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

- φαίνεται ναυσι πλείσταις **αὐτὸς** ἀφικόμενος (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- **αὐτοὶ** οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἀπέδοσαν τὸ τείχισμα (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

b/ Replace the English word with the corresponding Greek form of αὐτός :

- τῷ [same] ..... ξίφει χρῆσθαι βούλομαι.
- τὴν [same] ..... πόλιν φιλοῦμεν σύ τε καὶ ἐγώ.
- τὴν πατρίδα [itself] ..... προέδωκεν.
- τῷ ξίφει [itself] ..... χρῆσθαι βούλομαι
- αὐτὴ ἐν τῇ [same] ..... μάχῃ ἐμαχήσατο.
- τὴν κόρην [herself] ..... φιλοῦμεν σύ τε καὶ ἐγώ
- σὺ καὶ ἐγὼ τοὺς [same] ..... φίλους ἔχομεν.

c/ Translate into Greek:

- Did you see the teacher himself?

.....

- Did you see the same teacher?

.....

- Did you yourself see the teacher?

.....

- Did the Persians take the same city?

.....

- Did the Persians take the city itself?

.....

◇

- Did the Persians themselves take the city?

.....

- We always eat the same.

.....



- I am now in the same place.

.....

- I am now in the place itself.

.....

- I will tell him this myself.

.....

## 7. Reflexive pronouns

[34]

a/ Write the acc. singular and plural of the reflexive pronouns of the three persons:

1 <sup>st</sup> person	Singular	.....	Plural	.....
2 <sup>nd</sup> person	Singular	.....	Plural	.....
3 <sup>rd</sup> person	Singular	.....	Plural	.....

b/ Write the contract forms for *ἑαυτῶ* and *ἑαυτοῖς* :

.....

c/ Read these sentences:

- τοῦτο ὑπὲρ **ἑμαυτοῦ** ἐποίησα.
- ἐὰν τοῦτο ποιώμεθα, **ἡμᾶς αὐτάς** βλάνομεν.
- πρὸς **ἑμαυτὸν** ... ἐλογιζόμην ὅτι τούτου μὲν τοῦ ἀνθρώπου ἐγὼ σοφώτερός εἰμι (Plato, *Apologia*).
- ἀλλὰ γὰρ οὐτ' αὐτὸς δύναμαι πεῖσαι **ἑμαυτὸν** ὡς ... (Plato, *Theaetetus*).
- ἀναμιμνήσκου δι' εἰ πάποτ' εἶπες πρὸς **σεαυτὸν** ὅτι ... (Plato, *Theaetetus*).

d/ Complete these sentences:

- ἐν νηὶ χειμαζομένη ποτέρῳ ἂν μᾶλλον ἐπιτρέποις [yourself] ..... τε καὶ τὰ [of yourself] .....  
τῷ κυβερνήτῃ ἢ τῷ φιλοσόφῳ; (Plato, *Amatores*).
- ἔδοξέ μοι οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ δοκεῖν μὲν εἶναι σοφὸς ἄλλοις τε πολλοῖς ἀνθρώποις καὶ μάλιστα [to himself] ..... ,  
εἶναι δ' οὐ (Plato, *Apologia*).
- πότερον οὖν δι' ῥάδιον τυγχάνει [ὄν] τὸ γινῶναι [oneself] ..... ἢ χαλεπὸν τι; (Plato, *Alcibiades*).

- Μένων δὲ συνέλεξε τὸ [of himself] ..... στράτευμα (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- Νίκιας Γυλίππῳ [himself] ..... παραδίδοσι (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- συγκαλέσαντες οὖν τοὺς [of themselves] ..... στρατιώτας ἀπολοφύροντο τὴν [of themselves] ..... συμφορὰν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). ✧ Somebody has bad luck.

#### e/ Translate into Greek:

✧ Although in some cases the middle voice could be used to express reflexivity, use the reflexive pronouns here.

- I wash myself. You wash yourself. He washes himself. She washes herself.
- .....

- He writes about himself.
- .....

- I have bought this for myself.
- .....

- They (masc.) do not know themselves.
- .....

- They (fem.) have wounded themselves.
- .....

#### A special case: 3<sup>rd</sup> person reflexive pronouns in subordinate clauses (*indirect reflexive*)

1/ Read these sentences and pay attention to the words in bold type:

- εἶπον ὅτι ὁ βασιλεὺς **σφῖσι** δῶρα δοίη.
  - τίς λέγει ὅτι **οἱ** ὁ βασιλεὺς οὐδὲν δώσει;
  - δέονται ἐᾶσαι **σφῶς** ἐκβῆναι (Plato, *Phaedo*).
  - πολλοὶ πρὸς τὸν Περικλέα προσήλθον, νομίζοντες αὐτὸν **σφῶς** καλέσαι.
  - οὕτως τοῦτο ἐποίησεν ὥστε **οἱ** καιρὸς τοῦ ἐκφυγεῖν γενέσθαι.
- ◇
- ἡ κόρη ἀπῆλθε ἵνα ὁ πατήρ **ἐ** οὐκ ἴδοι.
  - οὐ δεῖν φασὶ **σφῶς** διδόναι δίκην (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
  - οἱ ἄρχοντες ἀναγκάζουσί με **σφῶς** δέχεσθαι.
  - οἱ ἄρχοντες ἀναγκάζουσί με αὐτοὺς δέχεσθαι ✧ What's the difference with the former one?

2/ Translate these sentences using *αὐτός* or the indirect reflexive as needed:

- He wants you to give *him* those books.                    ✧ *him* = subject of main clause

.....

- They said that you had attacked *them*.                    ✧ *them* = somebody else

.....

- She said that Socrates had come across *her*.            ✧ *her* = subject of main clause

.....

- He says that Pericles has seen *him*.                    ✧ *him* = somebody else

.....

- They have come so that they can't find *them*.           ✧ *them* = subject of main clause

.....

## 8. Interrogative pronoun

[35]

a/ What is the main characteristic that differentiates the interrogative pronoun from the indefinite pronoun?

.....

b/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the interrogatives:

- διὰ τί ταῦτα λέγεις;
- τίνα δένδρα κόπτειν βούλει;
- βίβλους τίνος ἀναγιγνώσκεις;
- τίνες ἐπανήλθον χθές;
- τίς δὲ ὦν δεῦρο ἀφίξει πρὸς ἡμᾶς; (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods* 20).
- τίνας ταύτας ἄγεις τὰς γυναικας; (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods* 20).

c/ Now write the requested interrogatives in Greek; to help you, the word which is somehow linked to the interrogative has been underlined:

- [What] ..... γραφὴν σε γέγραπται; (Plato, *Euthyphro*).    γραφή (here) = written accusation
- ὁ Ἔρωσ [what] ..... χρεῖαν ἔχει τοῖς ἀνθρώποις; (Plato, *Symposium*).

- πολλάκις ἐθαύμασα [with what] ..... ποτὲ λόγοις Ἀθηναίους ἔπεισαν οἱ γραψάμενοι ... (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- περὶ [what things] ..... τῇ πόλει συμβουλεύειν οἷοί τε ἐσόμεθα; (Plato, *Gorgias*).
- πατρὸς δέ, ἣν δ' ἐγώ, [of what] ..... ἐστὶ καὶ μητρός; (Plato, *Symposium*).
- [To whom] ..... γὰρ ἂν πόλις ἀρέσκοι ἄνευ νόμων; (Plato, *Crito*).

d/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the interrogatives:

- *Whom* did Achilles kill?

.....

- *To whom* did you tell everything?

.....

- *Which* woman did you see yesterday?

.....

- In *what* city do you live?

.....

- *What* have you done today?

.....

- *For which* soldiers have you brought this?

.....

## 9. Other interrogative pronouns

[36]

a/ Make sure you know what is being asked about when using these interrogatives:

- πόσος asks about a/ quantity b/ quality c/ which of two
- ποῖος asks about a/ quantity b/ quality c/ which of two
- πότερος asks about a/ quantity b/ quality c/ which of two

b/ Choose a Greek interrogative from the list below to complete the sentences:

*ποτέραν / ποτέρῳ / πόσοις / ποῖαι / ποτέρῳ*

- ..... στρατιώταις τὴν πόλιν ἔλαβες;
- ..... σκέλει χωλὸς ἦν ὁ Φίλιππος; (Plutarch, *Quaestiones convivales*).

- ὁ δὲ ῥήτωρ Μάξιμος ἀποθεν ἠρώτησεν αὐτὸν ἐκ τῶν Ὅμηρου, ..... χεῖρα τρώσειεν τῆς Ἀφροδίτης ὁ Διομήδης (Plutarch, *Quaestiones convivales*)     ✧ Take your copy of the Iliad and check it.
- ..... δὴ πείθεσθαι χρή; (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- ἀλλά, ὦ Κέβης, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας ὑπολαβὼν, ..... τούτων αἰ ἀποδείξεις; (Plato, *Phaedo*).

c/ Now translate the English interrogative; to help you, in some sentences we have underlined the word which is somehow linked to the interrogative:

- [What kind of] ..... δένδρα ὀρέῃς;
- [For how much] ..... διδάσκει; (Plato, *Apologia*)     ✧ Some teachers are really expensive.
- [To which of the two] ..... τὰ χρήματα δώσεις;
- [What kind of] ..... βίβλους ἀναγιγνώσκεις;
- [How many] ..... σοι οἰκίαι ἦσαν; [how many] ..... δὲ χώροι; (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἠρώτα αὐτὸν [how much] ..... χρυσίων ἔχει (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

d/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the words in italics:

- *How much* money do you have?

.....

- *Which one of the two* came yesterday?

.....

- *How big* is your homeland?

.....

- *What kind of* friends do you have?

.....

- *To which one of the two* generals have you handed the prisoners over?

.....

- *What kind of* people did you see in that country?

.....

## 10. Relative pronoun

[37]

a/ Complete the table for the relative pronoun:

	Singular			Plural		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nom.	-	-	-	-	- αἱ	-
Acc.	-	- ἧν	-	- οὓς	-	-
Gen.	- οῦ	-	-	-	-	- ὧν
Dat.	-	-	- ᾧ	-	-	-

b/ Complete these sentences writing in the necessary form of the relative to make the sentence make sense; the relative clause, except for the relative itself, has been underlined:

- τὰ χρήματα ..... ἦν ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ ἐστὶ τοῦ πατρός.
- αἱ γυναῖκες ..... χθὲς εἶδες σοφαί εἰσιν.
- ὁ παῖς ..... τὴν βίβλον δίδως εὐδαίμων γενήσεται.
- ἡ γυνή ..... φιλεῖς νῦν ἐν τῇ Ἀκροπόλει ἐστίν.
- ὁ διδάσκαλος μισεῖ τοὺς παῖδας μετὰ ..... σὺ αἰεὶ περιπατεῖς.
- ἡ χώρα περὶ ..... μοι εἶπες καλλίστη ἐστίν.

c/ Translate into Greek; the whole relative clause is in italics:

- The girls *who live on the island* are clever.
- .....

- The boys *who yesterday went to Athens* are prudent.
- .....

- I gave this to the teacher *whom you saw yesterday*.
- .....

- I was conversing with the woman *to whom you have given the books*.
- .....

- They have destroyed the city *in which you lived for ten years*.
- .....

## 11. Indefinite relative pronoun

[38]

a/ Fill the table for the indefinite relative pronoun:

	Singular			Plural		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nom.	-	-	-	-	- αἴτινες	-
Acc.	-	- ἦντινα	-	- οὔστινας	-	-
Gen.	- οὔτινος	-	-	-	-	- ὄντινων
Dat.	-	-	- ὄτινι	-	-	-

b/ Read these sentences and say if the indefinite relative form is used with the meaning of indefinite relative or of indirect interrogative:

- ὅτι λέγεις, ἀεὶ ποιῶ. ✧ Meaning of .....
- εἰδέναι βούλομαι ὄντινα εἶδες χθές. ✧ Meaning of .....
- εἰπεῖν βούλομαι ἄστινας περὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ θανάτου δόξας ἔχουσιν (Lucian, *De Luctu*).  
✧ Meaning of .....
- οὔτινες ποιοῦσι χρήματα δέχονται. ✧ Meaning of .....
- ποιεῖν ἐκέλευε ὅτι βούλομαι (Lysias, *De Caede Eratosthenis*). ✧ Meaning of .....
- δεχόμεθα καὶ τοῦτον, ὅστις ἂν ἦ, τὸν Πάριν (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 20*).  
✧ Meaning of .....
- τέχνην ταύτην ἔχει, τοὺς μὲν ἐχθροὺς μηδὲν ποιεῖν κακόν, τοὺς δὲ φίλους ὅτι ἂν δύνηται κακόν (Lysias, *In Andocidem*).  
✧ Meaning of .....

c/ In these two sentences the normal relative has been used instead of the indefinite; write down the alternative indefinite form that the author could have used:

- ἐπεκήρυξέ τε, ὃς / ..... ἂν ἀλίσκεται εἰς τὸ πέραν διαπλέων, θάνατον τὴν ζημίαν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
✧ Alcibiades gives a hard warning to deserters.
- τὸ δὲ πλῆθος ἐβόα δεινὸν εἶναι εἰ μὴ τις ἐάσει τὸν δῆμον πράττειν ὃ / ..... ἂν βούληται (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
✧ Nobody accepts restrictions...

d/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the words in italics:

- *Whoever* reads is clever.

.....

- He is asking with *whom* you arrived yesterday.

.....

- *Whatever* she says is wise.

.....

- I want to know *who* has done this.

.....

- *Whomever* we met there, we killed him.

.....

## 12. Other indefinite pronouns

[39]

Link each of the indefinite pronouns to their meaning:

ALONE / NOBODY / NEITHER / EACH / BOTH / ANOTHER / SOME / THE OTHER ONE / EACH OF BOTH

ἕκαστος	.....	τις	.....	ἕτερος	.....
οὐδεὶς	.....	ἐκάτερος	.....	μόνος	.....
ἄλλος	.....	ἀμφοτέρω	.....	οὐδέτερος	.....

### ☐ τις, τι

a/ Read these sentences from Xenophon, *Hellenica*:

- Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα Ἡρώδας **τις** Συρακόσιος ἐν Φοινίκη ὦν μετὰ ναυκλήρου **τινός**, ...
- παρῆλθε δὲ **τις** εἰς τὴν ἐκκλησίαν φάσκων ...
- προσελάσαντές **τινες** τῶν ἰππέων λέγουσιν αὐτῷ ὅτι ...
- ἐπεὶ δὲ οὗτος ἐν προσβολῇ **τινι** γενομένη ἀπέθανε, ...
- Ἀλκιβιάδης ἔχων ὀπίτας τέ **τινας** καὶ τοὺς ἰππέας ἐβοήθησε.
- οἱ δ' Ἀθηναῖοι ἔπεισάν **τινας** τῶν Βυζαντίων προδοῦναι τὴν πόλιν.



b/ Insert the necessary form (sometimes as interrogative, sometimes as indefinite):

- – σὺν [which] ..... φίλοις ἦσθα χθές; – ἦν σὺν φίλοις [some] .....
- [Of which] ..... ἀνθρώπου ἐστὶ τοῦτο τὸ ἄροτρον; – τοῦτό ἐστιν ἀνθρώπου [of some] .....
- [Whom] ..... εἶδες χθές; – χθές εἶδον [someone] .....
- ἀνθρωπὸν [some] ..... ἀπέκτεινα ἐν τῇ μάχῃ.
- ἐν οἰκίᾳ [some] ..... ἦν παῖς [some] .....
- – [What] ..... ἐποίησας χθές; – ἐποίησά [something] .....

c/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the words in italics:

- – *Which* girls do you see now? – I see *some* girls.  
.....
- – *To whom* will you give the money? – I will give the money *to somebody*.  
.....
- – *Whose* is the book? – The book is *of someone*.  
.....
- I am doing *something* and you see *someone* there.  
.....
- I lost my weapons in *some* battle.  
.....
- I persuaded *some* of them to give me *some* weapons.  
.....

#### □ ἄλλος, – η, – ο

a/ Write the necessary form of ἄλλος; in some cases, we have underlined the word to which it is somehow related:

- οὔτε οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι οὔτε οἱ ..... τοῖς Πέρσiais μάχεσθαι ἐθέλουσιν.
- καὶ τοὺς μὲν ..... αἰχμαλώτους Θράσυλλος εἰς Ἀθήνας ἀπέπεμψε πάντας (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- αἰτίαι δὲ ..... τε ἦσαν τῶν ἀποστάσεων (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- Θηραμένης δὲ καὶ οἱ ..... πρέσβεις εἶπον ὅτι ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

- τῷ δὲ ..... ἔτει οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι μὲν Θορικὸν ἐτείχισαν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- τὰς μὲν ..... ναῦς λαβὼν πάλιν ἔπλει εἰς Ῥόδον (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

b/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the words in italics:

- I haven't seen the rest of the soldiers yet.
- .....

- Other citizens told me the same.
- .....

- He is living now in another city.
- .....

- They wrote other letters for the king.
- .....

### Double ἄλλος

a/ Read these sentences:

- ἄλλοι πρὸς ἄλλας χώρας ἔφυγον.
- θεοῦς τ' ἄλλοι ἄλλους ἠγοῦνται (Diogenes Laertius, *Vitae Philosophorum*).
- καὶ ἐν τῇ στρατηγίᾳ ἄλλους μὲν εὐρήσει τοὺς τάξοντας ἀνθ' ἑαυτοῦ, ἄλλους δὲ τοὺς μαχομένους (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- οὗτοι μὲν, ὃ Κλέαρχε, ἄλλος ἄλλα λέγει (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

b/ Complete these sentences with a second form of ἄλλος ; the word which is somehow linked to it has been underlined:

- γνώμας ἄλλοι ..... ἔλεγον (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἄλλαις μὲν τὰς βίβλους δώσω, ..... δὲ τὰ ὅπλα.
- ἄλλοι ..... πίστεσιν ἐξαπατηθέντες ἀπώλοντο (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- ..... ἄλλας αἰτίας φέρουσιν (Plutarch, *Quaestiones Convivales*).

c/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the words in italics:

- I love *some*, but I hate *others*.

.....

- *To some* I told the truth, *to others* I told lies.

.....

- *Each one of them* took a *different* book.

.....

- *Each general* has *different* soldiers.

.....

#### □ ἕτερος, - α, - ον

a/ Can you write the resulting contractions?

ὁ ἕτερος > ..... τὸ ἕτερον > ..... τοῦ ἐτέρου > .....

b/ Read these sentences:

- ὁ μὲν **ἕτερος** ἤθελεν, ὁ δὲ **ἕτερος** οὐ.
- ἀπέθανε δὲ καὶ ὁ **ἕτερος** στρατηγὸς Προκλήης (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἐπεὶ δὲ μείζων **ἕτερος** στόλος ἦλθεν ἐκ τῶν Ἀθηναίων ... (Plutarch, *Pericles*).
- ἐπιστολὴν ἐδίδου τῷ **ἐτέρῳ** καὶ ἔπεμπεν (Plutarch, *De Herodoti Malignitate*).

c/ Complete these sentences with the necessary form of ἕτερος :

- τέλος δὲ ὁ ἕτερος τὸν ..... παίει (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ἀλλ' οἶμαι, ὃ Σώκρατες, περὶ γε τούτου τῶν θεῶν οὐδένα ἕτερον ..... διαφέρεισθαι (Plato, *Euthyphro*).  
 ✧ Note: διαφέρομαι rules dative.
- ιδόντες δὲ αὐτὸ εἶπον ..... τῷ ἐτέρῳ· - Τί ἐστι τοῦτο; (Philo Iudaeus, *Legum Allegoriarum Libri*).
- οἱ μὲν τῷ ἐτέρῳ μέρει, οἱ δὲ τῷ ..... χρώμεθα (Plato, *Cratylus*).

d/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the words in italics:

- I gave everything *to one*, but nothing *to the other*.

.....

- The two soldiers killed *each other*.

.....

- I have *one* of the books, and my brother has *the other one*.

.....

- *One* is very fast, *the other* is very slow.

.....

#### ☐ **μόνος, -η, -ον**

a/ Read these sentences, taking into account the several ways of translating **μόνος** :

- **μόνοι** οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι νικᾶν δύνανται.
- οὗτος γὰρ δὴ **μόνος** εἶχε τὴν ἀρχὴν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- παῖδες γὰρ αὐτῶ **μόνω** φαίνονται γενόμενοι (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- καὶ οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι τὸ πρῶτον αὐτοὺς οἰόμενοι τῷ πεζῷ **μόνω** πειράσειν, ἐθορυβοῦντο (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ◇
- οὔτε τῶν τότε συμμάχων ὠφελεῖ οὐδεὶς, ὑμεῖς τε, ᾧ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, ἡ **μόνη** ἐλπίς, δέδιμεν μὴ οὐ βέβαιοι ᾗτε (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- τῶν δὲ Πλαταιῶν τις τὰς πύλας αἴπερ ᾗσαν **μόναι** ἀνεφγμένα ἐκκλησε (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- πεισθὲν τὸ πλῆθος ὑπὸ τοῦ Βρασιίδου δέξασθαι τε αὐτὸν **μόνον** καὶ ἀκούσαντας βουλευσασθαι, δέχεται (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- φαίνονται μοι οἱ πρῶτοι τῶν ἀνθρώπων τῶν περὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα τούτους **μόνους** τοὺς θεοὺς ἠγεῖσθαι (Plato, *Cratylus*).

b/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the words in italics:

- This general is *the only one* who has captured this city.

.....

- This general has captured this city *alone*.

.....

- *Only* the teacher knows everything.
- .....

- Pericles was *the only one* who could persuade the people.
- .....

- I announced this *only* to the citizens.
- .....

- This is *the only* herald that has arrived.
- .....

### □ ἕκαστος, -η, -ον

a/ Complete these sentences with a form of ἕκαστος. In some of them we have underlined the word to which it is somehow related:

- [Each] ..... δοῦλον τὸ αὐτὸ ἠρόμην.
- Φαρναβάζος ἰμάτιόν τ' ἔδωκεν [to each one] ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenicā*).
- κατεσκευάσαντο δὲ καὶ ἐν τοῖς πύργοις τῶν τειχῶν πολλοὶ καὶ ὡς [each one] ..... ἐδύνατο (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- οὐδεὶς ἦσθετο ὅτῳ τρόπῳ [each one] ..... διεφθάρη (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- λέγε δὴ σαφῶς, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, καθ' ἓν [each thing] ..... (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- ἀνεβίβαξε δ' ἐπὶ τὸν πύργον [each] ..... ἄνδρας εἴκοσιν (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).

b/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the words in italics:

- *Each* soldier has weapons.
- .....

- *Each* girl heard the same news.
- .....

- Sophists taught the same in *each* city.
- .....

- Tell *each* student what you have told me.
- .....

□ **ἐκάτερος, -α, -ον**

a/ Read these sentences:

- μετὰ τοῦτο Μυσὸς εἰσήλθεν ἐν **ἐκατέρᾳ** τῇ χειρὶ ἔχων πέλιτην (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- Ἴπποκράτης μὲν οὖν καὶ Θράσυλλος ἐμάχοντο **ἐκάτερος** τοῖς ὀπλίταις χρόνον πολὺν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἐπεὶ δὲ ὀπλίζοντο **ἐκάτεροι** καὶ πρόδηλον ἦδη ἦν ὅτι μάχη ἔσοιτο, ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- εἰπέ μοι, ἔφη, ὦ Ἄριστιππε, εἰ δέοι σε παιδεύειν παραλαβόντα δύο τῶν νέων, πῶς ἂν **ἐκάτερον** παιδεύοις; (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).

b/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the words in italics:

- Yesterday I saw *each of the two* children in the agora.
- .....

- *Each of the two* priests made a sacrifice on the altar.
- .....

- I gave a book *to each of the two* teachers.
- .....

- In *each of the two* cities the citizens chose a new general.
- .....

□ **ἀμφοτέροι, -αι, -α / ἄμφω**

a/ Complete these sentences choosing one of the given options:

*ἄμφω / ἀμφοτέρων / ἄμφω / ἀμφοτέροι / ἀμφοτέρων*

- Ἀθηναῖοι δὲ ἀκούσαντες ..... , ... (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- συμμείζαντες δὲ ἐναυμάχουν, πολλοὺς μὲν ὀπλίτας ἔχοντες ..... (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- γενομένης δὲ μάχης ... φόνος ἐγένετο ..... πολὺς (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἦσθιν δὲ ..... ἀμφὶ τὰ πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα ἔτη ἀπὸ γενεᾶς (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ἐγελασάτην οὖν ..... βλέψαντε εἰς ἀλλήλω (Plato, *Euthydemus*).

b/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the words in italics:

- I have given *both* a prize.

.....

- *Both* generals agreed.

.....

- In *both* cities the citizens heard the same news.

.....

- Have you already read *both* books?

.....

### 13. Negative pronouns

[40]

#### □ οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν

a/ Complete these sentences choosing one of the given options:

*οὐδένα* / *οὐδέν* / *οὐδεμίαν* / *οὐδεῖς* / *οὐδενί* / *οὐδεῖς* / *οὐδεμίαν* / *οὐδεμία*

- ..... εἶδέ με ἀφικόμενον.
- οἱ δὲ ποιηταὶ ..... ἀλλ' ἡ ἐρμημῆς εἰσιν τῶν θεῶν (Plato, *Apologia*).
- ἐκεῖνο ..... οὔτε θεῶν οὔτε ἀνθρώπων τολμᾷ λέγειν (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- ἀλλ', ὦ πρὸς Διός, οὐτάσί σοι δοκῶ; ..... νομίζω θεὸν εἶναι; (Plato, *Apologia*).
- ◇
- ἐγὼ γάρ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, ἀλλήν μὲν ἀρχὴν ..... πώποτε ἦρξα ἐν τῇ πόλει (Plato, *Apologia*).
- Ἀριστεύς δὲ ἐλπίδα ..... ἔχων σωτηρίας, ... (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς γε ..... ἐμαχόμεθα χθές (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ..... [ἔστιν] ὅστις οὐκ ἂν γνοίη ὅτι οὐ τοῦτο λέγω (Plato, *Gorgias*).

b/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the words in italics:

- There's *nobody* in the city.

.....

- I have killed *nobody*.

.....

- This teacher teaches *nothing* bad.
- .....

- There is *nobody* who does not honour Socrates.
- .....

- In *no* city will you find this.
- .....

- This boy has read *no* book.
- .....

### □ μηδείς, μηδεμία, μηδέν

a/ Read these sentences:

- **μηδέν** λέγε ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ.
- οὕτως ἀδικεῖν **μηδείς** θελέτω (Euripides, *Electra*).
- [Xerxes encircled the place], ὅπως ἐκφύγοι **μηδείς** τῶν πολεμίων (Plutarch, *Themistocles*).
- ὁμολογία γίγνεται ὥστε ὅπλα τε παραδοῦναι καὶ μὴ ἀποθανεῖν **μηδένα** (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- διετάξατο δὲ καὶ περὶ τῶν ἰδίων συμμάχων φιλοτίμως, ἵνα κατὰ **μηδένα** τροπον μηδὲν εἰς αὐτοὺς ἀδίκημα γίγνηται ὑπὸ Μακεδόνων (Polybius, *Historiae*).
- δεινὸν **μηδενὶ** ὑμῶν δόξη εἶναι (Thucydides, *Historiae*) ✧ In the meaning of "Don't be afraid, keep calm."

b/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the words in italics:

- They are besieging the city so that *nobody* may go out.
- .....

- Let *nobody* say this.
- .....

- I want you *not* to read *any* book.
- .....

- Tell *nobody* about this.
- .....



□ οὐδέτερος, - α, - ον

a/ Complete these sentences choosing one of the options:

*οὐδετέρων / οὐδετέρω / οὐδέτεροι / οὐδέτερον*

- ..... φιλοσοφίαν διδάξομαι.
- ἐπέπλεον δὲ ..... ἀλλήλοις (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- δίωξις οὐδεμία ἐγένετο, οὐδ' ἄνδρες ..... ἐάλωσαν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- τῶν δὲ Ἑλληνικῶν στρατοπέδων ..... ἦσθετο τῆς μάχης (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

b/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the words in italics:

- *Neither* said anything clever.

.....

- In *neither* land can you find this.

.....

- I trust *neither* general.

.....

□ μηδέτερος, - α, - ον

a/ Read these sentences:

- λύσετε δὲ οὐδὲ τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων σπονδὰς δεχόμενοι ἡμᾶς **μηδετέρων** ὄντας συμμάχους (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἀποροῦσι δ' αὐτοῖς θεράπαινα Φιλωτίς συνεβούλευσε **μηδέτερα** ποιεῖν (Plutarch, *Romulus*).
- ἐὰν δὲ **μηδέτερον** τούτων ἐθέλωσι, ... (Demosthenes, *In Aristocratem*).
- καὶ ἐγένοντο συνθήκαι Ῥωμαίοις καὶ Φιλίππῳ, **μηδετέρους** ἀδικεῖν τοὺς ἐκατέρωθεν φίλους (Appianus, *Macedonica*).

b/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the words in italics:

- I want *neither* army to capture this city.

.....

- I promise to harm *neither* [group of] soldiers.

.....

- I hope that *neither* woman will flee.
- .....

- If you read *neither* book, you will not be wise.
- .....

## h) Adverbs and prepositional adverbs

### 1. (unapplied in this book)

### 2. Modal adverbs

[41]

a/ Form the modal adverb from these adjectives:

ἀληθῆς .....	ἄλλος .....	οὐδείς .....
ἡδύς .....	ἀγαθός .....	
ὄδε .....	ταχύς .....	

b/ What is the meaning of the expression ἄλλως τε καί ?

.....

c/ Write the meaning of each modal adverb:

STRONGLY / FINALLY / HARDLY / IN VAIN / SWEETLY, WITH PLEASURE / PUBLICLY / THIS WAY / TRULY / IN ANOTHER WAY / QUICKLY / SECRETLY / STEP BY STEP

λάθρα .....	βάδην .....	σφόδρα .....
μάτην .....	ἡδέως .....	τέλος .....
δημοσία .....	ἄλλως .....	μόλις .....
οὕτως .....	τάχα .....	ἀληθῶς .....

d/ Read these sentences:

- Ξενοφῶν μέντοι ἐβούλετο **κοινῇ** μετ' αὐτῶν τὴν πορείαν ποιεῖσθαι (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- Χειρίσοφος δ' **πεζῇ** ἐπορεύετο διὰ τῆς χώρας (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ἀκούειτ' ἄν, ἵνα μὴ πολλὴ διατριβὴ γίγνηται **μάτην** (Plato, *Leges*).
- οἱ δ' ἄλλοι **βάδην** ἐπορεύοντο (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- **τέλος** δὲ οἱ Συρακόσιοι ἐνίκησαν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- εὐηργέτουν τοὺς ἐμοὶ διαλεγομένους **προῖκα** διδάσκων (Xenophon, *Apologia*).

e/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the words in italics:

- You have done this *in vain*.

.....

- I could *hardly* run.

.....

- I will go to Athens *with pleasure*.

.....

- The Athenians did not want to say this *publicly*.

.....

- Why did you do it *this way*?

.....

### 3. Comparative and superlative of modal adverbs

[42]

a/ Fill in the comparatives and superlatives for the adverbs below:

- |            |               |               |       |               |       |
|------------|---------------|---------------|-------|---------------|-------|
| – fairly:  | δικαίως       | more fairly:  | ..... | most fairly:  | ..... |
| – quickly: | τάχα / ταχέως | more quickly: | ..... | most quickly: | ..... |
| – easily:  | ράδιως        | more easily:  | ..... | most easily:  | ..... |

b/ Read these sentences:

- οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἀκούοντες τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν **ἤδιον** καὶ **προθυμότερον** συνεπορεύοντο (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- καίτοι πῶς ἂν τις **φανερώτερον** ἐξελέγξειε ψευδόμενον τὸν κατήγορον; (Lysias, *Areopagiticus*).
- **πολεμικώτατα** πρὸς ἀλλήλους εἶχον ἐκ τούτων (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- οἱ Μαντινεῖς ἐξοπλισάμενοι ὡς ἐδυνάοντο **κάλιστα** ἐπαιάνισαν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

c/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the words in italics:

- I have shown this *clearly*, you have shown this *more clearly*, they have shown this *very clearly*, and she has shown this *as clearly as possible*. [clear = σαφής, -ές]

.....

.....

- You speak *prudently*, she speaks *more prudently*, I speak *very prudently*, and they speak *as prudently as possible*.
- .....
- .....

#### 4. Quantitative adverbs

[43]

a/ Match the Greek adverbs with their English equivalents:

ENOUGH / TOO MUCH / ONLY / MUCH / MORE / MOST / ABUNDANTLY / COMPLETELY

ἄδην	.....	μάλα	.....	μόνον	.....
παντάπασιν	.....	ἄλλως	.....	μάλιστα	.....
μᾶλλον	.....	ἄγαν	.....		

b/ What does the expression ὡς οἶόν τε μάλιστα mean?

.....

c/ Read these sentences:

- βούλομαι δ' ἄναξ, καλῶς δρῶν ἐξαμαρτεῖν **μᾶλλον** ἢ νικᾶν κακῶς (Sophocles, *Philoctetes*).
- ἐπεὶ δὲ τούτων **ἄδην** εἶχε καὶ ... (Plutarch, *Marcus Coriolanus*).
- **ἄλλως** ἔχω τοῦ δυστυχεῖν (Euripides, *Orestes*).
- οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι **μάλα** πιεζόμενοι ἀνεχώρουν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- **παντάπασιν**, ἔφη, ἀληθῆ λέγεις (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).

d/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the words in italics:

- I have *too much* money.
- .....

- I have *only* said that you are clever.
- .....

- Have you got *enough* food?
- .....

- I work *a lot*, you work *more*, and he works *most*.
- .....

## 5. Adverbs of time

[44]

a/ Connect each Greek adverb with its meaning:

AGAIN / SUDDENLY / IMMEDIATELY / LONG AGO / ALWAYS / ALREADY / AFTERWARDS / TOMORROW / FIRST / RECENTLY / NEVER / LATE / YESTERDAY / AT ONCE / THEN / TODAY

πάλαι	.....	αὐτίκα	.....	ἀεί	.....
τότε	.....	οὐδέποτε	.....	αὐθις	.....
τήμερον	.....	ὄψέ	.....	πρῶτον	.....
ἐξαίφνης	.....	χθές	.....	ἄρτι	.....
ἤδη	.....	αὔριον	.....		
ἔπειτα	.....	εὐθύς	.....		

Which one of the above expressions has the same meaning as ἐξ ὀλίγου? .....

b/ Read these sentences:

- οὐ **πρῶ** ἔτι ἐστίν; (Plato, *Crito*). ✧ *Socrates is surprised that Crito visits him so early in the morning.*
- **ἐνταῦθα** δὲ καὶ Ἀλκιβιάδης ἦκεν ἐκ τῶν Κλαζομενῶν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- εἰ ἐγὼ **πάλαι** ἐπεχείρησα πράττειν τὰ πολιτικὰ πράγματα, **πάλαι** ἂν ἀπολώλη (Plato, *Apologia*).
- οὐ ράδιόν ἐστιν οὕτως **ἐξαίφνης** πεισθῆναι (Plato, *Cratylus*).
- **χθές** ζητῶν σε οὐχ οἷός τ' ἦ ἰδεῖν (Plato, *Symposium*).

c/ Complete the sentences with the necessary Greek adverb:

- [Immediately] ..... ἐκεῖνος ἔμελλε τελευτᾶν (Plato, *Phaedo*).
- ὅπερ [recently] ..... σε ἠρόμην πειρῶ σαφέστερον εἰπεῖν (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- [Already] ..... ὥρα [ἐστίν] ἀπιέναι (Plato, *Apologia*).
- οἶδα ἄλλους πάνυ [late] ..... πίνοντας (Plato, *Phaedo*).
- δῆλον οὖν ἐκ τούτων ὅτι ἤξει [today] ..... (Plato, *Crito*).
- ἂ μὴ οἶδα [never] ..... φοβήσομαι (Plato, *Apologia*).
- τὸν φιλόσοφον καὶ νῦν καὶ [afterwards] ..... ἀνευρήσομεν ἐὰν ζητῶμεν (Plato, *Sophista*).

d/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the words in italics:

- I won a prize *recently*.

.....

- When I saw him, I went to him *immediately*.

.....

- He always arrives *late*.

.....

- *Long ago* people worked more.

.....

## 6. Adverbs of place

[45]

a/ Connect each Greek adverb with its meaning:

NEAR / IN FRONT OF / HERE / UNDER / FAR AWAY / THERE / IN THE MIDDLE OF / ABOVE / BEHIND / INSIDE / OUTSIDE

μεταξύ	.....	ἐνθάδε	.....	ὄπισθεν	.....
ἄνω	.....	ἐκεῖ	.....	ἔνδον	.....
πλησίον	.....	ἔμπροσθεν	.....	κάτω	.....
ἔξω	.....	πόρρω	.....		

b/ Fill in the gaps using the corresponding directional suffixes:

– everywhere:	πανταχοῦ	– at home:	οἴκοι
– (towards) everywhere:	.....	– (towards) home:	.....
– from everywhere:	.....	– from home:	.....

c/ Complete these tables using the corresponding comparative and superlative forms:

– near:	ἐγγύς	– far away:	πόρρω
– nearer:	.....	– further away:	.....
– nearest:	.....	– furthest away:	.....

d/ Complete these sentences with the necessary Greek adverb:

- τὰς δὲ ναυὸς περιπλεῖν [towards there] ..... ἐκέλευσεν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*)
- αἱ δ' ἄλλαι ἔφυγον εἰς Σηστόν, [from there] ..... δὲ εἰς Βυζάντιον ἐσώθησαν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- καὶ γὰρ συγγενεῖς πολλοὶ [inside] ..... ἦσαν τῶν φευγόντων (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- δοκεῖ [far away] ..... ἀπεῖναι ἢ Λέσβος (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- οἱ μὲν ἀπὸ τῶν πύργων τοὺς ἐπιβοηθοῦντας καὶ [from below] ..... καὶ [from above] ..... εἶργον βάλλοντες (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- τοὺς γονέας τιμᾶν [everywhere] ..... νομίζεται (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- [Near] ..... ἦν τὸ ὄρος (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

e/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the words in italics:

- *Here* comes our friend!

.....

- I was waiting *behind* the walls.

.....

- There were soldiers *everywhere*.

.....

- The battle took place *near* the city.

.....

## 7. Interrogative adverbs

[46]

Complete these sentences:

- λέγε ἡμῖν, [how] ..... με φῆς διαφθεῖρειν, ὦ Μέλιτε, τοὺς νεωτέρους; (Plato, *Apologia*).
- ἐκεῖνο ἴσως ἀμφισβητοῦσιν, τὸ [who] ..... ἐστὶν ὁ ἀδικῶν καὶ [what] ..... δρῶν καὶ [when] ..... (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- ὦ φίλε Φαῖδρε, [to where] ..... δὴ καὶ [from where] ..... ; (Plato, *Phaedrus*).
- [How] ..... οὖν καὶ [how much] ..... ἀμάρτημα φῆς εἶναι γεγονὸς ἡμῖν; (Plato, *Politicus*).



## 8. Indefinite adverbs

[47]

a/ Translate these pairs of sentences into Greek, paying attention to the words in italics:

- *Where* will the battle take place? It will take place *somewhere*.

.....

- *How* will you find your brother? I will find him *somehow*.

.....

- *Where* did you go to after the assembly? I went *somewhere*.

.....

b/ Complete these sentences:

- σύ δ' ἄν [= ἐάν] τι ἔχης βέλτιόν [from somewhere] ..... λαβεῖν, ... (Plato, *Cratylus*).
- ἔχει δέ [somehow] ..... ὧδε· Σωκράτην φησὶν ἀδικεῖν (Plato, *Apologia*).
- Ἔστις σεισμοῦ [at some point of time] ..... γενομένου ἀπήγαγεν ἐξ Ἡλιδος (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ὅτι μὲν πολέμιοι αἰεὶ [at some point of time] ..... γίνονται πάντες ἐπιστάμεθα (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- εἰ δὲ σύ [somehow] ..... ἄλλως γινώσκεις, δίδασκε (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).

## 9. Affirmative and negative adverbs

[48]

a/ Read these sentences:

- νῆ τὸν Δία, ὃ ξένε, ἀληθὲς τοῦτο λέγεις (Plato, *Leges*).
- εἰ δὲ μὴ, πολεμήσειν ἔφη αὐτοῖς (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- - ἄρ' οὖν οὐ καὶ τὸ λέγειν μία τις τῶν πράξεων ἐστίν; - **ναί** (Plato, *Cratylus*).
- πρῶτοι Μαντινεῖς ἀπεψηφίσαντο **μὴ** χρῆσθαι τοῖς ἱεροῖς χρήμασι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- **οὐδαμῶς** ἔνδον διατρίβω (Xenophon, *Oeconomicus*).
- βουλοίμην ἄν, ὃ Σώκρατες, ἀλλ' ὀρωδῶ **μὴ** τὸναντίον γένηται (Plato, *Euthyphro*).

b/ Complete these sentences:

- εἰ οὖν σοι φίλον, [don't] ..... με ἀποκρύψη, ἀλλὰ πάλιν εἶπε ἐξ ἀρχῆς τί ... (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- ἐγὼ γὰρ δὴ [neither] ..... μέγα [nor] ..... μικρὸν σύνοιδα ἐμαυτῷ σοφὸς ὢν (Plato, *Apologia*).

- - ἄρ' οὐδὲ βιωτὸν ἡμῖν ἔστιν μετὰ μοχθηροῦ καὶ διεφθαρμένου σώματος; - [in no way] ..... (Plato, *Crito*).
- [Never] ..... ἄρα βουλήσεται ὁ γε δίκαιος ἀδικεῖν (Plato, *Gorgias*).
- ἐγὼ σοι [yes, by Zeus] ..... ἐρῶ, ὦ Σώκρατες (Plato, *Respublica*).

## 10. Prepositional adverbs

[49]

a/ Answer these questions:

– What is the difference between a *preposition* and a *prepositional adverb* ?

.....

– Except **ἄμα** and **ὥς**, which case must follow if they act as prepositions?

.....

– What case does **ἄμα** take? And **ὥς** ?

.....

– What is the peculiarity of **ἐνεκα** ?

.....

b/ Connect each prepositional adverb with its meaning:

NEAR / WITHOUT / UNTIL / TOGETHER WITH / BEYOND / ENOUGH / EXCEPT / BECAUSE OF / TOWARDS

πλήν	.....	πλησίον	.....	ἄλις	.....
ἐνεκα	.....	ὥς	.....	ἄμα	.....
ἄνευ	.....	πέραν	.....	μέχρι	.....

c/ Read these sentences:

- ὁ Ξενοφῶν καταλαμβάνει ἐν Σάρδεσι Πρόξενον καὶ Κῦρον μέλλοντας ἦδη ὁρμᾶν τὴν **ἄνω** ὁδόν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ἐσκήνωσαν οὖν οἱ υἱεῖς οἱ Κόνωνος τουτουὶ **ἐγγὺς** ἡμῶν (Demosthenes, *Or. 54*).
- οἱ δ' ἐπεδίωκον **μέχρι** κώμης τινός (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- **ἐγγὺς** δὲ γενομένων τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἐμάχοντο ἀπὸ τε τῶν νεῶν καὶ τῆς γῆς (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἐντεῦθεν **πλήν** τετταράκοντα νεῶν ἄλλαι ἄλλη ὄχοντο (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

## d/ Complete these sentences:

- καθορᾶ τὰς τοῦ Μινδάρου ναῦς γυμναζόμενας [far away] ..... ἀπὸ τοῦ λιμένος (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- τὰ μὲν [far away] ..... ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων ἐτέμνετο, τὰ δ' [near] ..... ὑπὸ τῶν φίλων διηρπάζετο (Lysias, *Areopagiticus*). ✧ You can't trust friends...
- πάντες γὰρ ἄνθρωποι τὰ τοιαῦτα οὐχ ὕβρεως ἀλλὰ κέρδους [because of] ..... ποιοῦσι (Lysias, *Areopagiticus*).
- πέμπτη δὲ ἡμέρα ἐξέπλευσαν [outside] ..... τοῦ λιμένος (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- τὴν δὲ Ἄρτεμιν τίνος [because of] ..... οὐ τιτρώσκεις; (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 19*).
- [enough] ..... ἔχω τῆς εὐδαιμονίας (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 20*).

## e/ Translate into Greek using only one word from the list for each expression in italics:

*ἄνευ* / *κάτω* / *ἄνω* / *ἐνεκα* / *μεταξύ* / *ἔνδον* / *ἔμπροσθεν*

- We did it *because of* the money.

.....

- I can't fight *without* weapons.

.....

- She is now *in front of* the building.

.....

- This city lies *between* Athens and Sparta.

.....

- He decided to go *upwards* first, *downwards* later.

.....

- They are always *inside* the house.

.....

**Exercises on all kinds of adverbs:**

[50]

a/ Read these sentences. Each one includes one or more adverbs. They have not been grouped by type on purpose. When you come across an adverb, underline it:

- ἀεὶ ἠδέως ἀκούω σου.
- ποῦ τοῦτο ἠῦρες; ἐκεῖ ἠῦρον, ἔνδον τῆς οἰκίας.

- οὔτε θεοῖς οὔτε ἀνθρώποις πιστεύω.
- πρῶτον δεῦρο ἐλθέ, ἔπειτα ἄκουέ μου.
- οὐδέποτε τοῦτο γενήσεται.
- τοῦτο ἤδη πάλαι ἐγένετο.



- πότε τὰ χρήματά μοι ἀποδώσεις, ὦ υἱέ; ἀποδώσω ποτέ, ὦ πατέρ.
- ποῖ καὶ πόθεν, ὦ φίλε; ἴσως ὡς τὸν Περικλέα;
- ἥδιστα σου ἀκούω τοιαῦτα λέγοντα.
- ἄμεινον ἡμῶν ἀγορεύει ὁ Περικλῆς.
- ὁ Σωκράτης ἀδίκως ἀπέθανεν.
- πάντας φιλῶ πλὴν ἐκείνου ἐγγὺς τῆς οἰκίας μένοντος.



- δεῖ ἡμᾶς που ὕδωρ εὐρεῖν.
- τούτου ἔνεκα αὐτὸν ἀπέκτεινας; μάλιστα ἡμαρτες, ὦ φίλε.
- τέλος δὲ πάντες ἀφίκοντο.
- – πῶς ἔχεις; – κακῶς ἔχω.
- ἰδίᾳ καὶ δημοσίᾳ ἀεὶ τὸ αὐτὸ λέγω.
- τοὺς πολίτας βία ἐπεισα, μάτην δέ.
- ἄγαν λαλεῖς, ὦ φίλε.

b/ Translate into Greek, paying attention to the words in italics:

- *In no way* will I do this.
- .....

- The teacher speaks *truthfully*.
- .....

- *Suddenly* they attacked from outside.
- .....

- It's time to go *home*.

.....

- – *How* are you? – I am *well*.

.....

- I run *more quickly* than you.

.....

◇

- The enemy came *from everywhere*.

.....

- Come *as quickly as possible*.

.....

- I see *neither* the Acropolis *nor* the speakers.

.....

- Will you give me this *for free*?

.....

- *Today* I have worked *too much*.

.....

- *Then* you must rest *tomorrow*.

.....

- Not only tomorrow, but *forever*.

.....

## i) Correlatives

### 1. Correlative adverbs

[51]

*(The distribution of sections in this point does not correspond to the Grammar book.)*

#### a) General concepts

1/ Complete the list of six roles that a family of correlatives may have:

- |                 |         |
|-----------------|---------|
| ▷ Demonstrative | ▷ ..... |
| ▷ .....         | ▷ ..... |
| ▷ .....         | ▷ ..... |

2/ Answer these questions:

- Two of the roles share the same word. Which ones? ..... and .....
- What do we add to the interrogative in order to form the indefinite relative? .....

#### b) Temporal correlatives

1/ Complete the family of correlatives for the adverb **πότε** WHEN :

- |                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| ▷ Direct question: <b>πότε</b> | ▷ Relative: .....            |
| ▷ Indirect question: .....     | ▷ Indefinite relative: ..... |
| ▷ Indefinite: .....            | ▷ Demonstrative: .....       |

2/ Read these sentences and identify the role of the temporal correlatives:

- **πότε** τούτο ποιήσεις; είδέναι βούλωμαι **όποτε** τούτο ποιήσεις.

.....

- **όποτε** τούτο ποιήσω; τούτο ποιήσω **ποτέ**, **όποταν** βούλωμαι.

.....

- οί πολίται έμενον **τότε**, **ότε** σὺ άπησθα.

.....

## 3/ Translate into Greek, using correlatives for the words in italics:

- *When* will you arrive? Tell me *when* you will arrive.

.....  
 .....

- *When* will I arrive? I will arrive *at some point, whenever* I want.

.....  
 .....

- The teachers were in the school *then, when* you were in Athens.

.....  
 .....

## c) Local correlatives

## 1/ Complete the family of correlatives for the adverb ποῦ WHERE :

- |                            |                              |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| ▷ Direct question: ποῦ     | ▷ Relative: .....            |
| ▷ Indirect question: ..... | ▷ Indefinite relative: ..... |
| ▷ Indefinite: .....        | ▷ Demonstrative: .....       |

## 2/ Read these sentences and identify the role of the local correlatives:

- **πόθεν** ἦκεις; εἰδέναι βούλομαι **όπόθεν** ἦκεις.

.....

- ἦκω **ποθέν**, **όπόθεν** εἰπεῖν οὐκ ἐθέλω.

.....

- πάντες ἔτι καί νῦν μένουσιν **ἐκεῖ**, **όθεν** χθές ἀφικόμην.

.....

- **ἐκεῖθεν** ἦκεις; ἀλλά **ποῦ** δεῖ με μένειν;

.....

- **όπου**; δεῖ σε μένειν **όπου** ἂν ἡμεῖς κελεύωμεν, ἴσως **ἐνθάδε**, **οὔ** νῦν εἶ.

.....

3/ Translate into Greek, using correlatives for the words in italics:

- *Where* did you see him?

.....

- *Where? There, where* you were yesterday.

.....

- And *where* did you go then?

.....

- I went *somewhere*, near Athens. I always go *wherever* I want.

.....

**d) Modal correlatives**

1/ Complete the family of correlatives for the adverb πῶς HOW :

- |                            |                              |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| ▷ Direct question: πῶς     | ▷ Relative: .....            |
| ▷ Indirect question: ..... | ▷ Indefinite relative: ..... |
| ▷ Indefinite: .....        | ▷ Demonstrative: .....       |

2/ Read these sentences and identify the role of the modal correlatives:

- πῶς ἐστὶ ἐκεῖ τὰ πράγματα; βούλομαι εἰδέναι ὅπως ἐστίν. ....
- ὅπως; κακῶς ἐστίν. ....
- εἰπέ μοι, πῶς νικήσετε τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους; οὕτως, ὡς ὁ Περικλῆς λέγει;  
.....
- νικήσομέν πως, ὅπως ἂν τοῖς στρατηγοῖς δόκη. ....

3/ Translate into Greek, using correlatives for the words in italics:

- Tell me, *how* is the situation there?

.....

- How? I will tell you *how* it is.

.....



- I will obtain a lot of money *somehow*, as I may decide.
- .....

- So clever are you? Do you always do everything *this way*?
- .....

### e) Correlative adverbs of all kinds

Read these sentences and identify the role of the correlatives:

- **πόθεν** οὖν, ἔφη, ταῦτα μάθοιμεν ἄν; (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*). .....
  - ἐπὶ τῷ λιμένι, **όποτε** μὴ χειμῶν κωλύοι, ἐφόρμηι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). .....
  - ἐκέλευσαν αὐτὸν στρατεύμα τὸ περισωθὲν ἀναλαμβάνοντα καὶ ἄλλο, εἴ **ποθεν** δύναιτο, πολεμεῖν (< Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
.....
  - οἱ γὰρ πολέμιοι, **όπου** ἐπιφαίνονται ὁ Ἀγησίλαος, ἀντιπαρήσαν αὐτῷ (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). .....
  - τὴν πόλιν ἄπασαν ὀρῶν ἐξαμαρτάνουσαν, οὐκ εἶχεν **όπως** ὠφελοίη (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). .....
  - βουλοίμην μὲν οὖν ἂν τοῦτο **οὕτως** γενέσθαι (Plato, *Apologia*). .....
- ◇
- Φαρνάβαζος ἀπεχώρησεν εἰς τὸ Ἡράκλειον τὸ τῶν Καλχηδονίων, **οὔ** ἦν αὐτῷ τὸ στρατόπεδον (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
.....
  - παρεσκευάζετο **ὡς** ἀπαντησόμενος τοῖς πολεμίοις (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). .....
  - Λύσανδρος δὲ εἴ τινὰ **που** ἄλλον ἴδοι Ἀθηναῖον ἀπέπεμψεν εἰς τὰς Ἀθήνας (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). .....
  - νῦν μὲν, **ὡς** ὀρθῶς, ἀποκεκήρυκται μηδένα μετὰ σοῦ στρατεύειν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). .....
  - **όποτε** ἀφικνοῖτο πρὸς Φαρνάβαζον, ἀεὶ ἦγε δῶρα αὐτῷ (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). .....
  - σοῦ, εἰ ταῦτα πράττοις, τίς ἂν **ποτε** γήμειε; (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). .....
- ◇
- ἀλλὰ πάντες οἱ τούτων ἄρχοντες ἔχουσι δεῖξαι **όποθεν** ἔμαθον ταῦτα (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*). .....
  - **όπου** δ' ἂν ἦς, πανταχοῦ περίβλεπτος ἔσει (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*). .....
  - **πῶς** οὖν, ἐὰν μὴ βοηθῆτε ἡμῖν ἀδικουμένοις, οὐ παρὰ τοὺς ὄρκους ποιήσετε; (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). .....
  - ἐμὲ δὲ **ποῦ** χρὴ οἰκεῖν; (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). .....
  - εἴς δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ **ὄδέ** **πῶς** εἶπεν Ἐὰν δὲ ὑμεῖς ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). .....

## 2. Correlative adjectives

[52]

### a) The correlatives SUCH ... AS / SO MANY ... AS and their series

1/ Complete the family of correlatives for the adjective πόσος HOW MUCH :

- |                            |                              |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| ▷ Direct question: πόσος   | ▷ Relative: .....            |
| ▷ Indirect question: ..... | ▷ Indefinite relative: ..... |
| ▷ Indefinite: .....        | ▷ Demonstrative: .....       |

2/ Read these sentences and identify the role of the correlatives:

- οἷός ἐστιν ὁ διδάσκαλος, τοιοῦτος ὁ μαθητής. ....
- ἄρα ἀληθῶς τοσοῦτους πολεμίους ἀπέκτεινας ὅσους ὁ Ἀχιλλεύς; .....
- τοὺς τε λοιποὺς ὅσους μὴ ἀπεκρῦσαντο ξυνεκόμισαν ζῶντας (Thucydides, *Historiae*). ....
- τοὺς μὲν ἄλλους ὁπόσους ἔλαβον κατεβίβασαν ἐς τὰς λιθοτομίας (Thucydides, *Historiae*). ....
- ὅσοι δὲ φθόνῳ καὶ διαβολῇ χρώμενοι ὑμᾶς ἀνέπειθον, οὗτοι πάντες ἀπορώτατοί εἰσιν (Plato, *Apologia*).  
.....
- χρὴ ποιεῖν ὅσα ὁ θεὸς ἐκέλευσεν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). ....

3/ Complete these sentences choosing one of the correlatives; in some sentences, the word which is somehow linked to the correlative has been underlined:

τοιούτους / ὅσα / τοιαῦτα / ὁποίους / ὅσας / ὁπόσους / οἷος / τοιοῦτος

- Φαρναβάζος ἐκέλευε ναυπηγεῖσθαι τριήρεις ἐν Ἀντάνδρῳ [as many as] ..... ἕκαστοι ἀπώλεσαν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ὁ οὖν Κῦρος ἐπεὶ πάντας ἐώρα προθύμους ὄντας πράττειν [as many things as] ..... ἔλεξε, τέλος εἶπεν' ... (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- οὐ πᾶσαι γάρ, ᾧ Ἥρα, [such children] ..... τίκτειν δυνάμεθα, [such as] ..... ὁ Ἥφαιστός ἐστιν (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 16*). ✧ Leto answers Hera's observation about Leto's children sarcastically.
- ἐγὼ μὲν ἡσχυρόμην ἄν, ᾧ Ζεῦ, εἴ μοι [such kind of] ..... υἱὸς ἦν (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 18*).
- πολλὰ [such things] ..... ἠπείλησε (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 19*).
- ὁ δὲ ἐκέλευσε λαβεῖν τούτων [as many as] ..... τε καὶ [of whatever kind] ..... βούλοιτο (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

## b) The series of WHO-WHAT / WHICH ONE OF BOTH

1/ Complete the family of correlatives for the adjective τίς, τί WHO, WHAT:

✧ Note: they are more irregular than the previous ones.

▷ Direct question: τίς, τί	▷ Relative: .....
▷ Indirect question: .....	▷ Indefinite relative: .....
▷ Indefinite: .....	▷ Demonstrative: .....

2/ Read these sentences and identify the role of the correlatives:

- εἰπέ μοί **ὁπότερος** τοῦτο ἐποίησεν.
- **ὅστις** μόνον χρήματα ἔχη ἄν, **οὗτος** οὐδέν ἔχει.
- τίς γυνή ὑπὸ τοῦ Ἀχιλλέως ἀπέθανεν; **-ἦτις**; οὐκ ἔχω εἰπεῖν.
- ἐκέλευον τὸν Θηραμένην λαβεῖν **ὄντινα** βούλοιτο (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- **ὄν** σὺ καλεῖς πατέρα, οὐκ ἔφη σε εἶναι ἑαυτοῦ (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

3/ Complete these sentences choosing one of the correlatives; in some sentences, the word which is somehow linked to the correlative has been underlined:

αἵτινες / τίτι / τινες / ὄν / τιτι / οἵσσιτιν / οἷς

- φῆς σὺ ἀμείνω πολίτην εἶναι [whom] ..... σὺ ἐπαινεῖς ἢ ὄν ἐγώ; (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- ἐρωτώμενος ἐν [what] ..... χρόνω μέλλοι ταῦτα πράττεσθαι, εἶπεν ὅτι ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- διενυκτέρευσαν ἐκείνην τὴν νύκτα παρὰ Χάρωνί [someone] ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἔχεις οὖν εἰπεῖν [which ones] ..... εἰσὶν αἱ ἐπιτηδεύσεις; (Plato, *Gorgias*).
- σὺν [whom] ..... εἶχεν ἦει πρὸς τὸ τεῖχος (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- εἰ ἄλλους ἔχετε [to whomever] ..... ἂν δοίητε αὐτούς, ἐκείνοις δίδοτε (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- οὕτω δὴ ἀπῆλθόν [some] ..... οἵκαδε αὐτῶν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

**C) Common exercises for all correlative adjectives**

Translate into Greek, using correlatives for the words in italics:

- *Whom* did you see yesterday?

.....

- Do you ask *whom* I saw? I saw nobody.

.....

- I have *the same kind of [such]* weapons *as* you have.

.....

- Suddenly, *as many* soldiers *as* you saw yesterday came.

.....

- I do not know *which one of the two* books I will choose.

.....

- In *what* kind of country do you live?

.....

- I live in *such* a country *as* you have never seen.

.....



## THE VERBAL SYSTEM

### a) General observations

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. The tenses
3. The moods
4. The voices
5. Formation of tenses (all voices)
6. Formation of moods (all voices)
7. Types of verbs
8. Principal parts

### b) Verbs in -ω: vocalic verbs

1. Non-contract verbs
2. Study of augment and reduplication
3. Contract verbs

### c) Verbs in -ω: consonantal and liquid verbs

1. Consonantal verbs
2. Liquid verbs

### d) Verbs in -ω: important phenomena

1. Strong tenses
2. Deponent tenses
3. A perfect with present meaning
4. Other presents and perfects with swapped meanings
5. Double tenses

### e) Verbs in -μι: observations and verbs with reduplication

1. General observations
2. Verbs with reduplication in the present

### f) Verbs in -μι: verbs with suffix -νυ- and stem verbs

1. Verbs with suffix -νυ- in the present
2. Stem verbs: without reduplication and suffix

### g) Overview of irregularities and peculiar constructions

1. Overview of irregularities
2. Peculiar constructions

### h) Compound verbs

1. Compound verbs with ἀμφί, ἀνά, ἀντί and ἀπό
2. Compound verbs with διά, εἰς, ἐκ and ἐν ... etc.



**Note on aspect**

- In imperative mood, aorist tense means

a/ punctual action      b/ continuous action

- In participles, aorist tense will usually mean

a/ punctual action      b/ past time

**4. The voices****[55]**

a/ How many voices are there in the Greek verbal system? .....

b/ What are the three reasons why a verb may be in the middle voice?

.....  
 .....  
 .....

c/ Link each one of these frequent deponent verbs to its meaning:

TO BECOME / TO ARRIVE / TO WANT / TO RECEIVE / TO CONVERSE / TO FOLLOW / TO PRAY / TO LEAD / TO ENJOY / TO LOOK AT / TO FIGHT / TO LIE

εὔχομαι	.....	ἔπομαι	.....	θεάομαι	.....
ἀφικνέομαι	.....	μάχομαι	.....	δέχομαι	.....
ἥδομαι	.....	ἠγέομαι	.....	γίγνομαι	.....
ψεύδομαι	.....	βούλομαι	.....	διαλέγομαι	.....

d/ Decide whether the verb is in the middle voice because it is deponent or because it modifies its meaning in active (the modification may be reflexive sense, etc.):

- οἱ πολῖται τοὺς υἱοὺς λύονται ἀργυρίῳ. ....
- οἱ νεανία ἐν τῷ γυμνασίῳ διαλέγονται. ....
- ἄρα βούλει τῷ διδασκάλῳ ἔπεσθαι; .....
- τί δέχονται οἱ στρατιῶται; .....
- οἱ μαθηταὶ λούονται ἐν τῷ ποταμῷ. ....





- ἐγὼ λύομαι τὸν ἵππον. ....  
 ✧ Don't translate by "to ransom"!
- τὰ ὄπλα παρασκευάζονται οἱ στρατιῶται. ....
- τοῖς θεοῖς εὐχόμεθα. ....
- νέον στρατηγὸν αἰροῦνται οἱ στρατιῶται. ....
- ὁ στρατηγὸς τοῖς στρατιώταις ἡγεῖται. ....

e/ In what tenses are the passive and the middle voice different in form?

.....

## 5. Formation of tenses

[56]

### a) Active voice

Write the main characteristic for the formation of each tense in the indicative:

- For present: .....
- For imperfect: .....
- For future: .....
- For aorist .....
- For perfect: .....
- For pluperfect: .....

### b) Middle voice

What are the two differences in formation with respect to the active voice? Complete the answers:

- The personal endings .....
- The perfect and pluperfect do not .....

### c) Passive voice

What are the differences in formation with respect to the middle voice? Complete the answers:

- For the future tense, we must add .....
- For the aorist tense, we must add .....

## 6. Formation of moods

[57]

- a/ What person does the imperative lack? .....
- b/ What is the main characteristic of the personal endings in the subjunctive? .....
- c/ What is the vowel that characterises all the optative tenses? .....
- d/ Infinitive and participle: which is the noun and which is the adjective? .....

## 7. Types of verbs

[58]

### a) The 1<sup>st</sup> conjugation

1/ By what other two names can the 1<sup>st</sup> conjugation be called?

..... and .....

2/ Can you briefly define each of these four types of verbs?

- Non-contract verbs: .....
- Contract verbs: .....
- Consonantal verbs: .....
- Liquid verbs: .....

### b) The 2<sup>nd</sup> conjugation

1/ By what other two names can the 2<sup>nd</sup> conjugation be called?

..... and .....

2/ What are the three types of verbs in the 2<sup>nd</sup> conjugation?

.....

## b) Verbs in -ω: vocalic verbs

### 1. Non-contract verbs

[59]

#### a) Active voice

1/ Write the personal endings for the present indicative and for the present subjunctive and compare them. How do they differ?

– Present indicative: ..... .

– Present subjunctive: ..... .

They differ in .....

2/ Write the personal endings for the aorist and for the perfect indicative and compare them. Where is the only difference?

– Aorist: ..... .

– Perfect: ..... .

They differ in .....

3/ Write the personal endings for the present and for the aorist optative and compare them. What is the characteristic vowel in both tenses?

– Present: ..... .

– Aorist: ..... .

The characteristic vowel is .....

4/ For each tense, write the 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular and the 3<sup>rd</sup> person plural for the verb παιδεύω:

*Indicative mood:*

Present	Future	Perfect
παιδεύω	-	-
παιδεύει	-	-
παιδεύουσι	-	-

Imperfect	Aorist
-	-
-	-
-	-

*Subjunctive mood:*

Present	Aorist
-	-
-	-
-	-

*Optative mood:*

Present	Future	Aorist
-	-	-
-	-	-
-	-	-

5/ Complete the table of infinitives for the same verb:

Present	Future	Aorist	Perfect
παιδεύειν			

6/ Complete the table of participles for the same verb: (just the nominative and genitive sing. for each gender)

Present	Aorist	Perfect
- παιδεύων, -οντος	-	-
-	-	-
-	-	-

## 7/ Answer these questions:

- **θύσω** can represent two forms. Which ones?  
..... and .....
- Which is the only mood that has the imperfect tense? .....
- Which mood has the same personal endings for all tenses? .....
- What scheme of declensions do all active participles follow? .....
- Of the four participle tenses, there is only one that does not follow the **-ντ-** type for the masc. and neuter. Which one? .....

8/ Identify these forms (mood, tense ...) of the verb **κωλύω** :

ἐκόλυσα	.....	κεκωλύκαμεν	.....
κωλύομεν	.....	κωλύσατε	.....
ἐκωλύομεν	.....	κωλύσαιεν	.....
κωλύσαντες	.....	κωλύοντος	.....
κωλύειν	.....	κωλύοι	.....
κωλύσοιεν	.....	κωλύσουσι	.....
κωλύσασα	.....		

**b) Middle voice**

1/ Write the personal endings for the present indicative and for the present subjunctive and compare them. How do they differ?

- Present indicative: .....
- Present subjunctive: .....

They differ in .....

2/ Write the personal endings for the present and for the aorist optative and compare them. What is the characteristic vowel in both tenses?

- Present: .....
- Aorist: .....

The characteristic vowel is .....

3/ For each tense, write the 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular and the 3<sup>rd</sup> person plural for the verb **παιδεύομαι** :

*Indicative mood:*

Present	Future	Perfect
παιδεύομαι	-	-
παιδεύεται	-	-
παιδεύονται	-	-

Imperfect	Aorist
-	-
-	-
-	-

*Subjunctive mood:*

Present	Aorist
-	-
-	-
-	-

*Optative mood:*

Present	Future	Aorist
-	-	-
-	-	-
-	-	-

4/ Complete the table of infinitives for the same verb:

Present	Future	Aorist	Perfect
παιδεύεσθαι			

5/ Complete the table of participles for the same verb: (just the nominative sing. for each gender)

Present	Aorist	Perfect
παιδευόμενος, -η, -ον		

6/ What scheme of declensions do all middle participles follow?

.....

7/ Can you identify these forms (which tense, which mood, etc.) of the middle voice of the verb κλύω ?

κωλύσεται	.....	ἐκωλύσάμην	.....
κωλυσαμένους	.....	κωλύσασθαι	.....
κωλύσοιτο	.....	ἐκωλύετο	.....
κωλύου	.....	κωλύσεσθε	.....
κεκώλυται	.....	ἐκωλύσαντο	.....
ἐκωλυόμεθα	.....		

### c) Passive voice

1/ For each tense, write the 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular and the 3<sup>rd</sup> person plural for the verb λούω :

*Indicative:*

Future	Aorist
-	-
-	-
-	-

*Subjunctive:*

Present	Aorist
-	-
-	-
-	-

*Infinitive:*

Future

Aorist

*Participle: (just the nominative and genitive sing. for each gender)*

Aorist

-

-

-

2/ Are the endings for the aorist passive in all moods similar to the active or to the middle ones?

.....

## 2. Study of augment and reduplication

[60]

### a) Augment

1/ Lengthen the stem of these verbs as if forming the imperfect. Disregard personal endings, meaning, etc., just concentrate on the stem: διώκω > ἐδίωκ- :

*Regular augment:*

δειπνέω .....

θεωρέω .....

θάπτω .....

ζητέω .....

χράομαι .....

διώκω .....

*Verbs that begin with a vowel:*

ιατρεύω .....

ἀκούω .....

ὀφείλω .....

ἐσθίω .....

ὠδίνω .....

ἐλπίζω .....

ἄγω .....

ἐλαύνω .....

ἡγεμονεύω .....

*Irregular augment:*

ἐθίζω .....

ἐργάζομαι .....

ἔπομαι .....

ἔχω .....



Verbs that begin with a diphthong:

οἰκέω ..... εἰκάζω ..... αἶθω .....

Compound verbs (a hyphen has been added to make it easier):

παρα-βαίνω .....	ἐκ-πίπτω .....
προσ-βάλλω .....	συλ-λαμβάνω .....
ἐγ-καλέω .....	ἐξ-ελαύνω .....
κατα-λείπω .....	ἀπο-στέλλω .....
προ-σημαίνω .....	περι-λαμβάνω .....
μετα-βάλλω .....	ἐπι-τρέπω .....

2/ The verb καθεύδω presents a peculiarity in its augment; what is it?

.....

3/ These two verbs experience the phenomenon of double augment; write it (disregard personal endings):

ὄράω ..... ἀνοίγω .....

4/ These two verbs also experience some kind of double augment, but this time the augment is applied to both the prefix and the stem; write it (disregard personal endings):

ἀντιβολέω ..... ἐνοχλέω .....

5/ Read these sentences that feature verbs with unusual augments:

- οὐκ ἡμφεσβήτει, ὃ ἄνδρες, ἀλλ' ὡμολόγει ἀδικεῖν (Lysias, *De Caede Eratosthenis*).
- ἦντεβόλει καὶ ἰκέτευσεν (Lysias, *De Caede Eratosthenis*).
- τὴν θύραν ἀνέφξεν (Lysias, *De Caede Eratosthenis*).
- οὐ γὰρ ἐώρων ἐν τῇ νυκτί (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

## b) Reduplication

1/ Reduplicate these verbs (concentrate only on the beginning of the stem, disregard personal endings):

*Verbs with normal reduplication:*

κτάομαι ..... δηλέομαι ..... κοιμάω .....

πνέω ..... γεμίζω .....

*Verbs that begin with an aspirated consonant:*

χέω ..... θεωρέω ..... φυτεύω .....

*Verbs that begin with a vowel:*

οιδέω ..... όμολογέω ..... όλισθάνω .....

άξιόω ..... έρεθίζω .....

*Verbs with prepositional prefix:*

συμμαχέω ..... παρακόπτω ..... διατειχίζω .....

*Verbs that do not reduplicate in the usual way:*

σκέπτομαι ..... ψεύδω ..... σπεύδω .....

σκευάζω ..... ρίπτω .....

2/ The verb άκούω experiences something called *Attic reduplication*; write it: .....

3/ When it stands for reduplication, what happens with the augment in the moods other than indicative?

.....

For instance, what is the perfect infinitive active for ψαύω if its perfect indicative active is έψαυκα?

.....

## 3. Contract verbs

[61]

What personal endings do contract verbs use for the present optative instead of the usual ones?

.....

### a) Contract verbs in -α-

1/ Fill this table for the present tense for the verb νικάω (in active voice):

<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Optative</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Participle</i>
-	-		-
-	-		
-	-		-
-	-		
-	-		-
-	-		

2/ Identify these forms:

ἐνίκησε .....	ἐνικώμεθα .....
νικῆσαι .....	νικήσομαι .....
νικά .....	νικῶσα .....
ἐνικᾶτε .....	νενίκημαι .....
νικήσεις .....	ἐνίκων .....
νικώμην .....	νικησοίμην .....
νικᾶται .....	

3/ What tenses are identical in -α contract verbs?

..... and .....

4/ Match these -α contract verbs with their meanings:

TO CONSIDER RESPONSIBLE / TO SEE / TO HONOUR / TO DARE / TO CONTEMPLATE / TO OBTAIN / TO WIN / TO CONTEND / TO TRY / TO END / TO SHOUT / TO LAUGH / TO ASK

ἐρωτάω .....	ὀράω .....	κτάομαι .....
θεάομαι .....	τιμάω .....	πειράω .....
ἀμιλλάομαι .....	βοάω .....	αἰτιόομαι .....



## 2/ Identify these forms:

ἡδίκουν	.....	ἀδικῆσαι	.....
ἀδικήσειν	.....	ἡδίκηει	.....
ἀδικοῖντο	.....	ἀδικήσεις	.....
ἀδικήσομαι	.....	ἡδικοῦμεν	.....
ἡδικήθη	.....	ἀδικοίη	.....

## 3/ Match these -ε contract verbs with their meanings:

TO BE IMPIOUS / TO ARRIVE / TO HATE / TO DWELL / TO HELP (IN MILITARY SENSE) / TO NOT KNOW / TO TAKE / TO ASK FOR / TO WITHDRAW / TO DO / TO MAKE WAR / TO BESIEGE / TO LOVE / TO FEAR / TO BE AT A LOSS / TO LOOK FOR / TO RAISE A CLAMOUR / TO REQUIRE / TO SEEM / TO PRAISE / TO DESIRE / TO PREVAIL / TO SAIL / TO HELP (IN NORMAL SENSE)

ἀπορέω	.....	ποιέω	.....	φιλέω	.....
οἰκέω	.....	αἰτέω	.....	ἀγνοέω	.....
πλέω	.....	ἀναχωρέω	.....	ἀφικνέομαι	.....
πολεμέω	.....	φοβέομαι	.....	βοηθέω	.....
δοκέω	.....	ἐπιθυμέω	.....	μισέω	.....
ἐπαινέω	.....	ζητέω	.....	δέομαι	.....
πολιορκέω	.....	ὠφελέω	.....	θορυβέω	.....
αἰρέω	.....	ἀσεβέω	.....	κρατέω	.....

4/ The three verbs below have a common irregularity with respect to the thematic vowel in the future and aorist indicative; what is it? αἰδέομαι ἄρκέω ἐπαινέω

.....

5/ What is the future for the two verbs τελέω and καλέω? Their aorists are ἐτέλεσα and ἐκάλεσα, but their futures are ...

..... and .....

6/ Write the present indicative active of the verb πλέω:

.....

7/ The verb δέω has two presents, a contract one and a non-contract one, for example δέομεν and δοῦμεν. What does each one mean? δέομεν = ..... δοῦμεν = .....

8/ Write the necessary verbal form adapting it from one of the verbs in the list:

θεωρέω / δυστυχέω / ἀγνοέω / θαρρέω / ποιέω / δειπνέω

- [I have bad luck] ..... ἐν τοῖς ἐρωτικοῖς (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods*).
- [Be confident!] ..... τούτου γε ἔνεκα (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods*).
- κατακείμενοι δὲ ἐν σκίμποσιν [they were dining] ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*)
- καὶ οὗτοι ταῦτ' [were doing] ..... ἐν ῥυθμῷ πρὸς τὸν αὐλόν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- [They were watching] ..... τὴν τε Ἰασονίαν ἀκτὴν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- αὐτὸς γοῦν ὁ μάντις [did not know] ..... μὲν ὅτι φονεύσει τὸν ἐρώμενον τῷ δίσκῳ (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods*). ✧ The foreseer didn't foresee even his own future.

### c) Contract verbs in -ο-

1/ Fill this table for the present tense of the verb ἐλευθερόω (in active voice):

<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Optative</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Participle</i>
-	-		-
-	-		-
-	-		-
-	-		-
-	-		-
-	-		-

2/ Identify these forms:

ἠλευθεροῦσθε	.....	ἐλευθερῶσαι	.....
ἐλευθεροῖο	.....	ἐλευθεροῦνται	.....
ἐλευθεροῦν	.....	ἐλευθεροῦσθαι	.....
ἠλευθεροῦντο	.....	ἐλευθερωθῶμεν	.....

3/ Translate into Greek using the necessary form of one of these –o– contract verbs for the words in italics:

δηλόω / δουλόω / ἐναντιόομαι / ἀξιόω

- We *consider* him *worthy* of the prize.

.....

- Xerxes *enslaved* all free men in Greece.

.....

- *Will* you *show* me the money?

.....

- I do not want *to oppose* him.

.....

### Common exercises for all contract verbs

[In order to make it possible to provide a logic translation, only indicatives and infinitives have been used.]

1/ Translate into English:

ἐρωτᾷ	.....	ποιεῖτε	.....	ἐξηγησάμην	.....
τιμῶσι	.....	δηλοῖ	.....	ἐλευθεροῦτε	.....
ἐκράτει	.....	τιμᾶς	.....	τολμᾶτε	.....
τιμᾶν	.....	δηλοῦν	.....		
αἰροῦμεν	.....	βεβαιοῦτε	.....		

2/ Translate into Greek:

to see	.....	we see	.....
you (pl.) win	.....	you (sing.) hate	.....
we ask	.....	he keeps silent	.....
you (sing.) laugh	.....	she resides	.....
to reside	.....	they besiege	.....
she sees	.....	we liberate	.....
to shout	.....	you will observe	.....

## c) Verbs in -ω: consonantal and liquid verbs

### 1. Consonantal verbs

[62]

a/ Link these frequent consonantal verbs with their meaning:

TO LEAD / TO DISHONOUR / TO PURSUE / TO THROW / TO SEND / TO KNOCK / TO PERSUADE / TO CONSIDER / TO LOOK AT / TO WRITE / TO MAKE / TO DISTURB / TO GUARD / TO LIE / TO PREPARE

διώκω .....	ρίπτω .....	ψεύδω .....
πράττω .....	βλέπω .....	φυλάττω .....
πείθω .....	σκευάζω .....	γράφω .....
ἀτιμάζω .....	κόπτω .....	πέμπω .....
ταράττω .....	ἄγω .....	νομίζω .....

b/ Form the future, aorist and perfect indicative active of these verbs (just the 1<sup>st</sup> person singular):

	Future	Aorist	Perfect
γράφω	.....	.....	.....
νομίζω	(!!!) .....	.....	.....
πράττω	.....	.....	.....
ἀτιμάζω	.....	.....	.....
πέμπω	.....	.....	.....
φυλάττω	.....	.....	.....
ψεύδω	.....	.....	.....
κόπτω	.....	.....	.....
πέμπω	.....	.....	.....

c/ Conjugate the perfect indicative middle of the verbs φυλάττω and γράφω (all persons):

.....  
 .....



d/ Write down the tense, mood, voice and present of these verbal forms:

✧ Example: βλεφθέντος aor. / partic. / pass. / βάλλω

πεμφθῆναι	..... / ..... / ..... / .....	πράξεσθαι	..... / ..... / ..... / .....
πεμφθῆς	..... / ..... / ..... / .....	πεπικώς ἴσθι	..... / ..... / ..... / .....
πεμψοίμεθα	..... / ..... / ..... / .....	πειεῖσθαι	..... / ..... / ..... / .....
πέμψαι	..... / ..... / ..... / .....	πεισθέντες	..... / ..... / ..... / .....
ἔπεμψαν	..... / ..... / ..... / .....	πέπεισται	..... / ..... / ..... / .....
πέμψης	..... / ..... / ..... / .....	πεῖσαι	..... / ..... / ..... / .....
πέμψειν	..... / ..... / ..... / .....	πεπικυῖα	..... / ..... / ..... / .....
πέπραχα	..... / ..... / ..... / .....	ἔδεδιωχθε	..... / ..... / ..... / .....
πραχθήσεται	..... / ..... / ..... / .....	ταράξουσιν	..... / ..... / ..... / .....
πραχθῆναι	..... / ..... / ..... / .....	γραψοίμην	..... / ..... / ..... / .....
ἐπράξαμεν	..... / ..... / ..... / .....	ἔρριψάμεθα	..... / ..... / ..... / .....
πεπραγμένον ἦ	..... / ..... / ..... / .....		

e/ For each pair of sentences, read the Greek one and then translate the English one into Greek:

- τότε πρὸς τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν βλέψασα ψόφον μέγα ἦκουσα.

Suddenly they looked towards the city.

.....

- διὰ τί τοὺς λίθους ἔρριψας;

I will not throw this spear.

.....

- ταῦτα τὰ δένδρα κατακόψω.

When I arrived, I knocked on the door.

.....

- τί ἔπραξας χθές;

What will you do tomorrow?

.....



- πρὸς τὰς Ἀθήνας ἐπέμφθη τὰ χρήματα.

These soldiers will be sent to the king.

.....

- ὁ ἐμὸς φίλος ἠτιμάσθη τῆς προδοσίας ἔνεκα.

As you have betrayed your country, you will be dishonoured.

.....

- ἐξαίφνης πάντα ἐτάραξα.

This general will throw everything into confusion.

.....

- ὁ προδότης πεφύλακται.

The prisoners are under surveillance.

.....



- καλὴν βίβλον γέγραφας.

My teacher has written two grammar books.

.....

- σὺ αἰεὶ ἔψευκας καὶ αἰεὶ ψεύσεις.

Look, there's the man who lied about who killed the leader.

.....

- ἤδη πάντα ἐσκεύακας;

Now I will prepare everything.

.....

- πάντες ἐνόμισαν τὸν Περικλέα ἀγαθὸν ἡγεμόνα εἶναι.

I will never think that you are a fool.

.....

## 2. Liquid verbs

[63]

a/ What are liquid verbs?

.....

b/ What double characteristic do they have in the future tense?

.....

c/ And what happens to them in the aorist?

.....

d/ Link these frequent liquid verbs with their meaning:

TO CAST / TO DISPATCH / TO SHOW / TO REMAIN / TO DISTRIBUTE / TO DESTROY / TO JUDGE / TO RAISE / TO ANSWER / TO KILL

διαφθείρω .....	αἶρω .....	βάλλω .....
ἀποκτείνω .....	μένω .....	φαίνω .....
κρίνω .....	νέμω .....	
στέλλω .....	ἀποκρίνομαι .....	

e/ Form the future and aorist indicative active (just the 1<sup>st</sup> person singular) of these verbs:

νέμω .....	/ .....	διαφθείρω .....	/ .....
κρίνω .....	/ .....	στέλλω .....	/ .....
φαίνω .....	/ .....	νομίζω .....	/ .....
βάλλω .....	/ (!) .....	μάχομαι .....	/ .....
ἀποκρίνομαι .....	/ .....		

f/ Write down the tense, mood, voice and present of these verbal forms:

✧ Example: ἀρῶ fut./ind./act./αἶρω

ἠγγέλθαι .....	/ .....	/ .....	/ .....	νεῖμαι .....	/ .....	/ .....	/ .....
μείναντες .....	/ .....	/ .....	/ .....	ἀποκτενοῦντες .....	/ .....	/ .....	/ .....
στελοίμην .....	/ .....	/ .....	/ .....	φῆναι .....	/ .....	/ .....	/ .....
ἀποκρινεῖται .....	/ .....	/ .....	/ .....	κρίναμι .....	/ .....	/ .....	/ .....

g/ The verb νομίζω is not a liquid verb, but its future is νομιῶ. What is this future called, rather than just “liquid”?

.....

h/ The frequent verbs μάχομαι and λέγω also have liquid futures; write them:

..... and .....

i/ For each pair of sentences, read the Greek one and then translate the English one into Greek:

- τὰ χρήματα κατὰ τὸ δίκαιον ἔνειμα.

I will distribute the food among the soldiers.

.....

- ὁ Ἄχιλλεὺς πάντα διέφθειρα.

Will the enemy destroy everything?

.....

- τὰ νέα ὄπλα διὰ ὀλίγου πρὸς σέ στελῶ.

As soon as I received it, I sent it to my brother.

.....

- τὴν ἐπιστολὴν πᾶσιν ἔφηνα.

I will show the city to them.

.....

◇

- πόσους ἀπέκτεινας ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ;

Do not come nearer or I will kill you!

.....

- ὁ αἰχμάλωτος οὐκ ἀπεκρίνατο.

Will he answer if the judge asks him?

.....

- αὐριον τοὺς λίθους ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ ἐκβαλοῦμεν, δεῖ γὰρ ἀροτρεῦειν.

I threw all the furniture through the window.

.....

- ὁ φονεὺς κατὰ τοὺς νόμους ἐκρίθη.

The citizens judged them because he stole money.

.....

j/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the words in bold type:

- οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ **ἀπεκρίναντο** ὅτι περὶ μὲν τούτων σὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ βουλευοῦσιντο (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- καὶ ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ Ἀρμῆνῃ **ἔμειναν** οἱ στρατιῶται ἡμέρας πέντε (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ναῦς πέντε καὶ δέκα **διέφθειραν** τῶν Κορινθίων (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἀκούσας δ' ὁ Πέρσης, ἐκεῖνῳ μὲν οὐδὲν **ἀπεκρίναντο** (Plutarch, *Themistocles*).
- **ἀπέκτειναν** τοὺς ἄνδρας εὐθύς (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι **ἀπέστειλαν** τὰς ἑκατὸν ναῦς (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

## d) Verbs in -ω: important phenomena

### 1. Strong tenses

[64]

#### a) Strong aorist (active and middle)

1/ In the indicative, the strong aorist will take the endings of the ..... tense.

2/ And in the other moods it will take the endings of the ..... tense.

3/ Write the aorist indicative (just the 1<sup>st</sup> person singular) of these verbs:

πάσχω .....	τυγχάνω .....	ἀφικνέομαι .....	
αἰρέω .....	φεύγω .....	ὀφείλω .....	
ὀράω .....	γίγνομαι .....	πίνω .....	
φέρω .....	ἀμαρτάνω .....	ἔχω .....	
λέγω .....	λανθάνω .....	πίπτω .....	

4/ Say from what verb these aorists come:

ἐσπόμεν .....	ἠσθόμεν .....	ἔταμον .....	
ἦλθον .....	ἔλιπον .....	ἔμαθον .....	
ἀπέθανον .....	ἔφαγον .....	ἔπιον .....	
ἔβαλον .....	ἤγαγον .....	ἐπυθόμεν .....	
ἔδραμον .....	ἠρόμεν .....	ἔλαβον .....	

5/ Write the imperfect and the aorist indicative active of πάσχω and compare them:

.....  
 .....

6/ Now write the present and aorist active infinitives and participles and compare them:

Pres. inf. .... Aor. inf. ....  
 Pres. partic. .... Aor. partic. ....

## 7/ Read these sentences:

- μικρὸν δ' ὕπνου λαχὼν εἶδεν ὄναρ (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- λαβόντες τριῶν ἡμερῶν σιτία ἀνήγοντο ὡς ἐπὶ ναυμαχίαν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- τὴν δὲ πόλιν οὐχ εἶλον (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- οἷον ἄλγος ἔπαθον, φίλαι (Euripides, *Ion*).

## 8/ For each group, complete the sentences by putting the necessary verb from the list below in the aorist tense:

*βάλλω / πίπτω / ἔρχομαι / γίγνομαι / ἄγω / εὐρίσκω*

- χθὲς πρὸς τὰς Ἀθήνας [we went] .....
- ὁ παῖς [fell] ..... εἰς τὸν ποταμόν.
- ἐγὼ [found] ..... τὸν θησαυρόν.
- ὁ στρατηγὸς τὸ στράτευμα [led] .....
- διὰ τί τοξεύματα πρὸς τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους οὐκ [you threw] .....
- ἐν τῷ διδασκαλείῳ ἡμεῖς σοφοὶ [became] .....

*ὀράω / ἀφικνέομαι / ἐσθίω / ἀποθνήσκω / λέγω / ἀπολείπω*

- πολλοὶ ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ μάχῃ [died] .....
- οὐδένα ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ [I saw] .....
- πολλὰ ψευδῆ [he said] .....
- διὰ τί τὴν πόλιν [did you leave] .....
- ὅψε [we arrived] .....
- ἐγὼ χθὲς τοῖς φίλοις συνδειπνῶν ἄγαν [ate] .....

*αἰσθάνομαι / μανθάνω / φεύγω / λαμβάνω / ὀράω / τυγχάνω*

- ἄρα τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν [have you seen] .....
- τὸν Σωκράτη σοφὸν ὄντα πάντες αὐτίκα [realised] .....
- τίς τὰ χρήματα [has taken] .....
- χθὲς ἐγὼ ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις [happened to be] ..... οὔσα.

- οἱ πολέμοι ὡς τάχιστα [fled] .....
- πολλὰ ἐν τῷ διδασκαλείῳ οἱ μαθηταὶ [learnt] .....

### b) Root aorists (active)

1/ Write the aorist indicative (just the 1<sup>st</sup> person singular) of these verbs:

γινώσκω ..... χαίρω ..... ἀλίσκομαι .....  
βαίνω ..... φθάνω .....

2/ Say from what verb these aorists come:

ἔστιν ..... ἔφυν ..... ἔδου ..... ἀπέδραν .....

3/ Fill this table for the verb γινώσκω in the aorist tense:

Indicative (in full)	Infinitive	Participle
-		-
-		-
-		-
-		-
-		-
-		-

4/ Read these sentences:

- Ἀλκιβιάδης δὲ ταῖς εἴκοσι τῶν νεῶν περιπλεύσας **ἀπέβη** εἰς τὴν γῆν, ἰδὼν δὲ ὁ Μίνδαρος καὶ αὐτὸς **ἀποβάς** ἐν τῇ γῆ μαχόμενος ἀπέθανεν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- τὸν μὲν τοίνυν νόμον **ἀνέγνω** ὁ μὲν (Demosthenes, *In Neaeram*).
- Ὡς ἔφαθ', οἱ δ' **ἐχάρησαν** Ἀχαιοὶ τε Τρῶές τε (Homer, *Ilias*).
- τῶν δὲ Ἀθηναίων οὐδεμία **κατέδου** ναῦς (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

5/ Complete the sentences by putting the necessary verb from the list below in the aorist tense:

ἀποβαίνω / ἀλίσκομαι / χαίρω / ἀποδιδράσκω / καταδύω

- ἡμεῖς [rejoiced] ..... τῇ ἑορτῇ.



- οἱ δοῦλοι [fled] ..... ἐκ τῆ πόλεως.
- ἡμεῖς πρὸς τὴν ἀγορὰν [went] ..... .
- ἡ ναῦς ταχέως [sank] ..... .
- ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες, μάλιστα [they rejoiced] ..... .
- ἡ πόλις ῥαδίως [was captured] ..... .

### c) Strong future active and middle

1/ Write the future tense (just the 1<sup>st</sup> person) of these verbs:

ἀποκρίνομαι ..... μερίζω ..... νομίζω .....  
 μένω ..... μάχομαι .....

2/ Read these sentences:

- **μαχεῖται** γὰρ ὑμῖν Μαρδόνιος αὔριον (Plutarch, *Aristides*).
- ἡμεῖς δὲ **ἀποκτενοῦμεν** μηδὲν ἀδικοῦντας, ἵνα χρήματα λαμβάνωμεν; (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- **νομιεῖς** αὐτοὺς σοῦ φροντίζειν; (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- ἡμεῖς δὲ σοι **μενοῦμεν**, οὐ φευξοῦμεθα (Euripides, *Bacchae*).

### d) Strong perfect and pluperfect active

1/ Write the perfect tense (just the 1<sup>st</sup> person) of these verbs:

λείπω ..... διώκω ..... φεύγω ..... βλέπω .....

2/ Read these sentences:

- ἃ γὰρ ἐξῆν αὐτῷ λαβεῖν ἅπαντα, τούτων ἡμῖν τὰ ἡμίση **καταλέλοιπεν** (Plutarch, *Alcibiades*).
- οὐδὲ **πέφευγα** δίκην οὐδεμίαν, οὐδ' ἕτερον **δεδίωχα** (Hyperides, *Pro Lycophrone*).
- λείπει δ' ἐν οἴκοις ἄλλον Ἄγαμέμνων γόνον; - **λέλοιπεν** Ἥλέκτραν γε παρθένον μίαν (Euripides, *Iphigenia Taurica*).
- ὁ Βρασιδίας τοῖς **καταπεφευγόσι** κήρυγμα ἐποίησατο (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

### e) Strong future and aorist passive

1/ Write the passive aorist tense (just the 1<sup>st</sup> person) of these verbs (some may have more than one option):

γράφω ..... κόπτω ..... τάσσω ..... διαφθείρω .....

## 2/ Read these sentences:

- ἔγγραφή δὲ ψήφισμα μηδένα τῶν πολιτῶν ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ Δημητρίου κομίζειν (Plutarch, *Demetrius*).
- τούτων μὲν οἱ πλεῖστοι **κατεκόπησαν** (Plutarch, *Pyrrhus*).
- Ἀθηναίων δὲ οὐ πολλοὶ **διεφθάρησαν** (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- λαβὲ τὰ ψήφισμαθ' ἃ τοῖς Θασίοις καὶ Βυζαντίοις ἔγγραφή. λέγε (Demosthenes, *Adversus Leptinem*).
- ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ σημείου οἱ τ' ἔνδον συναλαμβάνοντο καὶ οἱ ἔξω **κατεκόπησαν** (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

**Common exercise for all strong tenses**

Fill the blanks with the verbs from the list and put them in the necessary form:

*χαίρω / καταδύω / γράφω / τάττω / ἀποκτείνω*

- αὗται αἱ ἐπιστολαὶ ὑπὸ τοῦ Περικλέους [were written] .....
- νικήσαντες, ἡμεῖς πάντες [rejoiced] .....
- τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς τὴν μάχην [was arranged] .....
- [They will kill] ..... τὸν φονέα.
- ἡ ναῦς ταχέως [sank] .....

*νομίζω / διαφθείρω / μάχομαι / ἀναγιγνώσκω / εἰσβαίνω*

- [We will not fight] ..... τοῖς σοῖς φίλοις.
- ἄρα τὴν ἐμὴν ἐπιστολὴν [have you read] .....
- οὐδέποτε [we will consider] ..... σε σοφὸν εἶναι.
- εἰς τὴν ναῦν [I went in] .....
- ἡ πόλις παντελῶς [was destroyed] .....

**2. Deponent tenses**

[65]

**a) Verbs with middle future but with active meaning**

1/ Form the 1<sup>st</sup> person plural in the future tense for these verbs:

γιγνώσκω	.....	σιγάω	.....	βαίνω	.....
τυγχάνω	.....	φεύγω	.....	τρέχω	.....

φθάνω .....	λαμβάνω .....	πάσχω .....
όρώ .....	άποθνήσκω .....	

2/ Work out the present of these verbal forms:

πεσούμεθα .....	τεύξει .....	μαθήσει .....
γνώσει .....	δραμεῖται .....	φθήσονται .....
λήψονται .....	άποθανούνται .....	

## b) Verbs with passive aorist but with active meaning

1/ Form the 1<sup>st</sup> person singular in the aorist for these verbs:

φοβέομαι .....	διαλέγομαι .....	όργίζομαι .....
έράω .....	βούλομαι .....	μιμνήσκομαι .....
πορεύομαι .....	έπιμελέομαι .....	δύναμαι .....

2/ Say from what verb these aorists come:

ένεθυμήθην .....	φήθην .....	ήσθην .....
διενοήθην .....	έδεήθην .....	ήπιστήθην .....
έφάνην .....	ώρέχθην .....	

## Common exercises for deponent tenses

1/ Read these sentences:

- σεισμοῦ γενομένου **φοβηθεῖς** ἐξέδραμε τοῦ θαλάμου (Plutarch, *Alcibiades*).
- **ήσθεις** ὁ Ἄρτοξέρξης φιάλην ἔπεμψεν αὐτῷ χρυσῆν (Plutarch, *Artaxerxes*).
- πᾶς σὸς οἶκος **βήσεται** δι' αἵματος (Euripides, *Phoenisae*).
- ἐγὼ γὰρ **περιδραμοῦμαι** τὴν πόλιν (Menander, *Misumenus*).
- αὐτοὶ **φθήσονται** αὐτὸ δράσαντες (Plato, *Respublica*).
- οὐκέτι **έδυνήθη** πλείω εἰπεῖν (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- τοιαῦτα μὲν πρὸς Ἐρμογένην τε **διελέχθη** καὶ πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).



b/ Identify these forms:

ἴσμεν	.....	εἴσεσθαι	.....
εἰδέναι	.....	ἴσθι	.....
εἰδῶ	.....	ἴημεν	.....
εἴσομαι	.....	εἰδότες	.....
εἰδυῖα	.....	εἰδείην	.....

c/ The 2<sup>nd</sup> singular imperative of this verb is identical to that of which verb? .....

d/ Complete the sentences from Plato with the requested form of the verb οἶδα :

- δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι [you know] ..... (Plato, *Apologia*).
- ... , [they know] ..... δὲ οὐδὲν ὧν λέγουσι (Plato, *Apologia*).
- νῦν δὲ εἶ [I know] ..... ὅτι σαφῶς οἶε [to know] ..... τὸ ὅσιον (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- πῶς [will you know] ..... ὅτι τοῦτο ἐστὶν ὃ σὺ οὐκ [you knew] ..... ; (Plato, *Meno*).
- κατάδηλοι γίνονται προσποιούμενοι μὲν [to know] ....., [knowing] ..... δὲ οὐδὲν (Plato, *Apologia*).
- πῶς οὖν ἂν, ὧ δαιμόνιε, [would you know] ..... περὶ τούτου τοῦ πράγματος; (Plato, *Meno*).
- ὅς ἂν τὰ ὀνόματα [may know] ....., [will know] ..... καὶ τὰ πράγματα (Plato, *Cratylus*).

#### 4. Other presents and perfects with swapped meanings

[67]

a) Other perfects with present meaning

1/ From which verbs do these perfect tense forms come and what do they mean in perfect?

εἴωθα	..... / .....	ἔστηκα	..... / .....
πέποιθα	..... / .....	δέδοικα	..... / .....
δέδια	..... / .....	γεγένημαι	..... / .....
πέφυκα	..... / .....	ἀπόλωλα	..... / .....
γέγονα	..... / .....	κέκτημαι	..... / .....
ἔοικα	..... / .....	τέθνηκα	..... / .....

2/ Complete these sentences with the requested form of the given verbs (some verbs may be used more than once):

μέμνημαι / δέδια / κέκτημαι / εἶωθα

- ἐγὼ [am afraid of] ..... περὶ αὐτῶν διαλέγεσθαι (Plato, *Cratylus*).
- ἡ φύσις, ἣν τὸ γένος ἡμῶν τῶν ἀνθρώπων [possesses] ..... , ... (Plato, *Politicus*).
- ὁ Σώκρατες, ἀποκρίνου, ἐπειδὴ καὶ [you are used to] ..... χρῆσθαι τῷ ἐρωτᾶν τε καὶ ἀποκρίνεσθαι (Plato, *Crito*).
- παλαιὸς μὲν οὖν ἔστι τις λόγος οὗ [we remember] ..... (Plato, *Phaedo*).
- οὐ γὰρ σφόδρα ἐν τῷ παρόντι [I remember] ..... (Plato, *Phaedo*).
- πρῶτόν με ὑπομνήσατε ἃ ἐλέγετε, ἐὰν μὴ φαίνομαι [remembering] ..... (Plato, *Phaedo*).

3/ Do the same as in the previous exercise, but the verbs are now given in present (some verbs may be used more than once):

πείθω / δεῖδω / γίγνομαι / ὄλλυμι / φύω

- οὐκ [has perished] ..... ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἀλλ' ἔστι που σῶς (Plato, *Phaedo*).
- οὐδ' ἐγὼ ἀπὸ δρυὸς οὐδ' ἀπὸ πέτρης [was born] ..... (Plato, *Apologia*).
- οὔτε ὡς ἀθάνατος [has been made by nature] ..... οὔτε ὡς θνητός (Plato, *Symposium*).
- [I trusted] ..... μέντοι μητρὶ (Euripides, *Phoenissae*).
- αὐτὸς δὲ τῷ ἵππῳ [trusting on] ..... εἰς τοὺς ἐπομένους τῶν πολεμίων ἐνέβαλε (Plutarch, *Pyrrus*).
- τοιοῖσδε χρησιμοῖς ἄρα χρῆ [to trust] .....; (Aeschylus, *Choephoroe*).
- [I fear] ..... ὦ μητέρα, αὐτὴν φοβερὰ γάρ ἐστιν (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 19*).

ἀποθνήσκω / μιμνήσκομαι / ἵσταμαι / εἶκω

- εἴ γε [I remember] ..... ἀπὸ ταυτησὶ τῆς πέτρας αὐτὸν ἀνῆρπασεν (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 20*).
- ἀνάγκη δὲ, ὡς [it seems] ..... καὶ ἡμῖν συγχωρεῖν (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- – εἰσὶν ἄρα, ἔφη, αἱ ψυχαὶ ἡμῶν ἐν Ἄϊδου; – [so it seems] ..... (Plato, *Phaedo*).
- ὁ μὲν μὴ πειθόμενος ζῆ τὰ νῦν οὐ καλῶς, ὁ δὲ πειθόμενος [has died] ..... καλῶς (Plato, *Epistulae*).
- τί τοὺς θανόντας οὐκ ἔα [to remain dead] ..... (Euripides, *Fragmenta*).
- πυθομένων τῶν Ἀθηναίων ὅτι [was dead] ..... ὁ Ἀντίπατρος, ... (Plutarch, *Phocion*).
- εἰ γὰρ τι μὴ κινεῖται, πῶς οὐχ [it stands] .....; (Plato, *Sophista*).

**b) Presents with perfect meaning**

Complete these sentences with the necessary forms of ἤκω and οἴχομαι :

- μ' ἔρημον [has gone] ..... λιπών (Euripides, *Andromachā*).
- οἱ δὲ δὴ ἄλλοι [have gone] ..... μετὰ δεῖπνον (Homer, *Ilias*).
- λέγειν ἐκέλευον περὶ ὧν [they have arrived] ..... (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι μόνοι τῶν συμμάχων [arrived] ..... (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

**Common exercises for both sections a) and b)**

1/ Change these sentences from plural to singular:

- οἱ στρατιῶται εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἤκουσιν.

.....

- οἱ πολῖται ὄχοντο ἐκ τῆς πόλεως.

.....

- οἱ φιλόσοφοι εὐφρονες πεφύκασιν.

.....

- μάλιστα ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς κάμνειν εἰώθαμεν.

.....

- δεῖ τοὺς τεθνηκότας τιμᾶν. ✧ Change the participle into singular.

.....

2/ Change these sentences from singular to plural:

- ἄρτι δὲ ἦκεις ἢ πάλαι; (Plato, *Crito*).

.....

- ἄρα οὐ μέμνησαι τοῦ πατρός;

.....

- ἡ ἐμὴ μήτηρ πολλὰς οἰκίας κέκτηται.

.....

- δέδια μὴ ὁ ἀδελφὸς οὐκ ἐπανελθῆι.

.....

## 3/ Translate into Greek:

- The teacher has gone to the school. ✧ Meaning that he is there now.
- .....

- The messenger has arrived at the camp. ✧ Meaning that he is there now.
- .....

- Do you know where he lives?
- .....

- Knowing that he was lying, we got angry.
- .....

## 5. Double tenses

[68]

a/ Write the two future tenses of the verbs λέγω and ἔχω :

.....

b/ Write the two aorists of the verb λέγω :

c/ The verbs δύω and ἵστημι both have two aorists each; write them and explain the difference in meaning:

▷ δύω: ..... (.....) ..... (.....)

▷ ἵστημι: ..... (.....) ..... (.....)

d/ The verb πράττω has two perfect tenses; write them and explain the difference in meaning:

..... (.....) ..... (.....)

e/ Read these sentences and find out why, of the two forms of that tense, one has been used and not the other, if there is any difference between the two:

- λέγε μοι, εἰάν τις σε ταῦτα ἐξετάζη, ὦ Καλλίκλεις, τί ἐρεῖς; (Plato, *Gorgias*).
- κατέδυσσε πολλὰς [ναῦς] τῶν πολεμίων (Plutarch, *Nicias*).
- ἐγὼ δὲ κατελαβόμεν μηδὲν ἄξιον αὐτὸν θανάτου πεπραχέναι (Novum Testamentum, *Acta Apostolorum*).
- ἦμος δ' ἠέλιος κατέδου ... (Homer, *Iliad*).
- οἴμ' ὡς κακῶς πέπραγέ μου τὸ τοξικόν (Aristophanes, *Lysistata*).



## e) Verbs in **-μι**: observations and verbs with reduplication

### 1. General observations

[69]

Answer these questions:

- Into how many sub-variants can we divide **-μι** verbs?

.....

- Name a couple of verbs for each sub-variant.

.....

.....

- Why are **-μι** verbs called “athematic verbs”?

.....

### 2. Verbs with reduplication in the present

[70]

#### a) Verb **δίδωμι** TO GIVE

1/ Write the present and the aorist indicative active in full:

.....

.....

2/ Write the present and aorist infinitive and participle active and compare them:

▷ Infinitives: .....

▷ Participles: .....

3/ Change from singular to plural and vice-versa:

δίδως ..... δέδωκας ..... δοῖτε .....

διδούσης ..... δός ..... δούς .....

ἔδομεν ..... ἐδίδοσαν .....

δόντος ..... δῶτε .....

4/ Put the verb **δίδομι** in the requested forms:

- active, present, subjunctive, 2<sup>nd</sup> singular .....
- active, perfect, indicative, 1<sup>st</sup> plural .....
- middle, aorist, infinitive .....
- middle, imperfect, 3<sup>rd</sup> plural .....
- passive, aorist, indicative, 3<sup>rd</sup> singular .....
- active, aorist, participle, nominative feminine plural .....
- active, aorist, participle, genitive masculine singular .....

## 5/ Read these sentences:

- ἐγὼ δεξιὰν ἔλαβον καὶ **ἔδωκα** (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- **δός** μοι, εἶπεν, ὦ βασιλεῦ, τὴν θυγατέρα σου Μαζαίαν γυναῖκα (Lucian, *Toxaris vel Amicitia*).
- τούτων γὰρ ἀπάντων αὔριον ἐθελήσω σοι λόγον **δοῦναι** (Plato, *Philebus*).
- τοῖς Αἰγινέταις οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι **ἔδωσαν** Θυρέαν οἰκεῖν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- μὴ **δῶμεν** τούτοις σχολήν (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- καθαιρόμενοι τῶν τε ἀδικημάτων **διδόντες** δίκας ἀπολύονται (Plato, *Phaedo*).

## 6/ Translate into Greek:

- Give us the money, please. [use aorist]

.....

- Did you give them the books? [use aorist]

.....

- Giving food to the children is good. [use present]

.....

- I will come so that you give me the present. [use aorist]

.....

- By giving him the command, I obtained a lot of things. [use present]

.....

## b) Verb τίθημι TO PUT, TO PLACE

1/ Write the present and the aorist indicative active in full:

.....  
 .....

2/ Write the present and aorist infinitive and participle active and compare them:

▷ Infinitives: .....

▷ Participles: .....

3/ Change from singular to plural and vice-versa:

θοῦ	.....	θῆται	.....	ἐτίθεις	.....
θησομένουσ	.....	θεῖντο	.....	θήσει	.....
ἐτίθετε	.....	τίθης	.....		
ἔθεντο	.....	ἔθεσαν	.....		

4/ Put the verb τίθημι in the requested forms:

- active, present, subjunctive, 3rd singular .....
- active, perfect, indicative, 1<sup>st</sup> plural .....
- middle, present, infinitive .....
- middle, imperfect, 3<sup>rd</sup> plural .....
- passive, aorist, indicative, 3<sup>rd</sup> singular .....
- active, aorist, participle, nominative feminine singular .....
- active, aorist, participle, genitive masculine plural .....

5/ Read these sentences:

- τὰ πρῶτα ὀνόματα οἱ θεοὶ **ἔθεσαν** (Plato, *Cratylus*).
- θεοὺς οἶμαι τοὺς νόμους τούτους τοῖς ἀνθρώποις **θεῖναι** (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- πρὸς τὴν μεγίστην ἀρετὴν μάλιστα βλέπων ἀεὶ **θήσει** τοὺς νόμους (Plato, *Leges*).
- βούλει οὖν, ἔφη, ταῦτα οὕτω **θέντες** διορισώμεθα; (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).

- στέφανον ἐλαίας ἀμφέθηκά σοι τότε (Euripides, *Ion*).
- τίθει πέντε δραχμὰς καὶ ὀβολοὺς δύο (Lucian, *Dialogi Mortuorum*).
- ἀνακομίσαντες ταῦτα εἰς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν συνέθηκαν ἐν τῷ ναῷ (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). ✧ This form can also be found.
- θέσθαι κελεύσας τὰς ἀσπίδας καὶ αὐτὸς θέμενος, ἔλεξεν· Ἄνδρες πολῖται, ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

#### 6/ Translate into Greek:

- Put the weapons here. [use aorist]
- .....

- Where did you put the money? [use aorist]
- .....

- We will set new laws.
- .....

- After depositing the shields, they went away. [use middle aorist]
- .....

- The gods intend to put a name to every child. [use future inf.]
- .....

#### c) Verb ἵσθημι TO SET, TO PLACE and its compounds

##### 1/ Answer these questions about the aorist tense of this verb:

- This verb has two aorist tenses in the active voice; write them (only in the indicative):
- .....
- .....

- Which one has a transitive meaning and which one has an intransitive meaning?

Transitive: ..... Intransitive: .....

- Which one of them is a root aorist? .....

- Write their corresponding aorist infinitives and observe the minimal difference between them:
- .....
- .....

- Write the participles corresponding to these two aorists and observe the differences between them:

	Transitive		Intransitive	
<i>Masculine</i>	.....	.....	.....	.....
<i>Feminine</i>	.....	.....	.....	.....
<i>Neuter</i>	.....	.....	.....	.....

- What meaning does the perfect **ἔστηκα** always have in spite of being active? .....
- What is an alternative form for the perfect participle **ἔστηκώς, -ότος** ? .....

### 2/ Change from singular to plural and vice-versa:

ἴσατε	.....	στήθι	.....	εἰσῆκειν	.....
στήσον	.....	στάσα	.....	ἴσταμεν	.....
ἔστησα	.....	ἰσταῖντο	.....		
ἔστημεν	.....	ἴστανται	.....		

### 3/ Write the requested forms of this verb:

- middle, present, subjunctive, 3<sup>rd</sup> singular .....
- active, perfect, indicative, 1<sup>st</sup> plural .....
- middle, present, infinitive .....
- active, imperfect, 3<sup>rd</sup> plural .....
- passive, aorist, indicative, 3<sup>rd</sup> singular .....
- active, aorist, participle, nominative feminine singular .....
- active, aorist, participle, genitive masculine plural .....

### 4/ Give a transitive and an intransitive meaning (there are several possibilities) for each pair of compounds:

ἀνίστημι	.....	ἀνίσταμαι	.....
ἀφίστημι	.....	ἀφίσταμαι	.....
καθίστημι	.....	καθίσταμαι	.....
συνίστημι	.....	συνίσταμαι	.....

ἀνθίστημι .....	ἀνθίσταμαι .....
ἐφίστημι .....	ἐφίσταμαι .....

### 5/ Read these sentences:

- οἱ πρὸς αὐτὸν **ἀφεστηκότες** ὄντες πλησίον Βαβυλῶνος κακῶς πείσονται, ἂν μὴ αὐτὸς αἰεὶ παρῆ (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- τοὺς μὲν ἰπέας ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν **κατέστησαν** (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἐπεὶ τὸ ἔαρ **ἐπέστη**, ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- τὸ δὲ δέξιον ἄτε οὐ σφόδρα διωκόμενον ἐπὶ λόφου **συνέστη** (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- **ἀναστὰς** ὁ Κριτίας ἔλεξεν ὧδε (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ὁ δ' ἐπεὶ **κατέστη** στρατηγός, μάλα ὀξέως τὰς ναῦς ἐπληροῦτο (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).



- οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἀσφαλῶς ἐν τοῖς δένδροις **ἐστάναι** (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ἐπὶ τὰς τριήρεις τριηράρχους **ἐπέστησε** (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ὁ ἡμέτερος πρόγονος Ἀσκληπιὸς **συνέστησεν** τὴν ἡμετέραν τέχνην (Plato *Symposium*).
- σὺ δὲ δὴ, ὦ Κριτόβουλε, εἰς τὸν περὶ τοῦ κάλλους ἀγῶνα πρὸς Σωκράτην οὐκ **ἀνθίστασαι**; (Xenophon, *Symposium*).
- ἐνταῦθα δ' **ἔστησαν** οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ θέμενοι τὰ ὄπλα ἀνεπαύοντο (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- **ἀναστὰς** δὲ πάλιν εἶπε Ξενοφῶν ἸΩ ἄνδρες, ... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

### 6/ Translate into Greek using compounds of ἵστημι for the expressions in italics:

- We will *appoint* you as general.

.....

- I do not want to *be appointed* as commander.

.....

- Did you *erect* a statue?

.....

- *Stand up!*

.....

- The Athenians *revolted* from the Persians.

.....



- Were you able to resist the enemy?

.....

- Standing together, the three women defeated the soldiers.

.....

- He knows nothing about this affair.

.....

- The citizens put him in command of the allies.

.....

- They made me fall into poverty.

.....

#### d) Verb ἵημι TO CAST, TO SEND and its compounds

1/ Conjugate the present and aorist indicative active in full:

.....  
 .....

2/ Write the infinitives corresponding to the above tenses; to which two other infinitives are they very similar?

..... ✧ Very similar to .....

..... ✧ Very similar to .....

3/ Change from singular to plural and vice-versa:

ἴεμεν ..... ἦσονται ..... ἰᾶσι .....

εἰκώς ..... ὤμεν ..... ἰῶμεν .....

εἶσαν ..... ἔς .....

οὓ ..... ἦκας .....

## 4/ Put the verb ἴστημι in the requested form:

- active, present, subjunctive, 2<sup>nd</sup> singular .....
- middle, perfect, indicative, 3<sup>rd</sup> plural .....
- middle, present, infinitive .....
- passive, imperfect, 3<sup>rd</sup> plural .....
- active, aorist, indicative, 3<sup>rd</sup> singular .....
- middle, aorist, participle, nominative feminine singular .....
- active, aorist, participle, genitive masculine plural .....

## 5/ Link these compounds of ἵημι with their meanings:

TO ALLOW / TO DESIRE / TO BETRAY / TO UNDERSTAND / TO DROP / TO PASS

έφίεμαι .....	συνίημι .....	παρίημι .....
άφίημι .....	μεθίημι .....	προίεμαι .....

## 6/ Read these easy sentences:

- ό δεσπότης **άφίησι** τόν δοϋλον.
- **μεθίησι** τήν λίθον διότι ούκ **έφίησι** αϋτήν επί τόν φίλον βαλεῖν.
- δια τί τοιοϋτον καιρόν **παρήκας** ὦ μορώτατε;
- ἄρα ού **συνίης** ὃ σοι λέγω;
- ό στρατηγός τούς έαυτοϋ στρατιῶτας **προήσεται**.

## 7/ Read these more difficult sentences:

- τῆ δ' ὕστεραία τούς μέν έλευθέρους **άφῆκε** (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- τότε μέν τὸ δαιμόνιον προφασιζόμενος ού διαλέγη μοι, τότε δ' ἄλλου του **έφιεμένος** (Xenophon, *Symposium*).
- τοϋτο **συνιέντες** χάριν έχουσιν ἀλλήλοις (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- οϋτοι δέ ὅτι ούκ ἦθελε τούς φεύγοντας **προέσθαι** έφοβοϋντο αϋτόν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- εϋθύς **άφέντες** τὰ χρήματα έφευγον (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- ό Παγκράτης έφίσταται και **συνεῖς** τὸ γενόμενον ᾧχετο (Lucian, *Philopseudeis*).



8/ Translate into Greek using compounds of ἵημι for the expressions in italics:

- I didn't *drop* the stone.

.....

- He didn't *understand* anything.

.....

- He will *desire* the victory.

.....

- I will never *betray* my friends.

.....

- Do not *let* this opportunity *pass*.

.....

- Yesterday I *let* the prisoners *go*.

.....

## f) Verbs in -μι: verbs with suffix -νυ- and stem verbs

### 1. Verbs with suffix -νυ- in the present

[71]

a/ Conjugate the present and the aorist indicative active of the verb μείγνυμι :

.....  
 .....

b/ Write the infinitives and participles corresponding to the above tenses:

▷ Infinitives: .....

▷ Participles: .....

c/ Give the translation for these frequent verbs of this kind:

ὄλλυμι .....	ρήγνυμι .....	μείγνυμι .....	
ζεύγνυμι .....	δείκνυμι .....	ὄμνυμι .....	

d/ Change from singular to plural and vice-versa:

ἔμειξα .....	δείξον .....	δέδειγμαι .....	
μείξω .....	ἐδείχθησαν .....	ἐδείκνυ .....	
ἐξεύξατε .....	δεικνύτων .....		
ξευγνύς .....	δεδείχαμεν .....		

e/ Put each verb in the requested form:

- μείγνυμι: active, present, subjunctive, 2<sup>nd</sup> singular .....
- ὄλλυμι: active, perfect, indicative, 3<sup>rd</sup> plural .....
- ὄμνυμι: middle, present, infinitive .....
- ρήγνυμι: passive, imperfect, 3<sup>rd</sup> plural .....
- ὄμνυμι: active, aorist, indicative, 3<sup>rd</sup> singular .....

- μείγνυμι: middle, aorist, participle, nominative feminine singular .....
- ὄλλυμι: active, aorist, participle, genitive masculine plural .....

f/ Read these sentences:

- συγκαλέσας τοὺς θεοὺς **ἐπιδείκνυται** τὴν μοχθεῖαν αὐτοῖς (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods*).
- ὄμοσαν πάντες πλὴν Ἡλείων (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ὡς ἤκουσε ταῦτα, τοὺς πέπλους **κατερρήξατο** (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- μίαν ναῦν αὐτοὶ **ἀπόλεσαν** (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- οἱ μὲν **ἀπόλλυντο**, οἱ δὲ ἐσώθησαν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἔλαβε παρ' ἐκάστου δακτύλιον· ἐμβαλὼν δὲ πάντας εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ χλαμύδα καὶ **μείζας, ἔδειξε** τὸ πρῶτον κατὰ τύχην (Plutarch, *Timoleon*).

g/ Translate into Greek :

- I am about to yoke the oxen.

.....

- I have never sworn this.

.....

- He has broken the door.

.....

- Do not mix water with wine.

.....

- The sailors destroyed five ships.

.....

## 2. Stem verbs: without reduplication and suffix

[72]

### a) The verb εἰμί TO BE

1/ Fill in this table for the present tense:

Indicative	Subjunctive	Infinitive	Participle
-	-		-
-	-		-
-	-		-
-	-		-
-	-		-
-	-		-

2/ Write the imperfect and the future indicative:

.....  
 .....

3/ Change from singular to plural and vice-versa:

ἐστέ .....	ἦσθα .....	ἴσθι .....
οὔσης .....	ἐσόμεθα .....	ἦσαν .....
ῶμεν .....	εἶ .....	

4/ When can the form ἐστί be accentuated to ἔστι ?

.....

### Compounds of εἰμί

1/ Link these compounds of εἰμί with their meanings:

TO SURVIVE / TO BE SIDE BY SIDE / TO BE ABSENT / THERE IS A SHARE / TO BE WITH / TO BE PRESENT / TO BE IN

πρόσειμι .....	ἔνειμι .....	περίειμι .....
σύνειμι .....	μέτεστι .....	
πάρειμι .....	ἄπειμι .....	

## 2/ Read these sentences:

- ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Θηραμένης **παρήν**, ἀναστάς ὁ Κριτίας ἔλεξεν ὧδε (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- πόσον δέ, ἔφη, **ἄπεστιν** ἐνθένδε τὸ στράτευμα; (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- ἀγαθοῦ τινός μοι **μετέσται** (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- δεῖ ἄρα ὡς ἔοικε, τῷ κέρδει τοῦτο **προσεῖναι**, τὴν ἀξίαν (Plato, *Hipparchus*).



- εἰ γὰρ σύ μοι ἐθέλοις **συνεῖναι**, ἐξαρκεῖ καὶ οὐδένα ἄλλον ζητῶ (Plato, *Theages*).
- ἡ Αφροδίτη **συνουῶσα** τῷ Ἄρει κατείληπται (Lucian, *Dialogi Deorum*).
- οἱ μὲν πλούσιοι ἄρχουσιν, πένητι δὲ οὐ **μέτεστι** ἀρχῆς (Plato, *Respublica*).
- αὐτὴ **παρέσομαι** καὶ συμπράξω τὰ πάντα (Lucian, *Dearum Iudicium*).

## 3/ Translate into Greek using compounds of εἰμί:

- Is Socrates in?

.....

- I survived thanks to the gods.

.....

- They will always be by your side.

.....

- Pericles is absent.

.....

- We were with him a lot of times.

.....

- Will we have a part of the booty?

.....

## b) The verb εἶμι to go

1/ Fill in this table for the present tense:

Indicative	Subjunctive	Infinitive	Participle
-	-		-
-	-		-
-	-		-
-	-		-
-	-		-
-	-		-

2/ Write the imperfect:

.....

3/ Change from singular to plural and vice-versa:

ἴθι .....	ἴτε .....	/ .....	ἴοιτε .....
ἦεισθα .....	εἶ .....		ιούσης .....
ἴωσι .....	ἦει .....		ἴμεν .....

4/ What is the distribution of present or future meaning among moods for this verb?

Indicative: .....	Optative: .....
Imperative: .....	Infinitive: .....
Subjunctive: .....	Participle: .....

5/ Read these sentences: (compounds of εἶμι are included)

- πρὸ δὲ τοῦ στρατεύματος φῶς ἐποίει, ἵνα μηδεὶς λάθῃ **προσιών** (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- **ἐξιόντες** δὲ εἶπον τὴν θύραν κεκλεισθαι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- χωρία ἦν ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσι ὅθεν **κατιόντες** τινὲς καὶ ἱερεῖα ἐπώλουν ἡμῖν καὶ ἄλλα ὧν εἶχον (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- **ἐπήει** δὲ καὶ ὁ Τελευτίας σὺν τοῖς περὶ ἑαυτὸν ἐν τάξει (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- Ἐρμῆ, λαβὼν τουτὶ τὸ μῆλον **ἄπιθι** ἐς τὴν Φρυγίαν παρὰ τὸν Πριάμου παῖδα τὸν βουκόλον (Lucian, *Dearum iudicium*).

6/ Translate into Greek using compounds of εἶμι :

- Tomorrow I will proceed towards Athens.

.....

- At that time I was returning from Sparta.

.....

- I do not want to leave the city.

.....

- While she was going away from Athens, she saw her son.

.....

- Leave now!

.....

### c) Verb φημί

1/ Conjugate the present and the imperfect indicative:

.....

.....

2/ Change from singular to plural and vice-versa:

φήσας ..... ἔφαμεν ..... φήσεις ..... φάθι .....

3/ Instead of its present participle φάς, φάντος etc., what other participle is usually used?

.....

4/ What syntactical construction does this verb almost always use if used for reported speech?

.....

5/ What does the common combination οὐ φημι mean? .....

6/ Read these sentences:

- ἐκεῖνους μάλιστα ἔγωγέ φημι δεῖν ἐπαινεῖν (Lucian, *Hippias*).
- ἄκουσον ἃ φησιν (Lucian, *Gallus*).

- οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν, **ἔφη**, χρήματα ἡμῖν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἔγωγε, **ἔφη**, τὸν μὴ ἀγαθὰ ἀλλὰ κακὰ ποιοῦντα οὐ **φημι** σωφρονεῖν, τὸν δὲ ἀγαθὰ ἀλλὰ μὴ κακὰ σωφρονεῖν (Plato, *Charmides*).
- ἀλλὰ δεινόν, ὦ Σώκρατες, τοῦτό γε **φάναι** (Plato, *Theaetetus*).

#### d) Verb **δύναμαι**

1/ Conjugate the present and the aorist indicative:

.....  
 .....

2/ Change from singular to plural or vice-versa:

ἐδυνήθη	.....	δύνηται	.....	δυναμένας	.....
ἐδυνάμεθα	.....	δυνήσεται	.....	δυνηθείς	.....

3/ Read these sentences:

- οὐτ' αὐτὸς **δύναμαι** πεῖσαι ἑμαυτὸν ὡς ... (Plato, *Theaetetus*).
- οὔτε νυκτὸς **δύναται** καθεῦδεν (Plato, *Phaedrus*).
- μίαν μὲν ναῦν λαμβάνουσιν αὐτοῖς ἀνδράσι, τὰς δ' ἄλλας οὐκ **ἐδυνήθησαν** (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- οἱ οὐ **δυνάμενοι** ἐπιβῆναι κατὰ γῆν χωρήσαντες τὴν Φειάν αἰροῦσιν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- αὐτὸς οὐκ **ἐδυνήθη** σωθῆναι (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- τὴν τε πόλιν ἐφύλασσε καὶ δι' ἡσυχίας μάλιστα ὅσον **ἐδύνατο** εἶχεν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

#### e) Verb **κεῖμαι**

1/ The verb **κεῖμαι** is often used as the perfect passive of the verb .....

2/ Read these sentences:

- ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδε τὸν νεκρὸν **κεῖμενον**, ἐδάκρυσεν (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- ὁ δὲ ὄρκος ἐστὶ τῷ μὲν βασιλεῖ κατὰ τοὺς τῆς πόλεως **κειμένους** νόμους βασιλεύσειν (Xenophon, *De Republica Lacedaemoniorum*).



- ὁ δὲ Κάλπης λιμὴν ἐν μέσῳ μὲν **κεῖται** ἐκατέρωθεν πλεόντων ἐξ Ἡρακλείας καὶ Βυζαντίου (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ... , καὶ γὰρ λοχαγὸς ἦδει ὅπου **ἔκειτο** ἡ ἐπιστολή, ἐκέλευσα αὐτὸν δραμοῦντα ἐνεγκεῖν τὴν ἐπιστολήν (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- ἔστι δὲ λιμὴν, καὶ πόλις ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ **κεῖται** ἀπὸ θαλάσσης (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

## f) Verb κάθημαι

1/ What is the difference between καθίζομαι and κάθημαι ?

▷ καθίζομαι .....

▷ κάθημαι .....

2/ Read these sentences:

- ὁ ἄρχων αὐτῶν διὰ νυκτὸς ὅλης **κάθηται** (Lucian, *Verae historiae*).
- εἷς ἀνὴρ εἶπεν, ὃς ἔτυχε τότε ἐν τοῖς συμμάχοις **καθήμενος** (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- κύκλω περιόντες καταλαμβάνουσι τοὺς φύλακας ἀμφὶ πῦρ **καθημένουσ** (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- διὰ ταῦτα νῦν ἐνθάδε **κάθημαι** (Plato, *Phaedo*).

## g) Overview of irregularities and peculiar constructions

### 1. Overview of irregularities

[73]

Give the English translation for these verbs and write the 1<sup>st</sup> person singular of the requested tenses. Note that for some verbs the active aorist tense does not exist and they have a passive one with active meaning. Some may have two aorists, others may have a future tense in middle voice only, etc.

*Verbs have been grouped into sets of six at random.*

Verb	Meaning	Present	Future	Aorist
ἔρωτάω	.....	.....	.....	.....
οἶομαι	.....	.....	.....	.....
δοκέω	.....	.....	.....	.....
αὐξάω	.....	.....	.....	.....
γιγνώσκω	.....	.....	.....	.....
ἀφικνέομαι	.....	.....	.....	.....
◇				
δέω	.....	.....	.....	.....
ἐγείρω	.....	.....	.....	.....
δείκνυμι	.....	.....	.....	.....
ἀποδιδράσκω	.....	.....	.....	.....
γίγνομαι	.....	.....	.....	.....
ἐθέλω	.....	.....	.....	.....
◇				
όράω	.....	.....	.....	.....
πάσχω	.....	.....	.....	.....
ἐλαύνω	.....	.....	.....	.....

λανθάνω	.....	.....	.....	.....
μάχομαι	.....	.....	.....	.....
εἰμί	.....	.....	.....	.....
◇				
τυγχάνω	.....	.....	.....	.....
ὑπισχνέομαι	.....	.....	.....	.....
φαίνω	.....	.....	.....	.....
ἔπομαι	.....	.....	.....	.....
έσθίω	.....	.....	.....	.....
λαμβάνω	.....	.....	.....	.....
◇				
φέρω	.....	.....	.....	.....
αἰρέω	.....	.....	.....	.....
μέλλω	.....	.....	.....	.....
εὐρίσκω	.....	.....	.....	.....
ἥδομαι	.....	.....	.....	.....
ἀποθνήσκω	.....	.....	.....	.....
◇				
ἴημι	.....	.....	.....	.....
βάλλω	.....	.....	.....	.....
βαίνω	.....	.....	.....	.....
ἀμύνω	.....	.....	.....	.....
ἔρχομαι	.....	.....	.....	.....
βούλομαι	.....	.....	.....	.....
◇				
ὄλλυμι	.....	.....	.....	.....

ἐπίσταμαι	.....	.....	.....	.....
βλάπτω	.....	.....	.....	.....
ἴστημι	.....	.....	.....	.....
αἰσθάνομαι	.....	.....	.....	.....
πλέω	.....	.....	.....	.....
◇				
μένω	.....	.....	.....	.....
οἶδα	.....	.....	.....	.....
ικνέομαι	.....	.....	.....	.....
ᾄδω	.....	.....	.....	.....
δύναμαι	.....	.....	.....	.....
ἔάω	.....	.....	.....	.....
◇				
πίμπλημι	.....	.....	.....	.....
ἀλίσκομαι	.....	.....	.....	.....
καίω	.....	.....	.....	.....
ἀγγέλλω	.....	.....	.....	.....
τρέχω	.....	.....	.....	.....
ἔχω	.....	.....	.....	.....
◇				
αἶρω	.....	.....	.....	.....
καλέω	.....	.....	.....	.....
φθάνω	.....	.....	.....	.....
διαφθείρω	.....	.....	.....	.....
φοβέομαι	.....	.....	.....	.....
κάμνω	.....	.....	.....	.....

◇

τρέφω .....  
.....φεύγω .....  
.....κλίνω .....  
.....στέλλω .....  
.....τίθημι .....  
.....κομίζω .....  
.....

◇

ἄγω .....  
.....κρίνω .....  
.....ἀποκτείνω .....  
.....λαγχάνω .....  
.....λέγω .....  
.....λείπω .....  
.....

◇

μανθάνω .....  
.....πίπτω .....  
.....μιμνήσκω .....  
.....νομίζω .....  
.....ἀνοίγνυμι .....  
.....πίνω .....  
.....

◇

πυνθάνομαι .....  
.....ρήγνυμι .....  
.....σπένδω .....  
.....τιτρώσκω .....  
.....

χαίρω	.....	.....	.....	.....
δίδωμι	.....	.....	.....	.....

## 2. Peculiar constructions

[74]

a/ Although the passive voice is not a peculiar construction, we consider it convenient to offer some practice in its usage. Transform these sentences into passive:

- οἱ στρατιῶται διαφθεύρουσι τὴν γέφυραν.

.....

- ὁ ἄγγελος ἠγγειλε τὰ νέα.

.....

- οἱ πολῖται ἤκουσαν τοῦ Περικλέους.

.....

- οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι νενικήκασιν τοὺς Πέρσας.

.....

- ὁ ἀνὴρ ἠγάγε τὸς βοῦς.

.....

◇

- οἱ μαθηταὶ ποιήσουσι τὸ ἔργον.

.....

- αἱ κόραι ἀναγνώσονται τὴν βίβλον.

.....

- ὁ ἀνὴρ ἐδίωκε τοὺς παῖδας.

.....

- ἡ θύελλα διαφθερεῖ τὴν γέφυραν.

.....

- τὴν πόλιν ὄψομαι.

.....

b/ Read these sentences and write under each one what is to be noticed about the highlighted verb (maybe the unusual meaning of the verb, or it has an irregular form in that tense, or it rules this or that case, or it must be followed by a participle...):

- **παύομαι** ἐκείνης τῆς διανοίας (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

.....

- **ὑπισχνουῖμαι** σοι, ἔφη, ἐγὼ μέγιστόν σε τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι μετ' ἐμὲ καταστήσειν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

.....

- οὗτος γὰρ ἐμοὶ **φαίνεται** τὰ ἐναντία λέγειν (Plato, *Apologia*).

.....

- ὑμεῖς δέ μου **ἀκούσεσθε** πᾶσαν τὴν ἀλήθειαν (Plato, *Apologia*).

.....

- **μέλλει** ὀλίγον χρόνον σωθήσεσθαι (Plato, *Apologia*).

.....

- καὶ πάνυ **μέλει** μοι τούτων (Xenophon, *Oeconomicus*).

.....

◇

- αὐτοὶ ἢ οἱ πατέρες ἡμῶν βάρβαρον ἢ Ἑλληνα πολέμιον ἐπιόντα προθύμως **ἡμονάμεθα** (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

.....

- Κρέουσα Ξούθῳ **γαμεῖται** (Euripides, *Ion*).

.....

- ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Ἀγησίλαος **ἐλάβετο** τῆς χειρὸς αὐτοῦ (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

.....

- ἡ λύπη τὸ χαλεπώτατον **πέφυκεν** εἶναι πάντων (Plutarch, *Consolatio ad Apollonium*).

.....

- **λέγει** Γοργίας ἀρετὴν εἶναι (Plato, *Meno*).

.....

- ξένως **ἔγω** τῆς ἐνθάδε λέξεως (Plato, *Apologia*).
- .....



- οὐδέν μοι **μέλει** (Plato, *Laches*).
- .....

- ἐπεὶ δὲ οὗτοι ἔπεσον, **ἐτρέπησαν** δὴ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- .....

- τί δὲ ποιῶν αὐτὸς ὁ παιδαγωγός σου **ἄρχει**; (Plato, *Lysis*).
- .....

- τῆς δ' Ἀντιόπης ἀποθανούσης **ἔγημε** Φαίδραν (Plutarch, *Theseus*).
- .....

- ὀλίγοι μὲν αὐτῶν εἰς τὴν ἐσπέραν σίτου **ἐγεύσαντο** (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- .....

- ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτελεύτησε Δαρεῖος καὶ **κατέστη** εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν Ἀρταξέρξης, ... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- .....

c/ Fill the blanks with one of the verbs below and, as in the previous exercise, write under each one what is to be noticed about it:

*πείθομαι / δέομαι / ἐδίδαξεν / ἔγνω / ἐτείσατο / ἔστηκεν*

- ὁ Ἀγησίλαος [decided] ..... διώκειν τοὺς ἐκ τῶν εὐωνύμων προσκειμένους (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἐγὼ ταῦτά σου [beg] ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- εἰ γὰρ τι μὴ κινεῖται, πῶς οὐχ [it is standing] ..... ; (Plato, *Sophista*).
- ὀρθῶς ἔλεξας, [I obey] ..... τέ σοι, κόρη (Euripides, *Orestes*).
- ὅς σε [taught] ..... γράμματα, αὐτός τ' ἦν σοφός (Plato, *Alcibiades*).
- ἐπεὶ δὴ μνηστῆρας [punished] ..... δῖος Ὀδυσσεύς, ... (Homer, *Odyssey*).



ἦδομαι / πέποιθα / ἐξέπεσε / ἐτράποντο / ἔγνω / γεγόνασι

- ἔπειτα δὲ [they turned] ..... εἰς τὸν Πάνορμον (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- [I trust] ..... μέντοι μητρί (Euripides, *Phoenisae*).
- ἐμοῦ γὰρ πολλοὶ κατήγοροι [have appeared] ..... (Plato, *Apologia*).
- [I enjoy] ..... γε ταῦτά σε ἐρωτήσας (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- τέλος δὲ βαλλόμενος ὑπὸ πολλῶν [he went out] ..... τῆς ἀγορᾶς δρόμῳ (Plutarch, *Lycurgus*).
- [He decided] ..... τοῦτο κατασκευαστέον εἶναι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

μέλλει / κατέστη / αἰσθάνομαι / φοβεῖται / πεπεισμένοις / ἐδίδαξε

- [I perceive] ..... ψόφου τινός (Aristophanes, *Ranae*).
- Κλέανδρος [is about to] ..... ἦξειν πλοῖα καὶ τριήρεις ἔχων (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- [Persuaded] ..... δὴ νῦν ἐγὼ ὑπὸ σοῦ ἐνθάδε κάθημαι, ... (Plato, *Hippias Maior*).
- ὁ δ' ἐπεὶ [he was appointed] ..... στρατηγός ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- αἰσχροῖν δὲ καὶ ἄδοξον εἰρήνην οὐ [he does not fear] ..... (Plutarch, *Brutus*).
- ταῦτα μὲν [taught] ..... τοὺς παῖδας τοὺς αὐτοῦ (Plato, *Menon*).

ἔχειν / ἤμαρτον / φοβεῖ / ἀπόλλωλας / ἀφείλοντο / ἦδομαι

- ἔτι μᾶλλον [I enjoy] ..... φίλοις ἀγαθοῖς (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- [You are done for] ..... ᾧ κακόδαιμον (Aristophanes, *Pax*).
- ἐκεῖνο δὲ τὸ ποίημα τοῖς νοῦν ἔχουσιν οὐ κακῶς [to be] ..... δοκεῖ (Plato, *Epistulae*).
- αὐτοὶ γέ τοι Σπαρτιᾶται βασιλεύοντας ἐνίους [deprived of] ..... τὴν ἀρχὴν (Plutarch, *Vitae*).
- οὗτοι εἰς ἐκεῖνον [committed an offence] ..... (Demosthenes, *Contra Boeotum 2*).
- τοῦτό μ' εἰσαεῖ [scares] ..... (Sophocles, *Oedipus Tyrannus*).

ὄμνυμι / ἦδομαι / ἔχει / ἔτυχε / πᾶνω / ἀμαρτάνω

- πάντας ὑμῖν [I swear] ..... τοὺς θεοὺς ἧ μὴν ἐρεῖν ἀληθῆ (Demosthenes, *Contra Zenothemin*).
- [I stop] ..... δὲ λύπην σοῦ κελευούσης (Euripides, *Andromacha*).
- βασιλεὺς δ' ἀφείξ τὸ δόρυ Κύρου μὲν οὐκ [hit] ..... (Plutarch, *Artaxerxes*).

- εἰ δὴ τι Σιμμίας ὄδε ἢ τις ἄλλος [is able to] ..... λέγειν, εὖ ἔχει μὴ κατασιγῆσαι (Plato, *Phaedo*).
- [I enjoy] ..... ὅτι πεντετάλαντος διαγέγραπταί μοι δίκη (Aristophanes, *Nubes*).
- τά τε ἄλλα [I am wrong] ..... οὐδὲν ἢ περὶ θεοῦς ἢ περὶ ἀνθρώπων (Diogenes Laertius, *Vitae Philosophorum*).

ἐδιδάξατο / μέμνημαι / συνίημι / ἐμνήσθην / ἀμαρτάνουσιν / ἀπόλλυμαι

- ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐγὼ [remembered] ..... Ἐρατοσθένους πρὸς αὐτήν, ... (Lysias, *De Caede Eratosthenis*).
- οὐκ [had you taught] ..... σε ὁ πατήρ; (Plato, *Theages*). ✧ Who was really doing the teaching?
- οἱ δὲ πόλλοι τοῦ παντός [are wrong] ..... (Plutarch, *De Tuenda Sanitate Praecepta*).
- εἴ τι ἐγὼ [understand] ..... , λέγεις ὅτι ... (Plato, *Gorgias*).
- τούτου [I remember] ..... τοῦ λόγου (Demosthenes, *In Midiam*).
- οἴμοι τάλας [I die] ..... (Aristophanes, *Acharnenses*).

ἀμύνει / πεπράχαμεν / μέμνημαι / ἐφάνη / παύομαι / ἄρχονται

- [I stop] ..... γὰρ ἤδη λέγων (Plutarch, *De Sollertia Animalium*).
- εὖ ἔχει, εἶπεν, εἰ μὴ πάντα κακῶς [we have fared] ..... (Plutarch, *Philopoemen*).
- ὑπόμνησόν με· οὐ γὰρ σφόδρα ἐν τῷ παρόντι [I remember] ..... (Plato, *Phaedo*).
- ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐπτέτεις γένωνται οἱ παῖδες, ἐπὶ τὰς θήρας [they begin] ..... ἰέναι (Plato, *Alcibiades*).
- δυνατὸν γὰρ δὴ τοῦτο γε [seemed] ..... (Plato, *Phaedo*).
- τίς [defends] ..... μοι; (Euripides, *Hecuba*).

πέφυκε / ἔχεις / ἠνέγκατο / ἔστηκεν / φαίνεται / σπένδονται

- νῦν δ' ἐπειδὴ ἀθάνατος [she appears] ..... οὔσα, ... (Plato, *Phaedo*).
- ὅστις δὲ θνητῶν θάνατον ὀρωδεῖ λίαν, μῶρος [is] ..... (Sophocles, *fragmenta*).
- καλὸν ἄρα τὸ γέρας, ἔφη, τῆς τέχνης [he has earned] ..... (Plato, *Respublica*).
- [they make an agreement] ..... καὶ αὐθις πιστοὶ γίγνονται (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- εἰ [you can] ..... λέγε (Plato, *Cratylus*).
- οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ὀρθῶς ἔξει εἰπεῖν ὅτι κινεῖται τὰ πάντα ἢ ὅτι [it stands] ..... (Plato, *Theaetetus*).

*ἔχω / ἀμαρτάνω / ἔστησαν / ἐπυθόμην / ἐσπέισαντο / ἀπέδρα / πέπραγεν*

- ὁ γὰρ τοι παῖς με ὁ Σάτυρος [has fled] ..... (Plato, *Protagoras*).
- ἔα μ' ἀμαρτεῖν· οὐ γὰρ ἐς σ' [I make wrong] ..... (Euripides, *Hippolytus*).
- ὁ δὲ Ῥαδάμανθους εὔ [has fared] ..... (Pindar, *Pythia*).
- Πελοποννησίοις ἀναχώρησιν [they agreed] ..... ἐξ Οἰνιαδῶν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἐγὼ δ' εἰς Τάναγραν ἐλθὼν [became aware] ..... παρὰ τῆς θυγατριδῆς (Pluratch, *Consolatio ad Uxorem*).
- καὶ ἄλλους πολλοὺς ἐγὼ [I can] ..... ὑμῖν εἰπεῖν (Plato, *Apologia*).
- ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἀθυμοῦντες ἄνδρες οὕτω τρόπαιον [they set up] ..... (Plato, *Critias*).

## h) Compound verbs

### 1. Compound verbs with *ἀμφί*, *ἀνά*, *ἀντί* and *ἀπό*

[75]

#### a/ Link these verbs to their meanings:

TO ENCOUNTER / TO DENY / TO RESTRAIN ONESELF FROM / TO DEMAND BACK / TO OPEN / TO PUT IN FRONT OF / TO BE ABROAD / TO DISPUTE / TO DEPART / TO READ / TO CONTRADICT / TO DEPRIVE OF / TO LET GO / TO REVOLT FROM / TO PUT OUT TO SEA / TO DESTROY / TO ENDURE / TO SELL / TO DISPATCH

ἀπαντάω .....	ἀναγιγνώσκω .....	ἀπαλλάττομαι .....
ἀνθίστημι .....	ἀνάγομαι .....	ἀφίημι .....
ἀφίσταμαι .....	ἀναιρέω .....	ἀπαρνέομαι .....
ἀπαιτέω .....	ἀνέχομαι .....	ἀπέχομαι .....
ἀποδημέω .....	ἀποστέλλω .....	ἀνοίγνυμι .....
ἀποδίδομαι .....	ἀποστερέω .....	
ἀμφιλέγω .....	ἀντιλέγω .....	

#### b/ Read these sentences:

- νῦν ἐγὼ πρῶτον ἐπὶ δικαστήριον **ἀναβέβηκα** (Plato, *Apologia*).
- ὁ στρατηγὸς τὰ ὄπλα τοῖς πολεμίοις **ἀποδίδωσιν**.
- εἰσβάντες δὲ ἐδίωκον τὴν εἰς τὸ πέλαγος **ἀφορμήσασαν** [ναῦν] (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- Ξενοφῶν δὲ μεταπεμψάμενος Κλέανδρον ἐκέλευε **ἀποπλεύσαι** ἐκ Βυζαντίου (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

#### c/ Fill the blanks with one of the verbs below:

*ἀποστερηθεῖς / ἀποδημεῖν / ἀπηλλάχθησαν / ἀπαρνοῦμαι / ἀνέχεται*

- πολλοὺς μὲν πόνοους, πολλὰ δ' ἄλγη [he endures] ..... (Xenophon, *Symposium*).
- ὡς ἐλευθέρῳ τε ἔξεσί μοι καὶ [to be abroad] ..... καὶ ἐπιδημεῖν (Xenophon, *Symposium*).
- οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ... ἐκ τῆς ναυμαχίας [departed] ..... (Herodotus, *Historiae*).
- ... , οὐδὲν τῶν πατρῶν [having been deprived] ..... ὑπ' οὐδενός (Demosthenes, *In Midiam*).
- καὶ νῦν γέ φημι κοῦκ [I deny] ..... , τέκνον (Euripides, *Electra*).

d/ Complete the sentences using a compound verb:

- ὁ ἀδελφὸς τὰ ὄπλα [gives back] .....
- πολλοὶ στρατιῶται [died] ..... ἐν τῇ μάχῃ.
- διὰ τί οὐ βούλει [answer] .....
- αὔριον ἡμεῖς [will depart] .....
- οὐκέτι ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις ἐστίν, [lives abroad] ..... γάρ.
- οὐ δύναμαι [open] ..... τὴν θύραν.

e/ Translate into Greek using a compound verb for the expressions in italics:

- You (pl.) *give back* the books to the teacher.
- .....

- Have you *read* this book?
- .....

- We must *withdraw*.
- .....

- I will *arrive* late.
- .....

- He wants to *sell* his house.
- .....

- He *denies* everything.
- .....

## 2. Compound verbs with *διά*, *εἰς*, *ἐκ* and *ἐν*

[76]

a/ Link these verbs to their meanings:

TO SLANDER / TO DIVIDE / TO FINISH / TO PUT IN A GIVEN STATE / TO RELATE / TO INVADE / TO FALL UPON / TO DESTROY / TO CONSIDER / TO DISEMBARK / TO CROSS / TO CONTINUE / TO SPEND TIME / TO DRIVE OUT

διατελέω	.....	διατρίβω	.....	διαβαίνω	.....
διηγέομαι	.....	διαφθείρω	.....	διαπράττω	.....
εἰσβάλλω	.....	ἐξελαύνω	.....	ἐμπίπτω	.....

ένθυμέομαι .....	ἐκβαίνω .....	δαιρέω .....
διατίθημι .....	διαβάλλω .....	

**b/ Read these sentences:**

- οἱ σύμμαχοι τοὺς πολεμίους ἐκ τῆς χώρας **ἐκβάλλουσιν**.
- οἱ στρατιῶται τὴν τῶν πολεμίων χώραν **εἰσβάλλουσιν**.
- οἱ στρατιῶται τὰς οἰκίας **διαφθείρουσιν**.
- ὅσα γε μὴν ἐν τῇ βασιλείᾳ **διεπράξατο** νῦν ἤδη **διηγῆσομαι** (Xenophon, *Agésilas*).
- ἀπιέναι ἐνηφίζετο καὶ μὴ **διατριβεῖν** (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

**c/ Fill the blanks with one of the verbs below:**

*διέβαλλε / διέφθειραν / ἐξήλασαν / ένθυμοῦ / διέβησαν*

- [He slandered] ..... δὲ καὶ τὸν Σωκράτην, λέγων ὡς ... (Diogenes Laertius, *Vitae Philosophorum*).
- πρῶτον μὲν τὴν τάφρον [they crossed] ..... ἣ περιεῖχεν αὐτούς (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- σὺ οὖν τῶν τε εἰρημένων μέμνησο καὶ ἐκεῖνο [consider!] ..... , ὅτι ... (Plato, *Phaedrus*).
- τὴν τῶν Ἑλλήνων δύναμιν [they destroyed] ..... (Plato, *Leges*).
- ἐκεῖνοι Θεμιστοκλέα λαβόντες [they drove out] ..... ἐκ τῆς πόλεως (Demosthenes, *In Aristocratem*).

**d/ Complete the sentences using a compound verb:**

- οἱ μὲν Λακεδαιμόνιοι εἰς τὴν Ἀττικὴν [invade] .....
- οἱ σύμμαχοι [go out] ..... ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ.
- οἱ ναῦται [go into, embark] ..... εἰς τὸ πλοῖον.
- πᾶσαν τὴν πόλιν [they destroyed] .....
- τῇ οἰκίᾳ [he sets fire] .....
- δεῖ τὸν διδάσκαλον βίβλους [to distribute] .....

**e/ Translate into Greek using a compound verb for the expressions in italics:**

- The allies *destroy* the houses of the enemies.

.....

- Bad students *go out* of the school quickly and *into* the school slowly.

- He *gave* him his daughter *in marriage*.

- Sometimes I *spend* some time in the country.

- The teacher *narrated* the myth to the students.

- They *drove* the tyrant *out* of the city.

### 3. Compound verbs with *ἐπί*, *κατά* and *μετά*

[77]

a/ Link these verbs to their meanings:

TO DESIRE / TO MAKE UP ONE'S MIND / TO HAVE A SHARE IN / TO CONDEMN / TO FORGET / TO TAKE CARE OF / TO ATTACK / TO DEMOLISH / TO APPOINT / TO PLOT AGAINST / TO OVERTAKE / TO DESPISE / TO CHANGE / TO PRAISE / TO COME BACK

καθίστημι	.....	ἐπιλανθάνομαι	.....	καθαίρέω	.....
καταλαμβάνω	.....	μετέχω	.....	καταφρονέω	.....
ἐπαινέω	.....	καταγιγνώσκω	.....	μεταβάλλω	.....
ἐπανέρχομαι	.....	ἐπιβουλεύω	.....	ἐπιθυμέω	.....
μετανοέω	.....	ἐπιτίθεμαι	.....	ἐπιμελέομαι	.....

b/ Read these sentences:

- τοὺς καρπούς **καταλείπει** ὁ γεωργός.
- Πρόξενος αὐτὸν **μετεπέμψατο** (Plato, *Apologia*).
- πάντες οἱ πολῖται καὶ γυναῖκες **μετεῖχον** τῆς ἐορτῆς (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα λογισάμενοι **ταχέως μετενόησαν** (Diodorus Siculus, *Bibliotheca Historica*).

c/ Fill the blanks with one of the verbs below:

*ἐπελάθετο / μετέβαλε / ἐπεβούλευσαν / ἐπέθεντο*

- πόλεμός τις [changed] ..... νόμους (Plato, *Leges*).
- [They attacked] ..... ἡμῖν οὐκ ἀδικούμενοι (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ὁ δέ, καίπερ πολλὰ τραύματα ἔχων, ὅμως οὐκ [forgot] ..... τοῦ θείου (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- δι' ἀπιστίας [conspired] ..... ἀλλήλοις ἀμφοτέρω (Plutarch, *Pyrrhus*).

d/ Complete the sentences using a compound verb:

- ὁ στρατηγός [abandons] ..... τοὺς στρατιώτας.
- οἱ νεανίαι [come back] ..... ἐκ τοῦ διδασκαλείου.
- οἱ πολέμοι [are attacking] ..... τῇ πόλει νῦν.
- τῇ [following] ..... ἡμέρα ὁ Περικλῆς ἀπῆλθεν.
- ἀεὶ αὐτοῦ [they mock] .....
- τῆς νίκης [to have a share] ..... πάντες βούλονται.

e/ Translate into Greek using a compound verb for the expressions in italics:

- I have *forgotten* Socrates' words.

.....

- I *sent for* them.

.....

- They will *change* everything.

.....

- You must *make up* your mind and *be present* tomorrow.

.....

- The enemy *burned* the city *down*.

.....

- The judges *condemned* Socrates.

.....



#### 4. Compound verbs with παρά, περί, πρό and πρός

[78]

a/ Link these verbs to their meanings:

TO SURVIVE / TO PREPARE / TO PREFER / TO ATTACK / TO SUMMON / TO PROVIDE / TO INCITE / TO EXPECT / TO BETRAY / TO PRETEND / TO HAND OVER / TO GO FORWARD

παρασκευάζω .....	παρακαλέω .....	προδίδωμι .....
περίειμι .....	προχωρέω .....	προσποιέομαι .....
προαιρέομαι .....	προσβάλλω .....	παροξύνω .....
παραδίδωμι .....	παρέχω .....	προσδοκάω .....

b/ Read these sentences:

- ὃ ἄνδρες, ἀκούσατε ὧν **προσδοκεῖ** μοι (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- οἰκίαι αἱ μὲν πολλὰ ἐπεπτώκεσαν, ὀλίγαι δὲ **περιῆσαν** (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ὁ δὲ Ἄπολλων **προσποιεῖται** μὲν πάντα εἰδέναι (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods* 16).
- οἱ ἐν τῇ πόλει ἐξεληθόντες **προσέβαλον** τῷ τείχει τῶν Πελοποννησίων (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

c/ Fill the blanks with one of the verbs below:

*παρέσχον / παρέδωκε / προαιροῦμαι / παρώξυνε*

- περὶ μὲν οὖν τούτων πολλὰ λέγειν ἔχων ἔτι δίκαια, παραλιπεῖν [I prefer] ..... (Demosthenes, *Philippi Epistula*).
- παρελθὼν ὁ Ἄλκιβιάδης [incited] ..... τε τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ναῦς καὶ χρήματα [they offered] ..... Κορινθίοις (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἐκὼν [he handed over] ..... τὴν πόλιν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

d/ Complete these sentences using a compound verb:

- οἱ ἄρχοντες ἀεὶ [incite] ..... τὸν δῆμον.
- τὴν πόλιν [he handed over] ..... τοῖς πολεμίοις.
- διὰ τί [you offer] ..... χρήματα αὐτῶ;
- οἱ ψευδεῖς ἀεὶ [pretend] ..... πάντα εἰδέναι.

- οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἡμῖν [fell upon] .....
- ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες, ταχέως [they went forward] .....

e/ Translate into Greek using a compound verb for the expressions in italics:

- I *prefer* to remain here because they *betrayed* us.

.....

- Before a battle, I always *summon* the soldiers.

.....

- Have you *prepared* the weapons?

.....

- Only twenty soldiers *survived*.

.....

- What did the soothsayer *foresee*?

.....

## 5. Compound verbs with σύν, ὑπέρ and ὑπό

[79]

a/ Link these verbs to their meanings:

TO BE AVAILABLE / TO PROMISE / TO FORGIVE / TO COLLECT / TO HAPPEN / TO CELEBRATE A MEETING / TO INTEREST / TO UNDERSTAND  
/ TO OVERLOOK / TO OBEY / TO SUSPECT

συγγινώσκω .....	συμβαίνει .....	ὑποπτεύω .....
συνίημι .....	ὑπάρχω .....	ὑπακούω .....
ὑπεροράω .....	ὑπισχνέομαι .....	συνέρχομαι .....
συλλέγω .....	συμφέρει .....	

b/ Read these sentences:

- ἐκέλευον **συνδειπνεῖν** (Lysias, *De Caede Eratosthenis*).
- ἡ δὲ στρατιὰ **συνῆλθε**, καὶ πάντες ἔλεγον... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- **συνέβη** δὲ καὶ πρὸς τῷ δεξιῷ κέρατι τέμενός τε καὶ ἄγαλμα Ἡρακλέους (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- **ὑπήκουσε** τοῖς ἐπὶ τὸν οἶκον πόλεμον καλοῦσιν (Plutarch, *Agessilaus*).

c/ Fill the blanks with one of the verbs below:

*συνέγνω / ύποπτεύω / συμφέρει / συνέλεξε*

- τίν' αἰτίαν ἔχουσ' ; [I suspect] ..... τι γάρ (Euripides, *Iphigenia Taurica*).
- ἔα μ' ἀπόλυσθαι· τοῦτο γάρ μοι [interests] ..... (Plutarch, *De Virtute Morali*).
- ὁ δὲ [forgave] ..... καὶ τὴν ὀργὴν ἀφῆκεν (Plutarch, *Alcibiades*).
- τοὺς δὲ πλείστους ἄνδρας ἐν τῇ γῆ [he gathered] ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

d/ Complete these sentences using a compound verb:

- κατάλογον τῶν νεῶν ὁ ποιητὴς [compiled] .....
- εἰς τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν [they gathered] .....
- τοῦτο οὐ [I understood] ..... , ταχέως γὰρ λέγεις.
- τί [decided in council] ..... οἱ βουλευταί;
- δεῖ ἡμᾶς τῷ βασιλεῖ [to obey] .....
- ἄρα πόσοι στρατιῶται [are available] .....

e/ Translate into Greek using a compound verb for the expressions in italics:

- I hope they will *forgive* me.

.....

- I *gathered* twelve citizens for this task.

.....

- He is always *pretending* to be rich.

.....

- They *promised* to arrive the day after.

.....

- I have already *arranged* everything.

.....

- They *added* ten drachmas to the prize.

.....

## **SYNTAX OF CASES**

### **a) Use of cases**

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Nominative
3. Vocative
4. Accusative
5. Genitive
6. Dative

### **b) Prepositions**

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Prepositions of one case
3. Prepositions of two cases
4. Prepositions of three cases  
Exercises (into Greek) for all prepositions

### **c) Expressions of time and place**

1. Expressions of time
2. Expressions of place

### **d) Regime of verbs and adjectives**

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Verbs that rule genitive or dative
3. Adjectives followed by genitive or dative
4. Appendix: Adjectives followed by infinitive or participle

## a) Use of cases

### 1. (unapplied in this book)

### 2. Nominative

[80]

a/ Read these sentences and find all the nominatives:

- σκόπει εἰ τάδε ἐστὶ τό τε δίκαιον καὶ τὸ ἄδικον (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- τί τὸ κεφάλαιόν ἐστι τῆς ἐργασίας; (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- τοῖς δ' Ἀθηναίοις χαλεπωτέρα μετὰ τοῦτο ἢ τυραννὶς κατέστη (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἐν τῷ χειμῶνι πολλὰ ὕδατα γίγνεται (Xenophon, *Oeconomicus*).
- εἰς δὲ τὴν ὑστεραίαν γίγνεται χειμῶν πολὺς, ἀναγκαῖον δ' ἦν πορεύεσθαι· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἱκανὰ τὰπιτήδεια (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

b/ Translate into Greek:

- What is this? Is this yours?

.....

- Pericles will soon become general.

.....

- There is much happiness in victory.

.....

- Reading a lot is necessary.

.....

### 3. Vocative

[81]

a/ Read these sentences and find all the vocatives:

- ἀλλά, παῖ, λαβὲ τὸ βιβλίον καὶ λέγε (Plato *Theaetetus*).
- τί νεώτερον, ὦ Σώκρατες, γέγονεν; (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- -τίς οὗτος; -ὁ ἐμὸς πατήρ. -ὁ σός, ὦ βέλτιστε; (Plato, *Euthyphro*).

- ἐμοὶ μὲν, ὦ Μιλήσιοι, ἀνάγκη τοῖς οἴκοι ἄρχουσι πείθεσθαι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ὦ ἄνδρες βουλευταί, εἰ μὲν τις ὑμῶν ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

**b/ Translate into Greek:**

- Come here, brother.
- .....

- Now you must fight, Athenians.
- .....

- Father, let's go to the agora.
- .....

- Do not say this, my dear friend.
- .....

**4. Accusative**

[82]

**a/ Read these sentences, find all the accusatives and specify what kind of syntactical function each accusative has:**

- ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων σταδίων (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- .....

- ποία δὲ τὴν ὄψιν ἐστί; (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 20*) ✧ Paris, asking Aphrodite about Helen.
- .....

- τὸν δάκτυλον ἀλγῶ τοῦτον (Theocritus, *Idyllia*).
- .....

- πολλοὺς συναγαγὼν τεχνίτας, ἔτι νυκτὸς οὐσῆς κατέβαλε τὴν οἰκίαν (Plutarch, *Publicola*).
- .....

- Κύπριν νομίζω τῆς ἐμῆς ναυκληρίας σῶτειραν εἶναι (Euripides, *Medea*).
- .....

- ὄνομα δὲ ποῖον αὐτὸν ὀνομάζει πατήρ; (Euripides, *Ion*).
- .....

b/ For each sentence, complete it by adding the accusative of the given word and specify what syntactical function it has:

- ἐγὼ δ' ἀντὶ τούτου ..... αἰτῶ θεράπειναν Μνησιπολέμαν (Plutarch, *Themistocles*). [σύ]  
.....
- ὁ μὲν πεισθεὶς καὶ μείνας τριάκοντα ..... ἀνεχώρησε (Thucydides, *Historiae*).  
[αἱ πᾶσαι ἡμέραι]  
.....
- ἠράσθησαν γὰρ ἀμφοτέροι τοῦ καλοῦ Στησίλεω, Κείου ..... ὄντος (Plutarch, *Themistocles*). [τὸ γένος]  
.....
- κατεμάνθανον ὁποῖός ἐστι ..... ἕκαστος αὐτῶν πρὸς τὸ τολμᾶν (Plutarch, *Lycurgus*). [ἡ φύσις]  
.....
- ..... δὲ καὶ πάντες ἀνεχώρησαν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [τέλος]  
.....
- ἔνθα τὸ πρῶτον τοῖς πολεμίοις συνέμειξαν, ἐστήσαντο ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [τροπαῖον]  
.....

c/ From any of the previous exercises, find an example of:

- accusative of extension: .....
- accusative direct object: .....
- accusative of respect: .....
- adverbial accusative: .....
- accusative subject of an infinitive: .....

d/ Translate into Greek using accusatives for the expressions in italics:

- We always remain there *many days*.  
.....
- The soldiers were walking *for a long time*.  
.....

- My brother ran *two stades*.

.....

- I consider *him a traitor*.

.....

- I feel pain *in this foot*.

.....

- – Have you done *everything*? – On the opposite, I have done *nothing*.

.....

- I want to ask *him this question*.

.....

## 5. Genitive

[83]

a/ Read these sentences, find all the genitives and specify what kind of syntactical function each genitive has:

- μισοῦσι γὰρ τοῦνομα διὰ τὴν προδοσίαν τοῦ ἀνδρός (Plutarch, *Theseus*).

.....

- πέντε τῶν στρατηγῶν προχωρεῖν ἐβούλοντο.

.....

- καὶ πῶς ἐπανορθώσομεθα τὰ τῆς πόλεως καὶ βελτίω ποιήσομεν; (Isocrates, *Antidosis*).

.....

- κλίμακας ἐποιήσαντο ἴσας τῷ τείχει τῶν πολεμίων (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

.....

- τῶν μαθητῶν τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς δῶρα δίδωμι.

.....

- οἱ πλεῖστοί τε αὐτῶν ἀπέθανον (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

.....



b/ Complete each sentence by adding the genitive of the given word and specify what syntactical function it has:

- ..... δὲ κατηγορήσαντινες (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [Ξενοφῶν]  
.....
- οἱ δ' Ἀθηναῖοι ἐρήμη δίκη θάνατον κατέγνωσαν ..... τε καὶ τῶν μετ' ἐκείνου (Thucydides, *Historiae*).  
[αὐτόν]  
.....
- φεῦ ..... , ἔφη (Plutarch, *Agésilas*). [ἡ Ἑλλάς]  
.....
- οἴμοι τῶν Ἀτρειδῶν ..... (Euripides, *Iphigenia Taurica*). [οἶκος]  
.....
- χωρίον μυρίων ..... πριάμενος καθιέρωσεν (Plutarch, *Nicias*). [δράχμη]  
.....
- ταῖς κόραις ταῖς ..... ἵππους παρέχουσι οἱ ξένοι. [οἱ σύμμαχοι]  
.....

c/ Put the genitive in the other possible way:

✧ Example: ὀρῶ τὴν τῆς θεᾶς οἰκίαν > ὀρῶ τὴν οἰκίαν τὴν τῆς θεᾶς *or vice-versa*.

- τιμῶμεν τὴν τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ἀνδρείαν.  
.....
- ἡ θεὰ ἡ τῆς θαλάττης βοήθειαν φέρει τοῖς συμμάχοις.  
.....
- οἱ σύμμαχοι διώκουσι τοὺς τῶν στρατηγῶν συμμάχους.  
.....
- τὴν τῆς νίκης τιμὴν ἔχειν ἐθέλομεν.  
.....
- ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ τῇ τοῦ θεοῦ οἰκοῦμεν.  
.....

d/ Translate into Greek putting the genitive in the two possible ways:

- I hate the general's slave.

.....  
.....

- We honour the sister's friend.

.....  
.....

- The houses of the generals are nice.

.....  
.....

- They besiege the slave's house.

.....  
.....

e/ Translate into Greek putting the genitive in either way:

- The valiant ones of the Athenians fight in the battle.

.....

- Seven of the teachers want to write a book.

.....

- Five students want to read a book.     ✧ Not genitive partitive!

.....

- They sentenced the three generals to death.

.....

- Alas, what wickedness!

.....

- I bought this book for twelve drachmas.

.....

## 6. Dative

[84]

a/ Read these sentences, find all the datives and specify what kind of syntactical function each dative has:

- οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν, ἔφη, χρήματα ἡμῖν, τοῖς δὲ πολεμίοις ἄφθονα παρὰ βασιλέως (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

.....

- τῶν πολεμικῶν ἔστιν αὐτῷ ἐπιθυμία; (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 20*). ✧ Athene asking about Paris.

.....

- τῇ μὲν νυκτὶ ταύτῃ τοῦτο τὸ τέλος ἐγένετο (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

.....

- ἦν δὲ τῇ ἀληθείᾳ ὑπὲρ ἡμισυ τοῦ στρατεύματος Ἀρκάδες καὶ Ἀχαιοὶ (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

✧ Talking about percentages in the army.

.....

- ἔστιν δὲ δὴ σοί, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, τίς ἡ δίκη; (Plato, *Euthyphro*).

.....

- μέγα σοι ἐρῶ τεκμήριον (Plato, *Euthyphro*).

.....

b/ For each sentence, complete it by adding the dative of the given word and specify what syntactical function it has:

- πόθεν αἱ διαβολαὶ ..... αὐταὶ γεγόνασιν; (Plato, *Apologia Socratis*). [σύ]

- παίει τις αὐτῶν τὸ ἕτερον κατὰ τῆς κεφαλῆς ..... (Plutarch, *Timoleon*). [ξίφος]

- τῇ μὲν ..... σιωπῇ ὑπερσημάνθη (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [σάλπιγξ]

- σοὶ ἡδέως διαλέγομαι μᾶλλον ἢ ἄλλῳ ..... (Plato, *Protagoras*). [τις]

- οὐδεὶς γὰρ οὔτε ..... ἀναγκάζεται αὐτὸ δρᾶν, οὔτε ..... , ἦν οἴηται τι πλεόν σχήσειν, ἀποτρέπεται (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [ἀμαθία] [φόβος]

◇

- πεφύκασί τε ἅπαντες καὶ ..... καὶ ..... ἀμαρτάνειν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).  
[ἰδία] [δημοσία]

- ἐπορεύθησαν δὲ ..... εἰς Ἀπολλωνίαν (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [πεζή]
- κατέπλεον εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον οὐ ..... ὕστερον ἢ ᾤφθησαν (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [πολύ]
- εἰσβάντες κατὰ σπουδὴν καὶ πολλῶν θορύβῳ ταῖς μὲν ..... ἐπὶ τὴν Σαλαμίνα ἔπλεον (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [νήες]
- τὴν πόλιν ..... οὐχ οἰοί τε ἔσονται λαβεῖν (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [βία]

c/ From any of the previous exercises, find an example of:

- adverbial dative: .....
- possessive dative: .....
- instrumental dative: .....
- causal dative: .....
- dative of measure: .....
- dative indirect object: .....

d/ Read these expressions with the possessive dative and change them into expressions with the verb ἔχω :

- τῷ τυράνῳ μεγάλη ἀρχή ἐστιν.

.....

- τοῖς μαθηταῖς φίλοι πολλοί εἰσιν.

.....

- τοῖς πολίταις ἀγαθὸς στρατηγὸς ἦν.

.....

e/ Translate into Greek, using the possessive dative:

- Men have wisdom, gods have power.

.....

- The farmer's son has many horses.

.....

- The soldier has weapons.

.....

f/ Translate into Greek using the dative for the expressions in italics:

- They killed the archon *with a sword*.

.....

- The teacher teaches the Athenians *with wisdom*.

.....

- I walk with my brother, and you walk *with a stick*.

.....

- *For Pericles*, this was not right.

.....

◇

- They arrived *much* later.

.....

- We will fight *on foot*.

.....

- He is *much* taller than you.

.....

- They fled *because of fear*.

.....

- I have brought *you* the books.

.....

## b) Prepositions

### 1. (unapplied in this book)

### 2. Prepositions of one case

[85]

#### a) Prepositions followed by the accusative

Complete the sentences by writing the given word in the accusative; remember that a preposition may have a different meaning in English:

##### ἀνά

- ὁ κύων ἔδραμεν ἀνά ..... . [τὸ ὄρος]
- ὁ Λύκιος ἀπαγγέλλει ὅτι φεύγουσιν ἀνά ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [κράτος]
- ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτ' ἔγνωσαν οἱ στρατηγοί, ἐποίησαν ἕξ λόχους ἀνά ἑκατὸν ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [ἄνδρες]
- οὗτος ὄκει μὲν τὸ πρόσθεν ἀνά ..... (Lucian, *Bis Accusatus sive Tribunalia*). [τὸ Παρθένιον]

##### εἰς

- ὡς διαβαλῶν δὴ ἔρχεται εἰς ..... (Plato, *Euthyphro*). [τὸ δικαστήριον]
- εἰς ..... ἐλθὼν ἐτόλμησε τοῦτο μαντεύσασθαι (Plato, *Apologia*). [Δελφοί]
- ἐγὼ δὲ δὴ εἰς ..... ἀμαθίας ἦκα ὥστε καὶ τοῦτ' ἀγνωῶ (Plato, *Apologia*). [τοσοῦτον]
- Ποσειδῶν αὐτὸν εἰς Ἄιδου ..... θάνοντα πέμψει (Euripides, *Hippolytus*). [δόμοι]

#### b) Prepositions followed by the genitive

Complete the sentences by writing the given word in the genitive; remember that a preposition may have a different meaning in English:

##### ἀντί

- ἀντί ..... διαλέγεσθαι βούλομαι. [τὸ γράφειν]
- δίδωμι τοίνυν σοι, ἔφη, τοῦτον τὸν ἵππον· ὁ δ' ἐπήρετο· Ἄντι ..... ; (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*). [τί]
- νῦν ἴσως ἀντί ..... ῥῶ δεῖ λέγειν (Plato, *Cratylus*). [τὸ λάβδα]
- ἀξιοῖ ἀντί ..... σμικρὰ ἀπολαῦσαι (Plato, *Phaedrus*). [πολλοὶ πόνοι]

**ἀπό**

- αὐριον ἀπὸ ..... πρὸς τὴν πόλιν ἐλευσόμεθα. [οἱ ἀγροί]
- ἐμάχοντο ἀπὸ τε ..... καὶ τῆς γῆς (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [αἱ νῆες]
- τίς ἢ ὠφελία τοῖς θεοῖς τυγχάνει οὕσα ἀπὸ ..... ; (Plato, *Euthyphro*). [τὰ δῶρα]
- οὐδὲ τὰ ἐμὰ νῦν ἀπὸ ..... γέγονεν (Plato, *Apologia*). [τὸ αὐτομάτον]

**ἐκ**

- τοὺς λόγους ἀκούσαντες, ἐκ ..... ἐξέφυγον οἱ πρεβεῖς. [τὸ δικαστήριον]
- ἐκ δὲ ..... ὁ Ἀγησίλαος ἀπήει (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [τοῦτο]
- ἐνταῦθα δὲ καὶ Ἀλκιβιάδης ἦκεν ἐκ ..... σὺν πέντε τριήρεσι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [αἱ Κλαζομεναί]
- ταῦτα τότε ἐξ ..... κρίνοντες ἄνευ ἐπιστήμης ἔκριναν (Plato, *Theaetetus*). [ἀκοή]

**πρὸ**

- πρὸ ..... τοὺς φίλους ὀψόμεθα. [ἡ ἐσπέρα]
- καὶ ἐκόσμησαν δὴ τοῦτο τὸ μνημα οἱ Θηβαῖοι πρὸ ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [ἡ μάχη]
- διέβησαν τὴν τάφρον ἢ πρὸ ..... ἔτυχεν οὕσα (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [τὸ στρατόπεδον]
- ἦν μὲν οὖν τῆς ὥρας μικρὸν πρὸ ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [δὺς ἥλιος]

**c) Prepositions followed by the dative**

Complete the sentences by writing the given word in the dative; remember that a preposition may have a different meaning in English:

**ἐν**

- ἐν ..... λέξω τοὺς πρὸς ἐμὲ λέγοντας ὡς σὺ ἐμοὶ ἐπιβουλεύεις (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [τὸ ἐμφανές]
- ἐν ..... ἀπέθανε (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [μέσοι οἱ πολέμιοι]
- ἀποβάς ἐν ..... μαχόμενος ἀπέθανεν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [ἡ γῆ]
- ἐν δὲ ..... ἠγγέλθη τοῖς τῶν Συρακοσίων στρατηγοῖς ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
[ὁ χρόνος οὗτος]

**σύν**

- πρὸς αὐτὸν ὠρχήσαντο σὺν ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [τὰ ὄπλα]

- σὺν ..... ἔφευγον (Lucian, *Bacchus*). [οὐδεὶς κόσμος]
- ὅταν μὲν ἄνευ νοῦ θαρρῆ ἄνθρωπος, βλάπτεται, ὅταν δὲ σὺν ..... , ὠφελεῖται (Plato, *Meno*). [νοῦς]
- ἦκεν ἐκ τῶν Κλαζομενῶν σὺν πέντε ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [τριήρεις]

### Common exercises for prepositions of one case

1/ Choose the correct preposition for each sentence:

- ἦροῦ, ὡς ἔφησθα, ..... τῆς φυγῆς θάνατον (Plato, *Crito*). [ἀνά πρό ἐν]
- περὶ ἐκείνου λόγος ἐγένετο ..... τῷ δικαστηρίῳ (Plato, *Euthyphro*). [σὺν ἀνά ἐν]
- ἔχθρα ἐστὶν ..... αὐτοῖς πρὸς ἀλλήλους (Plato, *Euthyphro*). [εἰς ἐν ἀπό]
- δοκεῖ μέντοι μοι χρῆναι ..... τῆς ἀποκρίσεως ἔτι πρότερον Κέβητος ἀκοῦσαι (Plato, *Phaedo*). [πρό σὺν εἰς]
- εἰ δ' ἐτεὸν δὴ τοῦτον ..... σπουδῆς ἀγορεύεις, ... (Homer, *Ilias*). [ἀντί ἀπό ἐν]
- αἰτία δὲ ἡμῖν τῆς πολιτείας ταύτης ἡ ..... Ἰσου γένεσις (Plato, *Menexenus*). [πρό ἀνά ἐξ]
- ἀλλὰ ..... τοῖς θεοῖς δεῖξωμεν τοῖς βαρβάροις ὅτι ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [ἀντί πρό σὺν]

◇

- τυγχάνω γὰρ ..... παιδὸς ἐπιθυμῶν κτήματός του (Plato, *Lysis*). [ἐν ἐκ εἰς]
- ἀνέβη πρὸς αὐτὸν ..... τοῖς ἐκ Λακεδαίμονος πρέσβεσιν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [πρό ἀνά σὺν]
- ἐλθόντες σφίσιν ..... τοῦ προφανοῦς ἐμάχοντο (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [ἀπό σὺν εἰς]
- οἱ δὲ πελασταὶ ἀπέκτειναν ἅπαντας τοὺς ..... Μιλήτου (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [ἀνά ἐκ ἐν]
- ἀδύνατα ἦν ..... τῷ παρόντι τοὺς Λόκρους ἀμύνεσθαι (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [ἀντί ἐν ἀνά]
- ..... δὲ τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ ... (Plato, *Euthyphro*). [σὺν ἀπό ἐν]

2/ Choose the correct preposition from the given list:

περὶ / ἀπό / εἰς / ἀνά / ἀπό / ἀπό / ἐν

- ὡς δὲ ..... δεῖπνου ἐγένοντο, οἱ μνηστῆρες ἔριν εἶχον (Herodotus, *Historiae*).
- οἱ δὲ εἰθισμένοι πρὸς ἡμᾶς ..... τοῦ ἴσου ὀμιλεῖν, χάριν ἔχουσιν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ὅταν τι λέγω ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ ..... τῶν θείων, ... (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- ἐκ τούτου δὲ Ἀλκιβιάδης μὲν ὄχγετο ..... τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).



- τὸ ρόπαλον ἔχει ..... τῆ δεξιᾷ (Lucian, *Herakles*).
- ..... πᾶσαν τὴν γῆν καὶ θάλατταν εἰρήνη ἔσται (Xenophon, *De Vectigalibus*).
- ἡ σελήνη ..... τοῦ ἡλίου ἔχει τὸ φῶς (Plato, *Cratylus*).

ἐν / εἰς / ἐν / ἀπό / ἀντί / ἐξ

- φθοραὶ τοίνυν ..... ἀνάγκης τότε μέγιστα συμβαίνοσι τῶν τε ἄλλων ζώων (Plato, *Politicus*).
- ..... τὴν θάλατταν πίπτει ὁ ἵππος.
- ἐκεῖνος ἐθήρευεν ..... ἵππου (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ἐνίστε πατὴρ υἰὸν ..... πάντων τῶν ἄλλων χρημάτων προτιμᾷ (Plato, *Lysis*).
- γῆς τεμνομένης ..... τῷ ἐμφανεῖ, δεινὸν ἐφαίνετο (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἐκεῖνος δὲ ..... βραχυτάτῳ πολλὰ εἰπὼν ἀπομνημονεύεται (Dio Cassius, *Historiae Romanae*).

3/ Write the correct preposition to replace the English expression:

- καὶ ἐπεισβαίνων τῷ ἵππῳ [into] ..... τὴν θάλατταν μέχρι δυνατὸν ἦν ἐμάχετο (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- πλείστους δὲ φίλους καὶ ἀρίστους [over] ..... πᾶσαν τὴν γῆν κεκτῆτο (Xenophon, *Agésilau*).
- τί οὖν δὴ ἔστιν ἅττα εἶπεν ὁ ἀνὴρ [before] ..... τοῦ θανάτου; (Plato, *Phaedo*).
- οἱ δὲ τριάκοντα εὐθὺς ἐβοήθουν [with] ..... τε τοῖς Λακωνικοῖς καὶ [with] ..... τοῖς ἰππεύσιν καὶ τοῖς ὀπίταις (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- οὐ δεῖ [away from] ..... γε τοῦ ἀγαθοῦ φεύγειν (Plato, *Phaedo*).
- ἡμεῖς συνακολουθήσομεν [according to] ..... τὴν δύναμιν (Plato, *Philebus*).

4/ Write the Greek prepositional idiom equivalent to the English expression:

- εἰσὶν ἄρα, ἔφη, αἱ ψυχαὶ ἡμῶν [in Hades] ..... (Plato, *Phaedo*).
- [At close quarters] ..... ἐμάχοντο (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- [Towards the evening] ..... ἀφίκετο ὁ πατήρ.
- οὐκ [with premeditation] ..... φαίνεται ψευδόμενος ἀλλ' ἄκων (Plato, *Hippias Minor*).
- λογιζόμενος δ' ὁ Πausanίας καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ [in the government] ..... Λακεδαιμονίων ὡς ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

- [Unexpectedly] ..... γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἐπέπεσε τὸ Ἑλληνικόν [στρατόν] (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- προσέχω, ὃ Σώκρατες, [according to my capabilities] ..... [τὸν νοῦν] (Plato, *Alcibiades II*).

### 3. Prepositions of two cases

[86]

Complete the sentences by writing the given words in the accusative or the genitive, according to the needed sense; remember that a preposition may have a different meaning in English:

#### διὰ

- διὰ ..... ταῦτα ἐποίησα. [αὕτη ἡ αἰτία, causal sense]
- διὰ ..... δὴ, ὃ πάππε, τοῦτον οὕτω τιμᾶς; (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*). [τί, causal sense]
- διὰ ..... οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπορεύθησαν ὀκτῶ σταθμούς (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).  
[αὕτη ἡ χώρα, geographical sense]
- Σωκράτης δὲ διὰ ..... πάντας τοὺς βουλομένους ὠφέλει (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).  
[πᾶς ὁ βίος, temporal sense]

#### κατὰ

- ἐπὶ Συρακούσας ἐπολέμησαν, οὐ κατὰ ..... (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [δίκη, according to]
- διὰ τί καθ' ..... μάχεσθε; [ἡμεῖς, against]
- ἐώρων ἐλάττονα τὴν στρατιὰν καθ' ..... γιγνομένην (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [ἡμέρα, distributive sense]
- προσβαλὼν αἰρεῖ τὴν πόλιν κατὰ ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [κράτος, according to]

#### μετὰ

- μετὰ ..... οἴκαδε ἐπανῆλθον. [ὁ πόλεμος, temporal sense]
- μετὰ δὲ ..... Τισσαφέρνης ἦλθεν εἰς Ἑλλάσποντον (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [ταῦτα, temporal sense]
- ἐκεῖ δ' ἐπύθοντο ὅτι Μίνδαρος ἐν Κυζίκῳ εἶη καὶ Φαρνάβαζος μετὰ ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
[τὸ πεζόν, company sense]
- οἱ πρότεροι στρατιῶται οὐκ ἐβούλοντο τοῖς μετὰ ..... συντάττεσθαι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
[Θράσυλλος, company sense] ✧ Well, choosing your battle mates correctly may save your life.

#### ὑπὲρ

- ὑπὲρ ..... τὴν βίβλον γράφω. [οἱ μαθηταί, on behalf of]

- πάντες ὑπὲρ ..... ἐμαχέσαντο. [δύναμις, beyond]
- νῦν οὖν, ὧ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, πολλοῦ δέω ἐγὼ ὑπὲρ ..... ἀπολογεῖσθαι (Plato, *Apologia*).  
[ἐμαυτόν, on behalf of]
- ἐγὼ μὲν ὑπὲρ ..... οὐδὲν ἔχω πρὸς ταῦτα ἀποκρίνεσθαι (Plato, *Sophista*). [αὐτοί, on behalf of]

### Common exercises for prepositions of two cases

#### 1/ Choose the correct preposition for each sentence:

- εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ στρατόπεδον ἰόντες ὀρώσι ..... ὀλίγου τοὺς ἐναντίους ἐν τάξει τε ἤδη πάντας (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [διὰ κατά]
- δεῖ ..... τὸ δυνατὸν πονεῖν. [μετά κατά]
- ὁ δὲ Κόνων ἐπεὶ ἐπολιορκεῖτο καὶ ..... γῆν καὶ ..... θάλατταν ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
[κατά...κατά διὰ...διά]
- οὗτος δ' οὐκ ἔφη ἀλλ' ἢ ..... νόμον πάντα ποιήσειν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [ὑπὲρ κατά]
- ὁ δὲ Περικλῆς πάλιν ..... τάχος ἐκόμιζε τὴν στρατιὰν ἐκ τῆς Εὐβοίας (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [κατά μετά]

#### 2/ Choose the correct preposition from the given list:

κατά / ὑπὲρ / διὰ / κατά / ὑπὲρ

- ἐλευθέραν καὶ εὐδοξοτάτην πόλιν ..... παντὸς νεμόμεθα (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ταῦτα ἰδὼν, ..... τὸ ὄρος κατέδραμε ὁ παῖς.
- ἀλλὰ δῆλοί εἰσιν ἀποδημοῦντες, ..... τὸν Ὠκεανὸν ἴσως (Lucian, *Iuppiter Tragoedus*).
- τὸν μὲν ποιητὴν οἴσθα οἷός τε ἦν καὶ ἡλίκᾳ ἐτραγῶδει παρ' ὄλον τὸν βίον, ..... τὸν Σοφόκλεα καὶ τὸν Αἰσχύλον (Lucian, *De Morte Peregrini*).
- καὶ ἀποβαίνουσιν εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα ..... μέσον πῶς τῆς Θράκης (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

#### 3/ Write the correct preposition to replace the English expression:

- ἀλλ' ἐγὼ [through] ..... παντὸς τοῦ βίου ... (Plato, *Apologia*).
- ἐπὶ τούτοις ὤμοσαν Λακκεδαιμόνιοι μὲν [on behalf of] ..... αὐτῶν καὶ τῶν συμμάχων (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἐγὼ γάρ, ὧ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, [because of] ..... οὐδὲν ἀλλ' ἢ [because of] ..... σοφίαν τινὰ τοῦτο τὸ ὄνομα ἔσχηκα (Plato, *Apologia*).

- Ἀλκιβιάδης δὲ βουλόμενος [with] ..... τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἀποπλεῖν οἴκαδε, ἀνήχθη εὐθύς ἐπὶ Σάμου (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- συνήθης ἤδη μοὶ ἐστίν, ὃ Σώκρατες, [because of] ..... τὸ πολλὰκις δεῦρο φοιτᾶν (Plato, *Crito*).

#### 4/ Write the Greek idiom equivalent to the English expression:

- ἤξει δ' [in a short time] ..... (Plato, *Alcibiades II*).
- ἐβουλεύοντο πότερον [by land] ..... ἢ [by sea] ..... χρὴ πορευθῆναι (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ὑπῆρχον δ' αὐτῶ καὶ ἐλέφαντες πολλοὶ [excessively] ..... λαμπρῶς κεκοσμημένοι (Diodorus Siculus, *Bibliotheca Historica*).
- οὐ μόνον τὸν Ἑλλησπόντον εἶχον βεβαίως, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς ἄλλης θαλάττης ἐξήλασαν [by force] ..... τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους (Plutarch, *Alcibiades*).

### 4. Prepositions of three cases

[87]

Complete the sentences by writing the given words in the accusative, the genitive or the dative, according to the needed sense; remember that a preposition may have a different meaning in English:

#### ἀμφί

- καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἀμφὶ ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [ἀγορὰ πλήθουσα, temporal sense]
- ἐσώθησαν μέντοι αὐτῶν ἀμφὶ ..... πεντεκαίδεκα (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [οἶ, sense of "around"]
- αὐτὸς δὲ προσῆλθε τοῖς ἀμφὶ ..... καὶ εἶπεν ... (Xenophon, *Symposium*). [Σωκράτης, physical sense]
- ἦν δὲ καὶ οὗτος καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης τῶν ἀμφὶ ..... στρατευομένων (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [Μίλητος, geographical sense]

#### ἐπί

- ἦλθον ἐπὶ ..... τῶν δοκούντων σοφῶν εἶναι (Plato, *Apologia*). [τις, directional sense]
- μετὰ γὰρ τοὺς πολιτικούς ἦα ἐπὶ ..... (Plato, *Apologia*). [οἶ ποιῆται, directional sense]
- ὃ Σώκρατες, ἀφίμεν σε, ἐπὶ τούτῳ μέντοι, ἐφ' ..... μηκέτι ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ ζητήσει διατρίβειν μηδὲ φιλοσοφεῖν (Plato, *Apologia*). [ὅτε, with the condition that]
- Ὅρφεϊ συγγενέσθαι καὶ Ὅμηρῳ ἐπὶ ..... ἂν τις δέξαιτ' ἂν ὑμῶν; (Plato, *Apologia*). [πόσον, for how much?]

**παρά**

- ... , ἀποδιδράσκειν ἐπιχειρῶν παρὰ ..... (Plato, *Crito*). [αἶ συνθηκαί, sense of “breaking”]
- ἐὰν λέγῃς παρὰ ..... , μάτην ἐρεῖς (Plato, *Apologia*). [ταῦτα, beyond]
- εἰώθεμεν φοιτᾶν καὶ ἐγὼ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι παρὰ ..... (Plato, *Phaedo*). [ὁ Σωκράτης, to the house of]
- ἔτοιμος ἔγωγε καὶ μανθάνειν καὶ ἀκούειν οὐ μόνον παρὰ ..... , ἀλλὰ καὶ παρ’ ..... (Plato, *Cratylus*). [Κράτυλος, ἄλλος ὅστισούν, from the mouth of]

**περί**

- Σαμίους καὶ Μιλησίοις πόλεμος ἐγένετο περὶ ..... (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [Πριήρη, around]
- τῆς θαλάττης ἐκράτησαν ..... περὶ ..... καὶ δέκα (Thucydides, *Historiae*).  
[ἡμέραι τέτταρες, sense of duration]
- καὶ τῇ ἄλλῃ ἡμέρᾳ περὶ ἀρίστου ..... ἦκον εἰς Προκόννησον (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [ώρα, temporal sense]
- Στάγης δὲ ὁ Πέρσης περὶ ..... ὦν, ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
[ταῦτα τὰ χωρία, geographical sense]

**πρὸς**

- οἱ δὲ Πελοποννήσιοι ἰδόντες τὰς τῶν Ἀθηναίων τριήρεις οὐσας πρὸς ..... , ἔφυγον εἰς τὴν γῆν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [ὁ λιμὴν, next to]
- [ἐκέλευσε] τοὺς μὲν λοχαγοὺς πρὸς τῶν Καρδούχων ἰέναι, οὐραγοὺς δὲ καταστήσασθαι πρὸς ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [ὁ ποταμός, towards near] ✧ Note: Look at the first sentence!
- οἱ δὲ πρὸς ..... ἀθρόοι σὺν πολλῷ ὄχλῳ πρὸς τὴν πόλιν ἀπεχώρουν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
[τὸ τεῖχος, next to]
- εἶμι ἔτοιμος πρὸς ..... τὸν ἄνδρ’ ἄγειν καὶ μὴ δόλοισιν (Sophocles, *Philoctetes*). [βία, violently]

**ὑπό**

- εἰς τὴν Ἠλείαν ἀφικόμενος ὑπὸ ..... καλουμένον ὠρμίσατο (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
[ὁ Ἰχθυς, geographical location]
- αὐτὸν ἀκοντίζει τις παλτῶ ὑπὸ ..... βιαίως (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [ὁ ὀφθαλμός]
- οἱ νεκροὶ ὑπὸ ..... ἔκειντο (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [τὸ τεῖχος]
- ὑπὸ ..... εἰσέπλευσαν εἰς τὸν κόλπον τὸν Κρισσαῖον (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [νῆξ]

## Common exercises for prepositions of three cases

1/ Choose the correct preposition for each sentence:

- ἔστι δὲ καὶ μεγάλου βασιλέως βασιλεία ἐν Κελαιναῖς ἐρυμνὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσίου ποταμοῦ .....  
τῇ ἀκροπόλει (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [διὰ ὑπό]
- ἐν τῷ Ὀλυμπικῷ ἀγῶνι διαζώματα ἔχοντες ..... τὰ αἰδοῖα οἱ ἀθληταὶ ἠγωνίζοντο (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [ἐν περί]
- ..... τὸν ποταμὸν βαίνομεν. [παρά σύν]
- ὅταν τι λέγω ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ ..... τῶν θεῶν, ... (Plato, *Euthyphro*). [ἐν περί]
- τότε ἐγὼ μόνος τῶν πρυτάνεων ἠναντιώθην ὑμῖν μηδὲν ποιεῖν ..... τοὺς νόμους (Plato, *Apologia*). [ἀνά παρά]



- ..... βλάβη οἶει τοῦ θεραπευμένου τὴν θεραπείαν εἶναι; (Plato, *Euthyphro*). [ἐν ἐπί] ✧ We do it for his benefit!
- εἴωθα λέγειν καὶ ἐν ἀγορᾷ ..... τῶν τραπεζῶν (Plato, *Apologia*). [ὑπό ἐπί] ✧ So I could be heard better.
- σὺ δὲ τοῦτο πρὸς ἐμέ ἐν τῷ κήπῳ ..... ταῖς δάφναις αὐτὸς ἔφησθα ἐννενοηκέναι (Plato, *Epistulae*). [μετά ὑπό]
- αὐτὸν ὀρᾶς ..... τῇ θύρᾳ ἐστῶτα; [πρὸς ὑπέρ]
- νῦν ἐγὼ πρῶτον ..... δικαστήριον ἀναβέβηκα (Plato, *Apologia*). [διὰ ἐπί]

2/ Choose the correct preposition from the given list:

ὑπό / ἐπί / πρὸς / ἐπὶ / πρὸς / ἐπί

- ὅστις φησὶ [τοῦτο] ψεύδεται τε καὶ ..... διαβολῇ τῇ ἐμῇ λέγει (Plato, *Apologia*).
- λέγεται ὁ Ἡρακλῆς ..... τὸν Κέρβερον κύνα καταβῆναι (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ἐγκωμιάζων σε ..... σοφία οὐδέποτε παύσομαι (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- τὸ δὲ ἄλλο στρατόπεδον ἤσαστο ..... τῶν Ἀθηναίων (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ..... δὲ τούτῳ ὕδωρ ἡμῖν οὐκ ἔν.
- ἐντεῦθεν δὲ φυγῇ τῶν Πελοποννησίων ἐγένετο ..... τὴν Ἄβυδον (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

πρὸς / ὑπό / ἐπί / πρὸς / ἐν / ὑπό

- οἱ δ' οὐκ ἔφασαν δεῖν στασιάσειν ..... τὴν ἑαυτῶν πόλιν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- πόλεμον ἄρα ἠγγὺς σὺ εἶναι τῷ ὄντι ..... τοῖς θεοῖς πρὸς ἀλλήλους; (Plato, *Euthyphro*).

- πρῶτον μὲν οὖν δίκαιός εἰμι ἀπολογήσασθαι, ὃ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, ..... τὰ πρῶτά μου ψευδῆ κατηγορημένα (Plato, *Apologia*).
- ἡτιάθη μέντοι ..... τινων προδοῦναι τὰς ναῦς (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- τὰς δὲ λοιπὰς τῶν νεῶν, τετταράκοντα οὔσας, ..... τῷ τείχει ἀνείλκυσε (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἐπὶ τούτοις δίδωμι τὸ μῆλον, ..... τούτοις λάμβανε (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 20*).  
 ✧ Paris, choosing Aphrodite as winner of the beauty contest after hearing her conditions.

### 3/ Write the correct preposition to replace the English expression:

- τί οὖν ποιήσεις φιλοσοφίας [about] ..... ; (Plato, *Parmenides*). ✧ Mind the accent of the preposition!
- νῦν διατρίβεις [around] ..... τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως στοά; (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν, ἔφη, χρήματα ἡμῖν, τοῖς δὲ πολεμίοις ἄφθονα [from] ..... βασιλέως (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἐπειδὴ οὖν μοι δοκεῖ οὐδεὶς τῶν παρόντων προθύμως ἔχειν [towards] ..... τὸ πολὺν πίνειν οἶνον, ... (Plato, *Symposium*).
- [About] ..... τίνος λέγεις;
- [By] ..... τοῦ Ἀχιλλέως πολλοὶ ἀπέθανον.

◇

- καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν [around] ..... ἀγορὰν πλήθουσαν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- πολεμεῖν δεῖ [against] ..... βασιλέα.
- πνεύματι ἔπλεον καλῶ ἡμέρας δύο [along] ..... γῆν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- οὐδ' ἂν ἐνὶ ὑπεικάθοιμι [beyond] ..... τὸ δίκαιον δεῖσας θάνατον (Plato, *Apologia*).
- Κῦρος δ' οὖν ἀνέβη [up] ..... τὰ ὄρη (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). ✧ It's not **ἀνά**.
- ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ Συέννεσις εἶναι [on] ..... τῶν ἄκρων (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

### 4/ Write the Greek idiom equivalent to the English expression:

- [Usually] ..... ἄγαν πονῶ.
- [In my opinion] ....., δεῖ σε ἀπελθεῖν.
- [Moreover] ..... εἶλοντο Ἀδεΐμαντον καὶ τρίτον Φιλοκλέα (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- νῦν οὖν [by Zeus!] ..... λέγε μοι ... (Plato, *Euthyphro*).

- ... οὐς ἐγὼ μᾶλλον φοβοῦμαι ἢ [those around Anytos] ..... (Plato, *Apologia*).
- ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν χρόνῳ τὰ θεῖα [a lot] ..... ἐπιούμην (I valued) εἰδέναι (Plato, *Euthyphro*).

### Exercises (into Greek) for all prepositions

[88]

Translate into Greek:

- We were sailing around the island.

.....

- Put this on the table.

.....

- For how much will you take me to Sparta?

.....

- We have just arrived from Socrates' house.

.....

- I love my relatives.

.....

◇

- Did these things happen in your time?

.....

- We ran along the walls.

.....

- The ship was sailing up the river.

.....

- I went through the forest.

.....

- I helped him because of our friendship.

.....

◇



- The treasure was under the earth.

.....

- Soon they arrived home.

.....

- This lies in the general's power.

.....

- Around one hundred citizens came to the meeting.

.....

- He is in the fields with his father.

.....



- We were talking in front of the house.

.....

- Odysseus' descendants lived always in an island.

.....

- Towards evening, the army attacked.

.....

- Since my childhood I obey my teachers.

.....

- Because of these things I decided not to go to the city.

.....

## c) Expressions of time and place

### 1. Expressions of time

[89]

a/ Link these expressions to their meanings:

AT NIGHTFALL / IN THE MIDDLE OF THE MORNING / FOR THREE DAYS / WITHIN THREE DAYS / IN THE PRESENT TIME / ON THE PREVIOUS DAY / DURING THE SUMMER / DURING THE NIGHT / AT DAYBREAK / TOWARDS EVENING / ON THE FOLLOWING DAY / AT THE RIGHT TIME / AFTER THIS

ἅμα ἡμέρα .....	εἰς καιρόν .....
πρὸς ἑσπέραν .....	ἀγορᾶς πληθούσης .....
ὑπὸ νύκτα .....	νυκτός .....
τῇ προτεραίᾳ .....	θέρους .....
τῇ ὕστεραίᾳ .....	τρεῖς ἡμέρας .....
ἐν τῷ παρόντι .....	ἐν τρίσι ἡμέραις .....
ἐκ τούτου .....	

b/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the time expressions and to which one of these several aspects of time it relates:

*when / for how long / within which period / since when / in how much time*

- ἡ δὲ στρατιὰ ἐν **τούτῳ** κατέβαινε (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- τοὺς Πλαταιᾶς ἔτρεφον οἱ Πελοποννήσιοι **ἡμέρας τινάς** (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- Θράσυλλος δὲ **ἐβδόμη καὶ δεκάτῃ ἡμέρᾳ** μετὰ τὴν εἰσβολὴν εἰς Ἔφεσον ἀπέπλευσε (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- διέβησαν **ὑπὸ νύκτα** εἰς τὴν Σάμον (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- εἰ ἐκτείναις τοὺς περιπάτους, οὐδὲν **ἐν πέντε ἢ ἑξ ἡμέραις** περιπατεῖς, ῥαδίως ἂν Ἀθήνηθεν εἰς Ὀλυμπίαν ἀφίκοιο (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- ἔπλεον **ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα** πνεύματι καλῶ (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

c/ Translate these simple time expressions into Greek:

at daybreak .....	on the previous day .....
in summer .....	since three days ago .....

during the night ..... in the present time .....  
 within two days .....

d/ Choose the correct option to replace the English expression:

- [At the other day] ..... ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Σινώπην (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).  
 τῆ δὲ ἄλλῃ / τῶ δὲ ἄλλῳ / τὴν δὲ ἄλλην
- [At the right time] ..... ἦκεις, ἔφη (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).  
 ἐν καιρῶ / εἰς καιρόν / ἀνά καιρόν
- ἦκομεν [on the previous day] ..... ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατοπέδου (Plato, *Charmides*).  
 τῆ προτεραία / τῆ ὑστεραία / τῆ δευτέρα
- [During the night] ..... τοὺς πρόσω σκηνοῦντας ἐπειρῶντο κακουργεῖν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).  
 τῶ νυκτί / τοῦ νυκτός / τῆς νυκτός
- ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε [during five days] ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*)  
 ἡμέρας πέντε / ἡμέραι πέντε / ἡμέραις πέντε
- οἱ δὲ Ἀθηναῖοι ἀνταναγαγόμενοι ἐναυμάχησαν [until the evening] ..... ἐξ ἑωθινοῦ  
 (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
 πρὶν δειλῆς / μέχρι δειλῆς / διὰ δειλῆς

e/ Put the Greek word(s) in the necessary case; in some sentences, the meaning has been indicated:

- διέτριβε παρὰ Λυσάνδρῳ ..... καὶ πλείῳ (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [τρῆς μῆνες]
- αἱ δὲ γυναῖκες αὐτῶν ἦδη [for third night] ..... τοῖς πολεμίοις συγκαθεύδουσιν (Plutarch, *Eumenes*).  
 [τρίτη νύξ]
- ἦδη δὲ πρὸς ..... ἦκον ἐξ Ἄργους κατὰ θάλατταν ἄνδρες Ἀράτου φίλοι (Plutarch, *Agis et Cleomenes*).  
 [ἑσπέρα]
- ἐπεβίω δὲ ..... (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [δύο ἔτη καὶ ἕξ μῆνες]
- ἐντὸς γὰρ ..... ἦγαγε τοὺς ἄνδρας, ὥσπερ ὑπέστη (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [εἴκοσιν ἡμέραι]
- [At the following day] ..... Ἀλκιβιάδης ἐκκλησίαν ποιήσας παρεκελεύετο αὐτοῖς ὅτι ...  
 (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [ἡ δὲ ὑστεραία]

f/ Replace the English expression with a suitable Greek one:

[If the expression you write is not the same as what the author wrote, it does not mean that yours is wrong.]

- [At sunset] ..... κατέλαβον (αὐτήν) (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- [A little later] ..... ἡ τελευτήσαι Δαρεῖον, ἐξήλασεν εἰς Πασαργάδας ὁ βασιλεύς (Plutarch, *Artaxerxes*)
- αἰροῦσιν [in three months] ..... δύο πόλεις (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἀπόλλυμαι τάλας [already for ten years] ..... ἐν λιμῶ τε καὶ κακοῖσι (Sophocles, *Philoctetes*).
- [While] ..... ταῦτα ἐβουλεύοντο ... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- [At that time] ..... ἠγγέλθη τοῖς τῶν Συρακοσίων στρατηγοῖς οἰκοθεν ὅτι ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

◇

- [Not many days later] ..... ἦλθε καὶ ἡ πεζὴ στρατιά (Lysias, *De Caede Eratosthenis*).
- τῆ δ' ὕστεραία, [at daybreak] ..... , οἱ μὲν πρυτάνεις τὴν βουλὴν ἐκάλουν (Demosthenes, *De Corona*).
- [During that day] ..... αὐτοῦ ἔμειναν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- [For the whole day] ..... περιπατεῖς; (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- οὕτως ἐπεφόβηντο ὥστε οὐδ' ἀνεπαύσαντο [during the night] ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- θεραπεύω τὰς κόρας ἤδη [for fourth day] ..... (Athenaeus, *Deinosophistae*).

## 2. Expressions of place

[90]

a/ Link these expressions to their meanings:

FROM ATHENS / THROUGH THE HOUSE / OUT OF THE CITY / AWAY FROM THE CITY / NEAR THE HOUSE / AT HOME / AT SOCRATES' HOUSE / TO SOCRATES' HOUSE (1) / FROM SOCRATES' HOUSE / TOWARDS THE ENEMY / INTO THE HOUSE / TOWARDS THE HOUSE / AGAINST THE ENEMY / HOMEWARDS / AT THE SIDE OF THE HOUSE / TO SOCRATES' HOUSE (2) / FROM HOME / TOWARDS ATHENS

εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν	.....	Ἄθῆνηθεν	.....
πρὸς τὴν οἰκίαν	.....	διὰ τῆς οἰκίας	.....
ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους	.....	ἐκ τῆς πόλεως	.....
οἴκαδε	.....	παρὰ τοῦ Σωκράτους	.....
παρὰ τὸν Σωκράτη	.....	ὡς τὸν Σωκράτη	.....

παρά τὴν οἰκίαν	.....	πρὸς τῇ οἰκίᾳ	.....
οἴκοι	.....	παρὰ τῷ Σωκράτει	.....
πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους	.....	Ἀθήναζε	.....
οἴκοθεν	.....	ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως	.....

**b/ Translate these simple expressions of place into Greek:**

into the house	.....	from home	.....
away from the city	.....	through the country	.....
in the war	.....	by the fountain	.....
against the enemy	.....		

**c/ Choose the correct option to replace the English expression:**

- [Through the middle] ..... τοῦ παραδείσου ρεῖ ὁ Μαίανδρος ποταμός (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).  
*διὰ μέσον / διὰ μέσου / διὰ τὸ μέσον*
- τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ ἐντεῦθεν ἀνήγετο [towards Cephalonia] ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
*ἐπὶ τῆς Κεφαλληνίας / εἰς τῆς Κεφαλληνίας / ἐπὶ τῇ Κεφαλληνίᾳ*
- οἱ δ' ἐν Σηστῷ Ἀθηναῖοι νυκτὸς ἀπέδρασαν [into Cardia] ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
*εἰς Καρδία / εἰς Καρδίαν / εἰς Καρδίαν*
- Ξενοφῶν οὖν τὸ μὲν τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος ἀνάθημα ποιησάμενος ἀνατίθησιν εἰς τὸν [in Delphi] .....  
τῶν Ἀθηναίων θησαυρόν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).  
*ἐν Δελφοῦς / εἰς Δελφοῖς / ἐν Δελφοῖς*
- ἀπελθὼν Ἀθήναζε [at home] ..... ἔτυχεν ὦν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
*οἴκοι / οἴκοθεν / οἴκαδε*

**d/ Put the Greek word(s) in the necessary case; in some sentences, the meaning has been indicated:**

- ἐσκήνουν δ' ἐν τῷ αἰγιαλῷ πρὸς [by] ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [τῇ θάλαττα]
- τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ προσῆγον αὐτοὺς εἰς ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [τὸ στράτευμα]
- οὐ ταῦτόν ἐστιν, ἔφη, ὃ Σώκρατες, ἰδίᾳ τε διαλέγεσθαι καὶ ἐν ..... ἀγωνίζεσθαι  
(Xenophon, *Memorabilia*). [τὸ πλῆθος]

- οὐ δοκοῦσί σοι πολλάκις οἱ ἐν ..... τῶν ὀρθῶς λεγόντων καταγελᾶν; (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).  
[ἡ ἐκκλησία]
- ἐν Ἐφέσῳ δὲ παρὰ [by] ..... τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος ..... Σελινοῦς ποταμὸς παραρρεῖ (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).  
[ὁ ... νεώς]

**e/ Replace the English expression with a suitable Greek one:**

*[If the expression you write is not the same as what the author wrote, it does not mean that yours is wrong.]*

- παρὰ μὲν Κύρου οὐδεὶς λέγεται αὐτομολῆσαι πρὸς βασιλέα, [but from the king] .....  
πολλὰι μυριάδες πρὸς Κῦρον (Xenophon, *Oeconomicus*).
- τὰς δ' ἄλλας [ναῦς] πάσας Λύσανδρος ἔλαβε [next to the shore] ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ρεῖ δὲ καὶ [through the city] ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει εἰς Κεράμων ἀγοράν, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, ἐσχάτην [next to the Mysian land]  
..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ἔμενον [at home] ..... οἱ Μαντινεῖς τούτων ἐπιμελόμενοι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

◇

- Πρόξενος αὐτὸν μετεπέμψατο [from home] ..... ξένος ὢν ἀρχαῖος (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ὁ μὲν οὖν Θίβρων ἀπῆλθεν [homewards] ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- οἱ δ' ἀπήγαγον τὸν ἄνδρα [through the agora] ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- Θράσυλλος δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα ἀπήγαγεν [towards the sea] ..... τὴν στρατιάν, ὡς εἰς Ἐφεσον  
πλευσούμενος (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- εἰς Ἄντανδρον ἀφικνοῦνται πρῶτον, εἶτα [by the sea] ..... πορευόμενοι τῆς Ἀσίας εἰς Θήβης πεδῖον  
(Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

## d) Regime of verbs and adjectives

### 1. (unapplied in this book)

### 2. Verbs that rule genitive or dative

[91]

a/ As a warm up, read these sentences already classified by the regime of their verbs:

– *Verbs that rule the genitive*

- τί κεκίνηται, τίνος **αἰσθάνομαι** θείου; (Euripides, *Andromacha*).
- ὁ δ' ὡς **ἤσθετο** τοῦ γέλωτος, ἀνεκαλύψατό τε καὶ πάλιν ἐδείπνει (Xenophon, *Symposium*).  
 ✧ Somebody seems to have put his foot in.
- ὡς δ' **ἤσθετο** κραυγῆς, ἀνεπήδησεν ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- ὑμῶν **ἀκούω** ἀπορούντων τί τὸ δίκαιον (Xenophon, *Symposium*).
- ὡς δ' **ἤκουσεν** αὐτοῦ, ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- νέος ὢν μουσῶν **ἀμελεῖ** (Euripides, *Fragmenta*).

– *Verbs that rule the dative*

- ἀπήγγελλον ὅτι μοί τινες **ἀπειλοῦεν** (Plato, *Epistulae*).
- πρὶν **ἀπειλεῖν** ἡμῖν σκληρῶς, ... (Plato, *Leges*).
- **ἀπιστῶ** αὐτοῖς (Plato, *Hippias Maior*).
- εἰπέ πότερον **ἀρέσκει** σοι ἢ λέγει Σωκράτης περὶ ὀνομάτων, ἢ ... (Plato, *Cratylus*).
- τοῖς δ' Ἀθηναίοις οὐδεὶς τῶν συμμάχων **ἐβοήθησεν** (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἔνεκα τούτου σοὶ ἡδέως **διαλέγομαι** (Plato, *Protagoras*).

b/ Some of these verbs rule the genitive and some rule the dative. Link them to their meanings:

TO GUIDE / TO AGREE WITH / TO REMEMBER / TO TOUCH / TO DISTRUST / TO USE / TO NEED / TO ATTACK / TO NEGLECT / TO SHOOT AT / TO TOUCH / TO ENVY

ἐπιτίθεμαι .....	φθονέω .....	μέμνημαι .....
θιγγάνω .....	ὁμολογέω .....	ἄπτομαι .....

χράομαι .....	ἀπιστέω .....	τοξεύω .....
ἡγέομαι .....	δέω .....	ἀμελέω .....

TO INTEREST / TO CONVERSE WITH / TO MISS (A SHOT) / TO HAVE A SHARE IN / TO LAUGH AT / TO TAKE CARE OF / TO DESPISE / TO ENCOUNTER  
/ TO BE DIFFERENT FROM / TO PERCEIVE / TO DESIRE / TO HELP

ἀπαντάω .....	ἀμαρτάνω .....	καταγελάω .....
μετέχω .....	ἐπιθυμέω .....	ἐπιμελέομαι .....
διαφέρω .....	βοηθέω .....	καταφρονέω .....
αἰσθάνομαι .....	μέλει .....	διαλέγομαι .....

c/ Now divide the 24 verbs from the previous exercise according to the case they rule:

▷ With the genitive: .....

.....

.....

▷ With the dative: .....

.....

.....

d/ Read the following sets of sentences, paying attention to the case ruled by the verb:

- **καταγελά** μου οὗτος ἀκούσας (Plato, *Cratylus*).
- ὁ Ζεὺς **ἦρα** τοῦ μειρακίου τοῦ Φρυγός (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 20*).
- πῶς ἂν εὐδαίμων γένοιτο ἄνθρωπος **δουλεύων** ὄψου; (Plato, *Gorgias*).
- τὸ δὲ οὐκέτι μοι **πείθεσθαι** ἤθελεν (Lucian, *Philopseudeis*)
- εἰς δὲ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀφικόμενος **συγτυγχάνει** βασιλεῖ (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- οὐ γὰρ **ἐρῶσι** παίδων (Plato, *Symposium*).

◇

- ἰδὼν ποιοῦντα τοιαῦτα **κατέγνωκας** αὐτοῦ; (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- **ἐπιθυμῶ** αὐτῶν τούτων ἃ ἔχω (Plato, *Symposium*).



- δεῦρ' αἰὲν προεληλύθαμεν, ἐπιστήμης οὐκ **ἐπιλανθανόμενοι** (Plato, *Politicus*).
- τῶν μὲν ἡδονῶν διὰ τὴν λύπην **ἀπέχεται** (Plutarch, *Quomodo adolescens poetas audire debeat*).
- διψησας τῶν ἡδίστων ποτῶν **ἀπολαύσεται** (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- τῶν δὲ θανάτων τοῦ ῥάστου **ἔτυχεν** (Xenophon, *Apologia*).



- ἐκέλευον **ἀκολουθεῖν** μοι τὴν θεραπείαν εἰς τὴν ἀγοράν (Lysias, *De Caede Eratosthenis*).
- πολλάκις **ἀμελεῖ** τῶν ἀναγκαίων (Plutarch, *Regum et Imperatorum Apophthegmata*).
- οὐδ' εἶδεν οὐδ' **ἤψατο** τῶν χρημάτων (Plutarch, *Vitae*).
- ἐπὶ ψυχραῖς ἐλίσις **ἄρχεται** πολέμου (Plutarch, *Lucullus*).
- **ἀπέχομαι** τούτων ἀπάντων ὡς οὐδεὶς ἄλλος τῶν πολιτῶν (Isocrates, *Antidosis*).
- ὁ δὲ τούτου γε νοῦς τῶν μὲν μεγάλων **ἐπιμελεῖται**, τῶν μικρῶν δὲ **ἀμελεῖ** (Plato, *Leges*).

e/ Choose the correct form from the two options (both are from the same root):

- ... Κρέων, ὃς ἄρχει ..... (Euripides, *Medea*). [τῆσδε γῆς / τῆδε γῆ]
- ..... τούτων μέμνημαι (Demosthenes, *De Corona*). [οὐδένα / οὐδενός]
- ἐγὼ γὰρ ..... ἐντυγχάνω οἱ ... (Plato, *Gorgias*). [πολλῶν / πολλοῖς]
- μέλει μοι ..... ὧν ἐρωτᾷς (Xenophon, *Oeconomicus*). [τούτων / τούτοις]
- ὁ δὲ Ἴφικράτης λαβὼν τοὺς πελταστὰς ἐπέθετο ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [τῆς μόρας / τῆ μόρα]
- οὐχ ἔπομαι, ὃ Σώκρατες, ..... (Plato, *Euthyphro*). [τὰ λεγόμενα / τοῖς λεγομένοις]



- ἦδομαι ..... (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*). [φίλων ἀγαθῶν / φίλοις ἀγαθοῖς]
- πεινήσας ..... τεύξεται (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*). [τῶν ἡδίστων σίτων / τοῖς ἡδίστοις σίτοις]
- [Εὐαγόρας] ἄρχει μὲν ..... (Isocrates, *Panegyricus*). [μιᾶς πόλεως / μιᾶ πόλει]
- λαμβάνομεν δὲ οὔτε ἐκ τῆς γῆς οὐδέν· οἱ γὰρ ἐναντιοὶ κρατοῦσιν ..... (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).  
[αὐτῆ / αὐτῆς]
- ἔτι μέμνημαι ..... (Plutarch, *De Libris Educandis*). [τὴν παιδείαν / τῆς παιδείας]
- ..... δέω ἑμαυτόν γε ἀδικήσειν (Plato, *Apologia*). [πολλῶ / πολλοῦ]

f/ Choose the correct form from the two options (from different roots):

- τῆ λόγῃ ..... ἄπτομαι (Plutarch, *Vitae*). [τοῦ οὐρανοῦ / τὸν ἄνθρωπον]
- ἀπέχει δὲ ..... οὐ πολὺ (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [ταῖς Ἀθήναις / Βαβυλῶνος]
- οἱ ἀπολαύοντες ..... εὖνοι σοι γίγονται (Xenophon, *Oeconomicus*).  
[τοῖς χρήμασι / τῶν σῶν ἀγαθῶν]
- μεθύω μὲν, ἔμπας δ' οὔτις ἂν ψαύσειέ ..... (Euripides, *Cyclops*). [τῆ βίβλω / μου]
- καὶ ἡμεῖς ἀκούσαντες ἀπέσχομεν ..... (Plato, *Phaedo*). [τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ / τοῦ δακρύειν]
- ἀπέλανε μὲν ..... ὡς θνητός (Isocrates, *Ad Demonicum*). [τῶν παρόντων ἀγαθῶν / τοῖς ξίφεσιν]

g/ Put the word in brackets into the correct case, according to the regime of the verb:

- οἱ νεανῖαι [ὁ διδάσκαλος] ..... διαλέγονται.
- ὁ μαθητῆς [ὁ φίλος] ..... μάχεται.
- οἱ πολέμιοι [οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι] ..... προσπίπτουσιν.
- ὁ μὲν μαθητῆς [ὁ διδάσκαλος] ..... ἔπεται, ὁ δὲ διδάσκαλος [ὁ μαθητῆς] ..... ἡγεῖται.
- ὁ Ἀγαμέμνων [ὁ ἀδελφός] ..... οὐ πιστεύει.
- οἱ μαθηταὶ [ὁ διδάσκαλος] ..... οὐ βοηθοῦσιν.

◇

- οἱ ὀπλῖται χρωῶνται [ὄπλα] .....
- ἐνίοτε οἱ θεοὶ [οἱ ἄνθρωποι] ..... φθονοῦσιν.
- οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι πολεμοῦσι [οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι] .....
- ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος [ἡ θεά] ..... ἐρᾷ.
- ὁ υἱὸς λαμβάνεται [ὁ ἀδελφός] .....
- οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι μετέχουσι [ἡ ἀρχή] .....

h/ Choose the correct verb according to its meaning and the case ruled by each one. The object ruled by the verb has been highlighted:

- οἱ ποιμένες ..... **τῷ θηρίῳ**. [πλησιάζουσι / θιγγάνουσι / ἐπιθυμοῦσι]
- τὴν τε χώραν ἐδήου καὶ ..... **τῷ τείχει** (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [ἐτύγχανε / ἤρχετο / προσέβαλλε]

- ὡς ὀράτε, οὐδεις ἔτι **ἡμῖν** ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [μετέχει / ἄρχει / μάχεται]
- ἐκεῖνο ἤδη ..... **μοι** (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*). [μέλει / μέμνηται / διαλέγεται]
- ὁ ἰατρὸς δὲ οἶδε [τὰ ὀνόματα] καὶ τῶν ὀργάνων καὶ τῶν φαρμάκων **οἷς** ..... (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).  
[μάχεται / χρῆται / ἀμελεῖ]
- ὁμολογήσατ **ἡμῖν** ..... οὔτε πείθεται οὔτε πείθει ἡμᾶς (Plato, *Crito*).  
[πείσεσθαι / καταγελᾶν / αἰσθάνεσθαι]



- ἐπτάκις **τῶν πολιτῶν** ..... (Diogenes Laertius, *Vitae Philosophorum*).  
[ἔφυγε / ἐστρατήγησε / ὠμολόγησε]
- ..... δὲ **τῇ ὑμετέρᾳ γνώμῃ** (Lysias, *Pro Milite*). [πιστεύω / ἀποφεύγω / διαφέρω]
- πάνυ ταχύ **σοι** ..... (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*). [παύσεται / καταφρονήσει / ὑπακούσεται]
- ὁ δὲ μὴ νικῶν **τοῖς μὲν νικῶσιν** ..... (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).  
[κατεγιγνώσκει / ἐφθώνει / ἐπελανθάνετο]
- ..... **ἐμαντοῦ**, εἰ ... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [ἀπαντῶ / ἐπιτυχᾶνω / καταδικάζω]
- οἱ παῖδες ..... **τῶν γεραιτέρων**. [ἡγούνται / καταφρονοῦσι / φθονοῦσι]

i/ Replace the English verb with a suitable Greek verb and write it in the necessary form. The object ruled by the verb has been highlighted:

- τί οὖν, εἶπεν, ἐκεῖνο **τούτου** [is different] ..... ; (Plutarch, *Pericles*). [προέχω / διαφέρω / ἀρέσκω]
- οὐ [I criticise] ..... , ἔφη, **τούτοις** (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*). [μέμνημαι / ἀπέχομαι / μέφομαι]
- ῥαδίως δ' **ἀλλήλοις** [let's agree] ..... (Plato, *Sophista*). [περίειμι / ἀπειλέω / ὁμολογέω]
- ὅστις χρηματίζεσθαι δύναται, **πολλῶν δὲ χρημάτων** [desires] ..... (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).  
[ὄνειδιζω / ἐπιθυμέω / δουλεύω]
- ἐγὼ δ' **ὑμῶν** [request] ..... κατανηφίσασθαι Θεομνήστου (Lysias, *In Theomnestum*).  
[θιγγάνω / προσχωρέω / δέομαι]
- [They approached] ..... δὲ **αὐτῷ** καὶ Γοργίων καὶ Γογγύλος (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
[λαμβάνομαι / ψαύω / προσχωρέω]



- [You reproach] ..... **αὐτοῖς** ὥσπερ ἐγὼ ὑμῖν (Plato, *Apologia*). [ἔπομαι / ὀνειδίζω / προέχω]
- ὁ θεὸς οὗτος ἄρχει καὶ [reigns on] ..... **τῶν τεθνηκότων** (Plutarch, *Vitae*).  
[ἡγέομαι / λαμβάνομαι / βασιλεύω]
- οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι **πάσῃ πολιτείᾳ** μᾶλλον ἂν ἢ **δημοκρατίᾳ** [would trust] ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
[ἐράω / δέω / πιστεύω]
- οὐκ [he gets angry] ..... **τοῖς ἀδίκοις** (Plato, *Respublica*). [ἀρέσκω / μέμφομαι / ὀργίζομαι]
- **αὐτῆς ἐπιστήμης** οὐ [we have a share in] ..... (Plato, *Parmenides*). [μετέχω / ὑπακούω / ἄπτομαι]
- οὐκοῦν καὶ **τῶν λυπῶν** καὶ **τῶν ἡδονῶν** ἅμα [he ceases from] ..... ; (Plato, *Gorgias*).  
[καταγιγνώσκω / παύομαι / ἀπαντάω]

j/ Replace the English verb with a suitable Greek verb. The object ruled by the verb has been highlighted:

- μηδέπω [he is general of] ..... **Ῥωμαίων** (Plutarch, *De Tranquillitate Animi*).
- ἐγὼ μέντοι, εἰ χρὴ τάλιθές εἰπεῖν, [felt envy of] ..... **τῷ Ἄρει** (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 17*).
- [They attack] ..... **τῷ δήμῳ** (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- καὶ ὅμως ἤθελον **αὐτῷ** [to obey] ..... (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- οὐ σφόδρα, ὃ ἦρα, **τούτοις** [I am fed up with] ..... **τοῖς σκόμμασιν** (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 20*).
- ἀλλὰ ἐγὼ **ὑμῖν** [will lead] ..... (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 20*).

k/ Translate into Greek:

- The general *is upset with* the soldier.
- .....

- The general *leads* the soldiers.
- .....

- The messenger *falls in love with* the maiden.
- .....

- We *encounter* the enemies.
- .....

- He *has a share in* the victory.
- .....

- We always *help* our friends.
- .....

### 3. Adjectives followed by genitive or dative

[92]

a/ Some of these adjectives rule the genitive and others rule the dative. After each adjective, write *τούτου* or *τούτω* according to the case it rules and link them to their meaning:

HOSTILE TO / WORTHY OF / FULL OF / LACKING IN / EXPERT IN / GUEST TO / SIMILAR TO / AGREEING WITH / SIMILAR TO / TRUSTWORTHY TO / DEPRIVED OF / FULL OF

ὀμόλογος	.....	.....	ἄξιος	.....	.....
ἐμπειρος	.....	.....	μεστός	.....	.....
ὅμοιος	.....	.....	ἐνδεής	.....	.....
πιστός	.....	.....	πλήρης	.....	.....
ξένος	.....	.....	εὐικός	.....	.....
ἔρημος	.....	.....	δυσμενής	.....	.....

b/ Write the given noun in the correct case according to the adjective. The adjective that rules the noun has been highlighted:

- ἡμεῖς φανερώς **ἐχθροὶ** ..... γεγενήμεθα (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [ὁ δῆμος]
  - ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν λέγει ὅτι ἔστι χωρίον ..... **μεστόν** (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [πολλὰ χρήματα]
  - τὰ ὅπλα ..... **χρηστά** ἐστίν. [ὁ στρατιώτης]
  - σὺ γάρ, ὡς τὸ εἰκός, **ἐμπειρος** εἶ ..... (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 20*). [τὸ χάριον]
  - ἦν **ξένος** ἐκ παλαιοῦ ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [ὁ Ἀριοβαρνάκης]
  - βασιλικὸς μὲν ἐστὶ καὶ ..... **συγγενής** (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 20*). [Γανυμήδης οὐτοσί]
- ◇
- οἱ πολῖται ..... **φίλοι** ἦσαν. [ὁ τύραννος]
  - ὅπλα δὲ ἔσται αὐτοῖς **ὅμοια** ..... (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*). [τὰ ἡμέτερα]

- ..... πλήρης ἦν ἡ πόλις (Demosthenes, *De Corona*). [θόρυβος]
- ... παῖς, εἰ καὶ ποτε μέλλει **διάφορος** εἶναι ..... , ... (Plato, *Leges*). [οἱ γεννήσαντες]
- διεπρεσβεύοντο εἰς τὰς πόλεις, ὅσας ἤδεσαν **δυσμενεῖς** ..... οὔσας (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
[οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι]
- καταλαμβάνουσι δὲ τὰς ἀμάξας **μεστὰς** ..... καὶ ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [ἄλευρα ... οἶνος]

c/ Replace the English adjective with the necessary Greek one and then add the given noun in the necessary case:

- [Worthy of] ..... μεν ..... τὸ τοιοῦτο (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods*, 14). [λύπη]
- [Full of] ..... ἦ ..... (Lysias, *De Caede Eratosthenis*). [ὑποψία]
- ὄρᾳς ὡς ἀνδρεῖα ταῦτα καὶ οὐκ [unworthy] ..... ; (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods* 18).  
[ὁ πατήρ]
- [Trustworthy to] ..... δὲ ..... γεγένημαι (Xenophon, *Symposium*). [ἡ πόλις]
- ..... γ' αὐτῷ ἀεὶ [opposite to] ..... εἰμί (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [οἶδε]
- [Worthy of] ..... ἐστε, ᾧ κόραι. [μεγάλη τιμὴ]
- [Empty of] ..... δὲ ..... ἡ φαρέτρα (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods* 19). [οἰστός]

d/ Translate into Greek:

- The student is *different from* the teacher.
- .....

- The soldier is *worthy of* a good gift.
- .....

- This is the *opposite to* the truth.
- .....

- They were *anxious of* water.
- .....

- These laws are *common to* all citizens.
- .....



- These weapons were not *useful to us*.
- .....

- *Half of the people* were absent.
- .....

- These buildings are *equal to those*.
- .....

- What I say now is *the same* you said yesterday.
- .....

- He is *different from* his brother.
- .....

#### 4. Appendix: Adjectives followed by infinitive or participle

[93]

a/ Choose whether the participle or the infinitive suit in the blank, according to the regime of the highlighted adjective:

- περὶ μὲν Πολυγνώτου τοῦ Ἀγλαοφώντος **δεινός** ἐστὶν ..... ἃ εὖ τε γράφει καὶ ἃ μὴ (Plato, *Ion*).  
[ἀποφαίνεῖν / ἀποφαίνων]
- εὐρήσατε, ὧ ἄνδρες, πάντας ἐμοὶ ..... **ετοίμους** (Plato, *Apologia*). [βοηθεῖν / βοηθοῦντας]
- ὁ Θρασύμαχος **φανερὸς** μὲν ἦν ..... εἰπεῖν (Plato, *Respublica*). [ἐπιθυμεῖν / ἐπιθυμῶν]
- οἶδα ἐγὼ τὸν Πάριν, νεανίας ἐστὶ καλὸς καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα ..... **ικανότατος**  
(Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 20*). [κρίνειν / κρίνων]

◇

- **δηλός** εἶ, ὧ Θεαίτητε, ..... μου (Plato, *Theaetetus*). [καταφρονεῖν / καταφρονῶν]
- τὸν δ' οὖν Εὐφράτην ἴσμεν ὅτι **ἀδύνατον** ..... καλυόντων πολεμίων (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).  
[διαβῆναι / διαβαίνων]
- τί **ἄξιός** εἰμι ..... ; (Plato, *Apologia*). [παθεῖν / παθῶν]
- οὐδὲν **χαλεπὸν**, ἧ δ' ὅς, ..... ὃ λέγω (Plato, *Phaedo*). [ἐννοῆσαι / ἐννοῶν]

**b/ Translate into Greek:**

- This city is *pleasant to see*.

.....

- That man is *worthy of* receiving a prize.

.....

- Achilles was *great at* fighting.

.....

- It is *evident* that the Greeks have won.

.....

- Are you *ready to* fight?

.....

- This building is *impossible to* demolish.

.....





## SYNTAX OF CLAUSES

### a) Simple clauses

1. Describing real actions
2. Expressing potential actions
3. Expressing commands and prohibitions
4. Expressing wishes
5. Asking questions
6. Impersonal verbs

### b) Subordinate clauses

1. The concept of oblique optative
2. Causal clauses
3. Purpose clauses
4. Temporal clauses
5. Concessive clauses
6. Result clauses
7. Conditional clauses
8. Relative clauses
9. Comparative clauses
10. Fear clauses
11. Indefinite clauses
12. Proviso clauses

### c) Infinitive clauses

1. Which verbs use the infinitive and how?
2. Which tense of infinitive?
3. Where there is no change of subject
4. Infinitive with article
5. Infinitive after verbs of negative idea
6. Infinitive absolute
7. Infinitive imperative
8. Infinitive with ἄν

### d) Participle clauses

1. Participle with article
2. Participle without article
3. The participle is impersonal
4. The temporal correlation
5. Verbs that usually require a participle
6. Adjectives that usually require a participle
7. Genitive absolute
8. Accusative absolute
9. Participle with ἄν

### e) Indirect speech

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Indirect statement clauses
3. Indirect command clauses
4. Indirect question clauses
5. Subordinate clauses in indirect speech

### f) Verbal adjectives

1. Ending in **-τέος, -τέα, -τέον**
2. Ending in **-τός, -τή, -τόν**

### g) Combination of negatives

1. Negatives cancelling or reinforcing each other?
2. Other combinations of negatives side by side

### h) The use of particles

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Most common particles

### i) Hellenisms: peculiarities and idioms

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Non-verbal expressions
3. Verbal expressions

a) Simple clauses

**1. Describing real actions**

[94]

a/ State which of these examples is a whole sentence on its own:

ἀγαθὴ ἢ σοφία	.....	οἱ σοφοὶ οἱ μαθηταί	.....	ἡ Ἀκρόπολις ἢ καλὴ	.....
ἡ ἀγαθὴ ἢ σοφία	.....	οἱ διδάσκαλοι σοφοί	.....	αἱ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ οἰκίαι	.....
ἡ σοφία ἢ ἀγαθὴ	.....	διδάσκαλοι οἱ σοφοί	.....	αἱ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ οἰκίαι καλαί	.....
ἡ σοφία ἀγαθὴ	.....	κακοὶ οἱ πολέμοι	.....	αἱ καλαὶ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ οἰκίαι	.....
ἔτοιμοι οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι	.....	οἱ κακοὶ πολέμοι	.....	καλαὶ αἱ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ οἰκίαι	.....
οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι οἱ ἔτοιμοι	.....	καλὴ ἢ Ἀκρόπολις	.....		
οἱ σοφοὶ μαθηταί	.....	ἡ Ἀκρόπολις καλὴ	.....		

b/ Translate into Greek without using any verb:

- War is bad, but the allies are valiant.

.....

- The gods are many.

.....

- There are many gods.

.....

- The temples in the city are nice.

.....

- The wise teachers are in the agora.

.....

- There are wise teachers in the agora.

.....

c/ Translate into Greek using indicative + ἄν for the expressions in italics: [for customary actions]

- I *used to go* to school every day.

.....

- In former times, students *usually read* a lot.

.....

- *Did you work* in the fields many times?

.....

- We *used to write* a lot of letters every day.

.....

- His parents *gave* him money many times.

.....

## 2. Expressing potential actions

[95]

a/ Answer these questions:

- What tense is used to express present potentiality? .....
- What tense is used to express past potentiality? .....
- What tense is used to express future potentiality? .....
- Can the particle **ἄν** on its own (i.e., without verb) imply potentiality? .....
- Apart from expressing potentiality, what is the other use of optative + **ἄν** ?

.....

b/ Express these sentences to convey future, present and past potentiality:

- ✧ Example:    ὁ διδάσκαλος εὖ διδάσκει       THE TEACHER TEACHES WELL  
                  becomes  
                  ὁ διδάσκαλος εὖ διδάσκει ἄν     THE TEACHER WOULD TEACH WELL. (in the future)   *Future potentiality*  
                  ὁ διδάσκαλος εὖ ἐδίδασκεν ἄν    THE TEACHER WOULD TEACH WELL. (now)           *Present potentiality*  
                  ὁ διδάσκαλος εὖ ἐδίδαξεν ἄν        THE TEACHER WOULD HAVE TAUGHT WELL.           *Past potentiality*

- χρήματά μοι πέμπεις.

*Future pot.* .....

*Present pot.* .....

*Past pot.* .....

- τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν ὀρῶ.

*Future pot.* .....

*Present pot.* .....

*Past pot.* .....

- πολλοὺς φίλους ἔχεις.

*Future pot.* .....

*Present pot.* .....

*Past pot.* .....

- νέα ὄπλα ἔχειν βούλομαι.

*Future pot.* .....

*Present pot.* .....

*Past pot.* .....

- ἄγαλμα τῷ θεῷ ἀνατιθέασι οἱ πολῖται.

*Future pot.* .....

*Present pot.* .....

*Past pot.* .....

- ἀγαθὸς διδάσκαλός ἐστιν ὁ Σωκράτης.

*Future pot.* .....

*Present pot.* .....

*Past pot.* .....

- οἶνον πίνουσιν οἱ νικήσαντες.

*Future pot.* .....

*Present pot.* .....

*Past pot.* .....

c/ Now do the same with these English sentences: translate them into Greek in the three possible ways, expressing future, present and past potentiality:

- I say that this is not so.

*Future pot.* .....

*Present pot.* .....

*Past pot.* .....

- That man is a good soldier.

*Future pot.* .....

*Present pot.* .....

*Past pot.* .....

- The army does not arrive late.

*Future pot.* .....

*Present pot.* .....

*Past pot.* .....

- I write a speech for the assembly.

*Future pot.* .....

*Present pot.* .....

*Past pot.* .....

- They want to command the army.

*Future pot.* .....

*Present pot.* .....

*Past pot.* .....

- I persuade the citizens.

*Future pot.* .....

*Present pot.* .....

*Past pot.* .....

d/ For each pair, read the Greek sentence (it may correspond to any one of the three kinds of potentiality). Then, using it as a model, translate the English one into Greek.

- πᾶνυ γε σαφῶς ἔχομι ἂν ἐπιδειξαί σοι (Plato, *Euthyphro*).

He would be able to come here easily.

.....

- βουλοίμην ἂν, ὃ Σώκρατες (Plato, *Epistulae*).

Maybe he would not want.

.....

- οὐδὲν γὰρ ἂν μου ὄφελος εἴη, ὃ Σώκρατες (Plato, *Euthyphro*).

This would be of no profit for you, Pericles.

.....

- ἀλλ' ἔγωγε φαίην ἂν τοῦτο εἶναι τὸ ὄσιον (Plato, *Euthyphro*).

Would you say that this is true?

.....

- οὕτω γὰρ ἂν ἤττον ἐτόλμησεν ἐκεῖνος εἰσελθεῖν εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν (Lysias, *De Caede Eratosthenis*).

Then I would have dared even more to remain there.

.....

◇

- δῆλον ὅτι ραδίως ἂν ὁμονοοῦντες πολεμεῖν αὐτοῖς ἐδύναντο (Lysias, *Epitaphius*).

It is clear that, having much money, I would have been able to persuade him.

.....

- τί γὰρ ἂν τούτων ἀνιαιρότερον γένοιτο; (Lysias, *Epitaphius*).

What could be better than this?

.....

- τίνας γὰρ ἂν εἰκότως μᾶλλον τιμῶμεν τῶν ἐνθάδε κειμένων; (Lysias, *Epitaphius*).

Whom could we choose with more reason than these generals?

.....

- οὐκ ἂν ποτ' αὐτὸν εἰς τοσοῦτον τόλμης ἠγησάμην ἀφικέσθαι (Lysias, *Epitaphius*).

He never thought that I could reach such a level of cruelty.

.....

- τίς ἀνθρώπων οὐκ ἂν ἐδάκρυσεν; (Lysias, *Epitaphius*).

Who would not have fled away?

.....



- ἐβουλόμην δ' ἂν, ὦ βουλή, Σίμωνα τὴν αὐτὴν γνώμην ἐμοὶ ἔχειν (Lysias, *Contra Simonem*).

We would like you, judges, to listen to him carefully.

.....

- ἔχομι δ' ἂν καὶ ἄλλα πολλὰ εἰπεῖν περὶ τούτου (Lysias, *Contra Simonem*).

I would be able to do it again.

.....

- θαυμάσιον δὲ οὐδὲν ἂν μοι γένοιτο (Lysias, *In Andocidem*).

Everything would surprise him.

.....

- ὑμεῖς οὐκ ἂν δύνασθε τῇ αὐτῇ ψήφῳ τὸν τε ἀπολογούμενον καὶ τὸν κατηγοροῦντα κολάσαι (Lysias, *In Andocidem*).

They would not be able to seize the city and conquer the country with the same army.

.....

- νῦν δὲ πάντας ἂν ὑμᾶς βουλοίμην περὶ ἐμοῦ ταύτην τὴν γνώμην ἔχειν (Lysias, *Areopagiticus*).

Now we would like him to have the same opinion.

.....



- καίτοι πάντες ἂν ὁμολογήσαιτε δικαιοτέρον εἶναι τοῖς μεγάλαις χρῆσθαι τεκμηρίοις περὶ τῶν μεγάλων (Lysias, *Areopagiticus*).

All of them would agree that it is better not to surrender the city to the enemy.

.....



- τυχῶν μὲν γὰρ τῶν δικαίων ... , μείναιμι ἂν ἐν τῇ πόλει (Lysias, *Pro Milite*).

After hearing him, we would remain out of the city.

.....

- τίς οὐκ ἂν ἐλεήσειε Διονύσιον, τοιαύτη μὲν συμφορᾷ περιπεπωκότα; (Lysias, *In Theomnestum*).

Who would not pity Alcibiades, after he was defeated in the battle?

.....

- ἐγὼ δ' ἐβουλόμην ἂν αὐτοὺς ἀληθῆ λέγειν (Lysias, *In Eratosthenem*).

We would like you to speak the truth.

.....

- νῦν δὲ ἡδέως ἂν ἀκούσαιμί σου τὰ πάντα διηγουμένης (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods*).

We would like to hear with pleasure that man telling us everything.

.....

### 3. Expressing commands and prohibitions

[96]

#### a) Commands

1/ Apart from using the imperative, in what other ways can a command be expressed?

.....

.....

2/ Indicate which of these sentences make use of the aorist imperative:

- βλέπε πρὸς τὰ ὄρη.
- ὦ παῖδες, ποιεῖτε τὸ ἔργον.
- ὦ παῖ, εὐχου τοῖς θεοῖς.
- εἰπὲ τῷ διδασκάλῳ τὴν ἀλήθειαν.
- ξίφος γέ μοι δότε (Aristophanes, *Vespaе*).
- δὸς τὰς βίβλους τῷ ἀγγέλῳ, ὦ διδάσκαλε.
- ὦ στρατηγέ, ἡγοῦ τοῖς στρατιώταις.



- ἴσθι ἀγαθός, ὦ υἱέ.
- ὦ τέκνον Ἔρωσ, ὅρα οἷα ποιεῖς (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods*).
- πρόαγε δῆ, καὶ σκόπει ἅμα ὅπου καθιζήσομεθα (Plato, *Phaedrus*).
- ἡσυχίαν τε ἄγετε καὶ καρτερεῖτε (Plato, *Phaedo*).
- τοῦτο δ' εἰ βούλεσθε, κατὰ τόνδε τὸν νόμον κρίνατε (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- παύσασθε, ὦ Ἀσκληπιέ καὶ Ἡράκλεις, ἐρίζοντες πρὸς ἀλλήλους ὥσπερ ἄνθρωποι (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods*).
- ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς, εἰ δοκεῖ, καταστάντες βαδίζωμεν (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods*).

3/ Read these more difficult sentences and for each one indicate whether the present, the perfect or the aorist imperative is used:

- ἀλλ' ἴθι χαίρων (Aristophanes, *Equites*).
- κατάβηθ', ὦ Σωκρατίδιον, ὡς ἐμέ (Aristophanes, *Nubes*).
- δεῦρ' ἴθι, τοῦτον δ' ἔα μαίνεσθαι (Aristophanes, *Nubes*).
- μηδέν, ὦ τᾶν, δέδιθι, μηδέν (Aristophanes, *Vespae*).
- μέμνησό μου (Aristophanes, *Pax*).
- θές εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν ὑπίαν τὴν ἀσπίδα, καὶ μοι δότω τὰ τόμιά τις (Aristophanes, *Lysistrata*).

◇

- τὸν τρίβων' (a threadbare cloak) ἄφες, τῆνδὲ χλαῖναν ἀναβαλοῦ (Aristophanes, *Vespae*).
- ἄφετέ νυν ἅπαντες αὐτόν (Aristophanes, *Vespae*).
- στήθ', ἀντιβολῶ σε, στήθι (Aristophanes, *Plutus*).
- κάθησο, σῖγα (Aristophanes, *Acharnenses*).
- ἴσθι τοῦθ' οὕτως ἔχον (Aristophanes, *Nubes*).

4/ Decide whether the present or the aorist imperative should be used and translate into Greek:

- Come, o boy.
- .....

- Read the books, o boys.
- .....

- Eat the food. (sing.)

.....

- Drink the wine. (plur.)

.....

- Put the books into the house. (plur.)

.....

- Go out of the house (sing.)

.....

5/ Translate the same sentences again but using ὅπως + future indicative for the first three and the potential optative for the last three:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## b) Prohibitions

1/ What is the use of the subjunctive in expressing prohibitions?

.....

2/ Change these sentences from singular to plural, or vice-versa:

- μή τίθει τὰ ἀγάλματα δεῦρο.

.....

- ὦ μαθηταί, μή ἔστε κακοί.

.....

- μή μείγνυτε τὸν σῖτον τῷ ὕδατι.

.....

- μὴ προσπίπτετε τοῖς φίλοις, ὧ νεανίαι.
- .....

- μὴ μάχου.
- .....

3/ For each Greek sentence, identify whether it makes use of a present imperative or an aorist subjunctive and, taking the sentence as a pattern, translate the English one into Greek using the same tense:

- μὴ δράσης ὃ μέλλεις, μηδαμῶς (Aristophanes, *Acharnenses*).

Boys, do not do what he has told you to do.

.....

- μὴ μοι φθονήσῃτ', ἄνδρες οἱ θεώμενοι (Aristophanes, *Acharnenses*).

O general, do not feel hatred towards me.

.....

- ἀπόφερε τὰ κρέα καὶ μὴ μοι δίδου (Aristophanes, *Acharnenses*).

Do not give him this.

.....

- μὴ παρῆς ἅ σοι διδώσ' οἱ θεοί (Aristophanes, *Equites*).

O soldiers, do not disregard what I offer to you.

.....

- παῦ', οὗτος, καὶ μὴ σκέρβολλε πονηρά (Aristophanes, *Equites*).

Stop, citizens, and do not say bad things about me.

.....

◇

- παῦε παῦ', ὧ δέσποθ' Ἑρμῆ, μὴ λέγε (Aristophanes, *Pax*).

Stop, do not say anything else.

.....

- μὴ ποίει γ' ἅπερ αἱ μοιχευόμεναι δρῶσι γυναῖκες (Aristophanes, *Pax*).

Do not do what I am doing, my dear students.

.....

- μὴ διαλέγου νῶν μηδέν (Aristophanes, *Pax*).

Do not converse with those men.

.....

- μηδαμῶς ἄλλως ποιήσης (Aristophanes, *Aves*).

Do not act in another way, my friends.

.....

4/ Translate these sentences into Greek:

- Don't destroy the trees. (sing.)

.....

- Don't laugh. (plural)

.....

- Don't arrive late tomorrow! (plural)

.....

- Don't fight (sing.) with your friends.

.....

- Don't run towards the river. (plural)

.....

#### 4. Expressing wishes

[97]

a/ What verbal tense is used to express a wish...

... for the present? .....

... for the future? .....

... for the past? .....

b/ How can ὄφελον (in whichever person) be used to express wishes?

.....

.....

.....

c/ Read the following sentences and for each sentence decide whether it expresses a wish for the past, present or future, according to the verbal tense used:

- πλούσιον δὲ νομίζοιμι τὸν σοφόν (Plato, *Phaedrus*).
- εἶθε καὶ τὸν λιμὸν ἀποτρίψασθαι τῆς γαστρὸς ἡδυνάμην (Plutarch, *De Stoicorum Repugnantiis*).
- εἶθε γενοίμην οὐρανός (Plato, *Epigrammata*).
- εἶθε γε, ὦ Μνήσιππε, ταῦτα ἔλεγες (Lucian, *Toxaris*).
- εἶθε πρῶτός σοι ἐνέτυχον (Lucian, *Tyrannicida*).
- εἶθε τὴν τάξιν προὔλαβον τοῦ φόνου (Lucian, *Tyrannicida*).

◇

- Ἡροδότου εἶθε μὲν καὶ τὰ ἄλλα μιμήσασθαι δυνατὸν ἦν (Lucian, *Herodotus*).
- ὄφελε μὲν Κῦρος ζῆν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ὄφελε γὰρ μηδεὶς ἄλλος Ἀριστογείτονι χαίρειν (Demosthenes, *In Aristogitonem*).
- ὀλέσθαι δ' ὄφελον τῆδ' ἡμέρα (Sophocles, *Oedipus Tyrannus*).
- μή ποτ' ὄφελον λιπεῖν τὴν Σκυῖρον (Sophocles, *Philoctetes*).
- ἐκεῖνοι μὲν τῆς μάχης ἤδη κεκρμένης ἀφίκοντο, ὡς μήποτε ὄφελον (Lucian, *Verae Historiae*).     ✧ Infinitive missing!

d/ Translate each sentence into Greek paying attention to whether it expresses a wish for the present, future or past; use the verb ὀφείλω for some of them if you wish:

- If only I were stronger! (in the future)

.....

- If only I were stronger! (now)

.....

- If only you had gone to Athens!

.....

- If only they had won the battle!

.....

◇

- If only the god would help me! (now)

.....

- If only my son would read that book! (in the future)

.....

- If only he were writing the letter now!

.....

- If only we could see the Acropolis.

.....

## 5. Asking questions

[98]

### a) Simple questions

1/ How do you make clear that you expect the answer to be “no”? And to be “yes”?

“no”: ..... “yes”: .....

2/ Read these simple questions and then modify the first three, assuming the answer to be “yes”, and the two last ones, assuming the answer to be “no”:

- ἄρα θύουσι οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι τοῖς θεοῖς;

.....

- ἄρα ἐν τῇ Αἰγύπτῳ ἐστὶ ὁ Νεῖλος πόταμος;

.....

- ἄρα τῶ ἀδελφῶ πιστεύεις;

.....

- ἄρα τοὺς φίλους σώσεις;

.....

- ἄρα αὐτὸν ἀπέκτεινας;

.....

3/ Read these questions and try to guess what the answer would be:

- ... πολεμοῦσιν ἀλλήλοις: ἄρα οὐχ οὕτω; (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- ἄρα κατάδηλον, ὃ Εὐθύφρων, ὃ βούλομαι λέγειν; (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- τοῦτο ποιοῦντι ἄρα ἄξιόν σοι ζῆν ἔσται; (Plato, *Crito*).

- οὐκ ἄρα δοκοῦσί σοι ἐπίστασθαί γε, ἔφη, ὦ Σιμμία, πάντες αὐτά; (Plato, *Phaedo*).
- ἀναμιμνήσκονται ἄρα ἅ ποτε ἔμαθον; (Plato, *Phaedo*).
- οὐκοῦν ἀεὶ τοῦτο οὕτως ἔχει; (Plato, *Phaedo*).
- σωφροσύνης ἄρα οὐ δεήσει ἡμῖν τοῖς νεανίαις; (Plato, *Respublica*).



- ἄρα μή που, ὦ Κέβης, ἔφη, καὶ σέ τι τούτων ἐτάραξεν ὧν ὁδε εἶπεν; (Plato, *Phaedo*).
- Ἄνθρωπε, τίς εἶ; μῶν ἔγγονος εἶ τῶν Ἄρμοδίου τις ἐκείνων; (Aristophanes, *Equites*).
- μῶν ἐμὲ ζητεῖς; (Aristophanes, *Ecclesiazusae*).
- πότερον ἄνθρωπος ἢ Κονίσσαλος [εἶ]; (Aristophanes, *Lysistrata*).
- πότερόν ἐστιν οἰκεῖν ἄμεινον ἐν πολίταις χρηστοῖς ἢ πονηροῖς; (Plato, *Apologia*).
- πότερον ἴδιον ζῶσιν οἱ ἄρχοντες ἢ οἱ ἀρχόμενοι; (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- πότερα δὲ ἀγαμός ἐστιν οὗτος ἢ καὶ γυνή τις αὐτῷ σύνεστιν; (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods*).

4/ Translate each question; those with a question tag at the end will tell you whether a positive or a negative answer is expected:

- You have already done everything, haven't you?

.....

- Have you seen him in the city or not?

.....

- Don't you see him talking to that man?

.....

- Did he go to Athens or did he remain here?

.....

- You will not tell them anything, will you?

.....

- Do you want to read this book or not?

.....



## b) Deliberative questions

1/ What is a deliberative question?

.....

2/ What verbal mood does it use?

.....

3/ Read these questions:

- τί οὖν ποιῶμεν; (Aristophanes, *Aves*).
- πῶς λέγωμεν, ὦ Θεόδωρε; (Plato, *Theaetetus*).
- βούλει οὖν λέγωμεν ὅτι τῶν μὲν ὀνομάτων οὐδὲν ἡμῖν μέλει; (Plato, *Theaetetus*).
- εἶπω οὖν σοι τὸ αἴτιον; (Plato, *Theaetetus*).

◇

- ἀλλὰ βούλει ἐγὼ σοι εἶπω; (Plato, *Theages*).
- βούλει τὸ πρᾶγμα τοῖς θεαταῖσιν φράσω; (Aristophanes, *Equites*).
- βούλει παραθῶ σοι δόρπον; (Aristophanes, *Equites*).
- βούλει οὖν ἐπομόσωμαι; (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods*).

4/ Translate into Greek as deliberative questions:

- Where are we to go now?

.....

- What is he to tell her?

.....

- Whom are we going to choose as a general?

.....

- Who is going to save us?

.....

- Shall we kill him or let him go?

.....

### c) Other questions

1/ Read these questions and indicate whether they are adverbial or adjectival-pronominal:

- ὦ φίλε Φαῖδρε, ποῖ δ' καὶ πόθεν; (Plato, *Phaedrus*).
- πόσους οἶει μετέχειν τῶν ἀπορρήτων; (Plutarch, *De Genio Socratis*).
- ποῖ ἄγομεν καὶ παρὰ τίνας τοὺς κάμνοντας τὰ σώματα; - παρὰ τοὺς ἰατρούς, ὦ Σώκρατες (Plato, *Gorgias*).
- τοὺς ταύτη χρωμένους τῇ τέχνῃ τίνας φήσομεν; (Plato, *Sophista*).
- τίσι δὲ φαρμάκοις ἢ γοητείαις ἔπεισας Κράσσον; (Plutarch, *Crassus*).
- πότε δ', εἰ μὴ νῦν; (Aristophanes, *Vespae*).
- ποῖοι γὰρ ὄρκοι κρείσσονες; (Euripides, *Hippolytus*).

2/ For each pair of sentences, read the Greek one and then, using it as a model, translate the English one into Greek:

- πῶς οὐκ εὐθὺς ἐπήγειράς με; (Plato, *Crito*).

How is it that you have not read this book?

.....

- τί δὴ οὕτω πρῶ ἀφίξαι; (Plato, *Crito*).

But why have you arrived so quickly?

.....

- τίς οὖν .. μοὶ ἀποκρινεῖται; (Plato, *Parmenides*).

So, who will show us the way?

.....

- τίνα οὖν χρὴ τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν, ὦ Σώκρατες, ποιεῖσθαι; (Plato, *Alcibiades*).

What book should be read, o Plato?

.....

- τίτι οὖν ἔτι πιστεύσομεν λόγῳ; (Plato, *Phaedo*).

What city will we help?

.....



- τίνες οὖν οἱ ἀμαρτάνοντες; (Plato, *Alcibiades*).

Who are those who have escaped?

.....

- τίνες δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων πολεμεῖν θαρραλέοι εἰσίν; πότερον οἱ ἱππικοὶ ἢ οἱ ἄφιπποι; (Plato, *Protagoras*).

Who are better in fighting in the sea? The sailors or the hoplites?

.....

- πόθεν, ὦ Σώκρατες, φαίνη; (Plato, *Protagoras*).

From where have they arrived?

.....

- ἔχοις ἄν, ἔφη, ὦ Ἑρμόγενης, εἰπεῖν ἡμῖν τί ἐστὶ παροιμία; (Xenophon, *Symposium*).

Could you, o Socrates, teach us what wisdom is?

.....

- τί σκυθρωπὸς εἶ, ὦ Ἄπολλον; (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods*).

Why are you cruel, o master?

.....

## 6. Impersonal verbs

[99]

### a) General use

1/ Translate these impersonal verbs:

δοκεῖ	.....	ἔνεστι	.....	πρέπει	.....
συμβαίνει	.....	μέτεστι	.....	ἔξεστι	.....
συμφέρει	.....	δεῖ	.....	μεταμέλει	.....
μέλει	.....	χρή	.....		

2/ Answer these questions:

- What impersonal verbs take the accusative instead of the dative to express the subject of the infinitive clause that depends on the impersonal verb?
- .....

- In what other way can you write **ἔξεστι** ? .....
- What are the two possible imperfect forms of **χρή** ? ..... and .....
- What is the aorist of **δοκεῖ** ? .....

### 3/ Read these sentences:

- **ἔξεῖναι** μοι δοκεῖ ἰέναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἀγῶνα (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- **ἔδοξεν** αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ἀλλὰ καὶ ὑμᾶς **χρή**, ὧ ἄνδρες δικασταί, εὐελπίδας εἶναι πρὸς τὸν θάνατον (Plato, *Apologia*).
- οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἔφασαν **δεῖν** στασιάζειν πρὸς τὴν ἑαυτῶν πόλιν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἐβουλόμην δ' ἂν **ἔξεῖναι** μοι ἐπιδειῖξαι τὴν τούτου πονηρίαν (Lysias, *Contra Simonem*).
- πάντα ἐπίστασθαί τινα ἀνθρώπων **ἔστι δυνατόν**; (Plato, *Sophista*).

### 4/ Choose the correct option from the given list:

*μέλει / ἔπρεπε / χρή / ἐξεῖναι / συμβέβηκε / δεῖ*

- ἐγένετο δὲ ψήφισμα μὴ [to be possible] ..... περὶ τούτων συμβουλευεῖν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- [It is necessary] ..... πείθεσθαι Λακεδαιμονίοις καὶ τὰ τεῖχη περιαιρεῖν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι αὐτῷ [interests] ..... ὅπως καλῶς ἔχοι (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ταύτην μὲν εἶναι [it happened] ..... τοῦ Διὸς ἀδελφὴν καὶ γυναικα (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods*).
- [It is necessary] ..... γε μὴν ὑμᾶς καὶ τόδε εἰδέναι, ὡς ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- [It was convenient] ..... δὲ ἤδη σοι καὶ γεγαμηκέναι (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods*).

### 5/ Fill the blank with the correct impersonal form (if you do not write the same form as the author wrote, it does not mean that your choice is wrong):

- πάντα γὰρ [it is possible] ..... σοι πρίασθαι (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods*).
- ἀκήκοα ὅτι ἐν εὐφημίᾳ [it is necessary] ..... τελευτᾶν (Plato, *Phaedo*).
- [It is convenient] ..... αὐτοῖς φίλους εἶναι μᾶλλον ἢ πολεμίους (Xenophon, *Oeconomicus*).
- τῆς δὲ κακονομίας αὐτῷ ὀλίγον [it interests] ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- [It is necessary] ..... δὲ καὶ ταύταις ἀρέσκειν τὸν ἄνθρωπον (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods*).

- [τούτοις] ἐγὼ ὅταν μὲν πείθωμαι, οὐδέποτε μοι [it repents] ..... (Xenophon, *Symposium*).
- [It is necessary] ..... οὐκ ἔστιν ἡμῶν, ὥσπερ καὶ τιμῶν μεθέξετε, οὕτω καὶ τῶν κινδύνων μετέχειν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

**6/ Translate into Greek using these impersonal verbs:**

ἔδοξε / δεῖ / μέλει / μετέσται / ἔξεστι / συμβαίνει

- I must go to Sparta.

.....

- She can return tomorrow.

.....

- What is happening here?

.....

- I'm not interested in reading this book.

.....

- Pericles decided to remain in the city.

.....

- Will you have a share of the victory?

.....

**7/ Translate into Greek using impersonal verbs:**

- It's convenient that my son arrives tomorrow.

.....

- We need to speak to Pericles.

.....

- They can leave now.

.....

- I decided not to fight.

.....

- He repents of the murder.

.....

## b) The personal construction

1/ Read these sentences and indicate which ones use the impersonal construction and which ones use the personal one:

- ἡ δὲ ἔχθρα λέγεται αὐτῇ πρὸς τὸν ἄνδρα γενέσθαι ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

.....

- λέγεται τὸν Σωκράτην εἰπεῖν ὅτι ... (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).

.....

- παρὰ μὲν Κύρου οὐδεὶς λέγεται αὐτομολῆσαι πρὸς βασιλέα (Xenophon, *Oeconomicus*).

.....

- ἀποκτεῖναι λέγεται αὐτὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ Ἄρταγέρσην τὸν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

.....

2/ Translate each sentence twice into Greek, first using the impersonal and then the personal construction:

- It is said that Socrates arrived yesterday.

.....

- It was said that the Spartans had arrived.

.....

- It is said that the citizens are afraid.

.....

- It is said that this teacher is the best one of Athens.

.....

## b) Subordinate clauses

### 1. The concept of *Oblique Optative*

[100]

a/ Answer these questions:

– In what conditions can an optative replace an indicative or a subjunctive?

.....

– What are the primary tenses and the secondary ones?

▷ Primary: .....

▷ Secondary: .....

– What is a “primary sequence” and a “secondary sequence”?

▷ Primary sequence: .....

▷ Secondary sequence: .....

– What is usually understood by “vivid style”?

.....

b/ Observe the use of the oblique optative (in bold type) in the subordinate clauses in these sentences and rewrite it either in the indicative or the subjunctive (i.e., as if without using the option of oblique optative):

- διῆλθε λόγος ὅτι **διώκοι** αὐτοὺς Κῦρος (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

The verb could also be .....

- Κῦρος ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς **ἔσοιτο** πρὸς βασιλέα μέγαν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

The verb could also be .....

- ἐμεγάλυνε τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν παρὰ τῷ Τισσαφέρνει, ἵνα **φοβοῖντο** αὐτόν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

The verb could also be .....

- σαφές πᾶσιν ἦδη ἐδόκει εἶναι ὅτι ὁ στόλος **εἶη** ἐπὶ βασιλέα (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

The verb could also be .....

- εἶπον ὅτι σφίσι μὲν **δοκοῖεν** ἀδικεῖν οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

The verb could also be .....

- ἐκεῖ δ' ἐπύθοντο ὅτι Μίνδαρος ἐν Κυζίκῳ **εἶη** (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

The verb could also be .....

c/ Replace the indicative or the subjunctive in bold type by the optative in these sentences (only in those in which Thucydides could have used it):

- ἀμάξας ἀνευ τῶν ὑποζυγίων εἰς τὰς ὁδοὺς καθίστασαν, ἵνα ἀντὶ τείχους **ἦ** / ..... (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- οὐκ ἴσασιν ὅτι Ἰππίας μὲν πρεσβύτατος ὢν **ἦρχε** / ..... τῶν Πεισιστράτου υἰέων (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- εἶπον ὅτι νῆες ἐκεῖναι **ἐπιπλέουσιν** / ..... (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἦλθε δὲ καὶ τοῖς Ἀθηναίοις εὐθύς ἡ ἀγγελία τῶν πόλεων ὅτι **ἀφεστᾶσι** / ..... (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- διπλασίας ζημίας ἀξιοὶ εἰσιν, ὅτι ἀντ' ἀγαθῶν κακοὶ **γεγέννηται** / ..... (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- εἶπεν ὅτι ἡ μὲν πόλις σφῶν **τετείχισται** / ..... (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἠγγέλθη αὐτῷ ὅτι Μέγαρα **ἀφέστηκε** / ..... (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

## 2. Causal clauses

[101]

a/ Answer these questions:

- What are the five conjunctions that introduce a causal clause?

.....

- Of these five conjunctions, which ones introduce a causal clause that will usually stand *after* the main clause?

.....

- Which ones introduce a causal clause that will usually stand *before* the main clause?

.....

- Which ones can also have a temporal meaning?

.....

b/ Read these sentences:

- οὐδὲ λοχαγεῖν ἡμῖν ἔξεστιν, **ὅτι** Ἀρκάδες ἐσμέν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ... , **ἐπειδὴ** γε οὐδαμῶς δεῖ ἀδικεῖν (Plato, *Crito*).



- τοῖς Ἀθηναίοις πόλεμον ἐποίησαντο **διότι** εἰς τὴν Λακεδαιμονίαν εἰσβάλοιεν. ✧ Why optative?
- **ἐπειδὴ** ἐπαιδεύθης, ἔχouis ἂν εἰπεῖν πρῶτον μὲν ὡς ... (Plato, *Crito*).
- ἀλλ' ἴσως οὐκ ὀλίγον ἔργον ἐστίν, ὃ Σώκρατες, **ἐπεὶ** πάνυ γε σαφῶς ἔχοιμι ἂν ἐπιδειξαί σοι (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- ἐγὼ μέντοι ἔρχομαι ἀποθανοῦμενος νυνί, **διότι** Σωκράτει οὐκ ἠθέλον πείσεσθαι (Plato, *Theages*).

c/ Complete the sentences with the verbs below:

*εἰπόντι / ἐπιέζοντο / λέγωμεν / ἐθήτευνεν / διεκώλυε*

- **ἐπεὶ** ὁ γε ἀποθανὼν πελάτης τις ἦν ἐμός, καὶ ὡς ἐγεωργοῦμεν ἐν τῇ Νάξῳ, [he worked] ..... ἐκεῖ παρ' ἡμῖν (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- οἱ δὲ ἐν τῇ πόλει ὄντες Ἐπιδάμνιοι **ἐπειδὴ** [they were oppressed] ....., πέμπουσιν εἰς τὴν Κέρκυραν πρέσβεις (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- [Let's talk] ..... δὴ, ὡς ἔοικεν, **ἐπεὶ** σοί γε δοκεῖ, περὶ τῶν κορυφαίων (Plato, *Theaetetus*).
- οὐκ ἔχω τί λέγω, **διότι** μοι νυνδὴ ἐπέπληξας [after I have said] ..... αὐτό (Plato, *Theaetetus*).
- **ἐπειδὴ** ἡ τε δίκη ἐγένετο καὶ ἡ τοῦ θεοῦ ἑορτὴ [prevented] ..... με ἀποθανεῖν, ... (Plato, *Phaedo*).

d/ Translate into Greek using a causal clause:

- I do not want to do it because it is dangerous.

.....

- As you have ordered me to go, I will go.

.....

- The Spartans did not receive them, allegedly because they had helped the Athenians. ✧ Use optative!

.....

- As you are brave, we will appoint you general.

.....

- They left because they had already finished.

.....

- They killed him, allegedly because he was a traitor. ✧ Use optative!

.....

- As you live in Athens, you will know the answer to this question.
- .....

### 3. Purpose clauses

[102]

- What are the three conjunctions that can introduce a purpose clause?
- .....

- Which two of them can be sometimes accompanied by the particle ἄν ?
- .....

- By what other three methods can purpose be expressed?
- .....
- .....
- .....

#### a) Using a subordinate clause

1/ Complete these sentences by writing the given verb in the correct mood and tense:

- δίδαξον καὶ ἐμέ, **ἵνα** [ἐγὼ] σοφώτερος ..... (Plato, *Euthyphro*). [γίγνομαι, aorist subjunctive]
- λέγε οὖν ἡμῖν τί ἐστίν, **ἵνα** μὴ ἡμεῖς περὶ σοῦ ..... (Plato, *Apologia*). [αὐτοσχεδιάζω, present subjunctive]
- ἀκούσατε δὴ μοι τὰ συμβεβηκότα, **ἵνα** [ὕμεις] ..... ὅτι ... (Plato, *Apologia*). [οἶδα, aorist subjunctive]
- Ἀριστόδημε, εἰς καλὸν ἤκεις **ὅπως** [σὺ] ..... (Plato, *Symposium*). [συνδειπνέω, aorist subjunctive]

◇

- ἀφικόμεθα εἰς τόδε, **ὅπως** [ἡμεῖς] τὸ Λυσίου τε ὄνειδος ..... (Plato, *Phaedrus*). [ἐξετάζω, aorist optative]
- Μίνδαρος, καθελκύσας τὰς ἑαυτοῦ τριήρεις ἀπέπλει, **ὅπως** [αὐτὸς] ..... τὰς μετὰ Δωριέως (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [ἀναλαμβάνω, aorist optative]
- τὰ πλοῖα πάντα συνήθροισε παρ' ἑαυτόν, **ὅπως** μηδεὶς ..... τοῖς πολεμίοις τὸ πλῆθος τῶν νεῶν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [ἐξαγγέλλω, aorist optative]
- τῆς ἐορτῆς ἐπιμελήσεται, **ὅπως** ἄν μηδεὶς ..... μηδὲ ..... περὶ τὰ ἱερά (Lysias, In *Andocidem*). [ἀδικέω, present; ἀσεβέω, present]

2/ Translate into Greek using a purpose clause:

- I work in order to earn money.

.....

- They marched in order to arrive there before the battle.

.....

- The assembly deliberated in order to choose a general.

.....

- They will run in order not to be killed.

.....

- Now I read a lot in order to learn.

.....

**b) Using a future participle or an infinitive**

1/ Complete these sentences writing the given verb in the requested form:

- στρατεύουσιν ἐπ' αὐτοὺς οἱ Κερκυραῖοι τεσσαράκοντα ναυσὶ μετὰ τῶν φυγάδων ὡς .....  
(Thucydides, *Historiae*). [κατάγω, fut. participle]
- βραχὺ μὲν τι προῆλθον ὡς βοηθήσοντες, καὶ οἱ Μακεδόνες ἰππῆς ἀντιπαρετάξαντο ὡς .....  
(Thucydides, *Historiae*). [κωλύω, fut participle]
- Ἴπποκράτης ἐκ τῆς πόλεως ἐξήγαγε τοὺς στρατιώτας, ὡς ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
[μάχομαι, fut. participle]
- ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐπέμφθη σπονδὰς ..... . [ποιέομαι, infinitive]
- ἔδωκα αὐτῷ τὰ χρήματα νέα ὄπλα ..... . [ἠνέομαι, infinitive]

2/ Translate into Greek using a future participle:

- I will send you soldiers that will help you.

.....

- I journeyed to Athens in order to listen to Socrates.

.....

- They came quickly in order to take their weapons.

.....

## 4. Temporal clauses

[103]

### a) Main temporal clauses

1/ Link each Greek conjunction or combined expressions to its meaning (some can share the same meaning):

SINCE / AS SOON AS / WHENEVER / WHILE / WHEN / AFTER / UNTIL

ἤνικα .....	ἐπειδή .....	ἐπεὶ τάχιστα .....
μέχρι οὗ .....	ἐπεὶ πρῶτον .....	ὡς .....
ὅτε .....	ὁπότε .....	ἀπὸ οὗ .....
ἐξ οὗ .....	ἐν ᾧ .....	μέχρι .....

▷ What is the difference between **ἐπεὶ** and **ὅτε** ?

.....

▷ **ἤνικα** means the same as a) ὅτε b) ἐπεὶ

▷ **ὡς** means the same as a) ὅτε b) ἐπεὶ

2/ For each pair, using the Greek sentence as a model, translate the English one into Greek.

- **ἐπεὶ** δὲ πάλιν ἦλθε, λέγει τὴν μαντείαν τῷ Σωκράτει (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

When he came back, he gave me everything.

.....

- ἐμάχοντο ἀπὸ τε τῶν νεῶν καὶ τῆς γῆς, **μέχρι** οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἀπέπλευσαν εἰς Μάδυτον (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

I worked until the ship departed.

.....

- ἐν ᾧ δὲ προσῆσαν οἱ ἐναντίοι, Θρασύβουλος κατὰ μέσον σταῖς ἔλεξεν ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

While the enemy was approaching, Pericles got up and delivered a speech.

.....

- ὁ οὖν Κῦρος **ἐπεὶ** πάντας ἐώρα προθύμους ὄντας πράττειν ὅσα ἔλεξε, τέλος εἶπεν ... (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).

The men on the island, when they saw that we were ready, said ...

.....

- ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν ἔσπευε μὲν αἱ σπονδαὶ ἦσαν οὐποτε ἐπαύομην ἡμᾶς μὲν οἰκτίρων, βασιλέα δὲ καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ μακαρίζων (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

While you were present, we never stopped considering you a happy man.

.....

- ἐν ᾧ δ' ἂν τὸ δεῖπνον παρασκευάζεταιται, ἐγὼ καὶ σὺ τὰ δίκαια ποιήσωμεν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

While the soldiers are preparing the weapons, I will send these letters.

.....

◇

- ὕστερον δὲ ἠνίκα βασιλεὺς ἐπεστράτευσεν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ... (Andocides, *On the Mysteries*).

Later, when Socrates was in prison, ...

.....

- ἐπεὶ δὲ σπονδαὶ τε ἐγένοντο καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν, ἀνέστησαν πρῶτον μὲν οἱ Θοῤῃκες (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

After they had made the sacrifices, the priests departed.

.....

- ὡς δὲ ἀφίκετο πρὸς Μαντίνειαν τῆ στρατιᾶ, ὑπὸ ἀνδρὸς ἀπέθανεν Ἀθηναίου (Pausanias, *Description of Greece*).

When they had arrived at Athens, they performed some sacrifices.

.....

- ἐξ οὗ τὴν πόλιν οἰκοῦμεν, οὐδεὶς οὔτε κίνδυνος οὔτε πόλεμος ἡμῖν γέγονε (Isocrates, *Archidamos*).

Since they live in Athens, nobody has disturbed them.

.....

- οἱ δὲ τριάκοντα ἠρέθησαν μὲν ἐπεὶ τάχιιστα τὰ μακρὰ τείχη καὶ τὰ περὶ τὸν Παιραιᾶ καθηρέθη (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

The temples were destroyed as soon as the enemy captured the city.

.....

## b) The conjunction **πρίν** UNTIL / BEFORE

1/ Some (let's hope not excessively theoretical) questions on grammar:

- If the verb of the **πρίν** clause is a finite form, **πρίν** means a) *until* b) *before* c) *until and before*
- If the verb of the **πρίν** clause is a finite form, the main clause will usually be a) *positive* b) *negative*

- If the verb of the **πρίν** clause is an infinitive, **πρίν** means a) *until* b) *before* c) *until and before*
- If the verb of the **πρίν** clause is an infinitive, the main clause will usually be a) *positive* b) *negative*

2/ Translate these sentences into Greek using a clause introduced by **πρίν** in the indicated form, and try to understand why it must be in the indicated form:

- Before coming here, tell me. [use infinitive]  
.....
- Do not leave before finishing your task. [use subjunctive + **ἄν**]  
.....
- You must think before choosing. [use infinitive]  
.....
- Do not leave before your brother has returned. [use subjunctive + **ἄν**]  
.....
- I left before your brother returned. [use accusative + infinitive]  
.....

3/ For each pair, read the Greek sentence and translate the English one into Greek:

- Μένων δὲ **πρίν** δῆλον εἶναι τί ποιήσουσιν οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται συνέλεξε τὸ αὐτοῦ στράτευμα (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

Before knowing what Socrates would say, the judges reached a decision.

.....

- οὐ πρόσθεν ἐπαύσαντο πολεμοῦντες **πρίν** ἐποίησαν πᾶσαν τὴν πόλιν ὁμολογεῖν Λακεδαιμονίους ἡγεμόνας εἶναι (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

The teacher did not stop shouting until the students had finished the task.

.....

- ἔσπευδε γὰρ **πρίν** Φαρνάβαζον **βοηθῆσαι** (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

He left the city before Socrates arrived.

.....

- ἔστησαν δ' οὖν οὐ πρόσθεν, **πρίν** ἐν τῷ ὄρει τῷ Ναρθακίῳ **ἐγένοντο** (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

They did not stop walking until they arrived at Athens.

.....

- οὐκ ἂν ἀπέλθοιμι **πρὶν ἂν** παντάπασιν ἡ ἀγορὰ **λυθῆ** (Xenophon, *Oeconomicus*). ✧ The agora is still crowded.  
I wouldn't say anything before the general ordered me to speak.

- ἀναχωρεῖν αὐτοὺς ἐκέλευε, **πρὶν** τοὺς ὀπίτις ὁμοῦ γίγνεσθαι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
I want them to return the money before the council finds out.

4/ Read these sentences, paying special attention to whether an infinitive or a finite verbal form is used after *πρὶν* and why:

- ἡμεῖς δὲ **πρὶν** συμμαεῖξαι τοῖς πολέμοις σπεύδετε εἰς τὴν σωτηρίαν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- **πρὶν** δὲ αὐτὸν ὀρμηθῆναι ἐκ Τεγέας, παρήσαν οἱ Θηβαῖοι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- οὐ πρόσθεν ἔστησαν οἱ Θεσπιεῖς, **πρὶν** ἐν τῷ τείχει ἐγένοντο (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- οὐ πρότερον παύονται, **πρὶν** ἂν ἡττηθέντες τὴν ἀσκησιν καταλύσωσιν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
✧ Talking about athletes and their training practices.
- οἱ Ἡλεῖοι συστρατευόμενοι αὐτοῖς ἔπειθον μὴ ποιεῖσθαι μάχην, **πρὶν** οἱ Θηβαῖοι παραγένοντο (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- οὐ πρόσθεν ἐξενεγκεῖν ἐτόλμησαν πρὸς ἡμᾶς πόλεμον **πρὶν** τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἡμῶν συνέλαβον (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

5/ Complete the sentences choosing from the given options:

*ἐπήρето / ἐγένοντο / δῶ / ἀνήγαγον / ἦκον / ἀπῆλθεν*

- ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς μὴ κινεῖν τοὺς στρατιώτας **πρὶν** [they took up] ..... πελαστὰς πρὸς τὸ ὄρος (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ἐὰν μὲν ἐγὼ φαίνωμαι ἀδικεῖν, οὐ χρή με ἐνθένδε ἀπελθεῖν **πρὶν** ἂν [I give (pay)] ..... δίκην (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- οὐ πρόσθεν ἔστησαν **πρὶν** ἢ πρὸς τοῖς πεζοῖς τῶν Ἀσσυρίων [they were] ..... (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- οὐ πρόσθεν ἐδύναντο θεάσασθαι αὐτὸν **πρὶν** ἢ Πάνθειαν [departed] ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- οὐ πρότερον ἀπέδωκε τῷ πλήθει τοὺς νόμους **πρὶν** ἐλθῶν εἰς Δέλφους [he asked] ..... τὸν θεόν (Xenophon, *De Republica Lacedaemoniorum*).
- οὐ πρότερον ἐξεβίβασεν ἐκ τῶν νεῶν **πρὶν** αὐταὶ [arrived] ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
✧ αὐταὶ refers to some support ships that had been sent.

**c) The conjunction ἕως UNTIL / WHILE / AS LONG AS**

1/ Choose the correct option:

- If the verb of the ἕως clause is an indicative, ἕως means     a) *until*   b) *while*   c) *until or while*
- If the verb of the ἕως clause is a subjunctive (with ἄν) or an optative, ἕως means  
  a) *until*   b) *while*   c) *until or while*

2/ Using the Greek sentence as a model, translate the English one into Greek.

- ο δὲ ἀναβάς, ἕως μὲν βάσιμα ἦν, ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου ἦγεν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).   ✧ As long as the ground was dry...

And they, as long as the pirates were distant from the city, were safe and sound.  
.....

- ἕως μὲν νύξ ἦν, ἀπιστοῦντες ἠσυχίαν εἶχον (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

While there was light, they could fight.  
.....

- νῆ τὸν Δί', ἔφη, ὃ Σώκρατες· καὶ ἔτι γε συνάγω, ἕως ἄν κτήσωμαι ὡς ἂν δύνωμαι πλεῖστα (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).

✧ Somebody has been asked if it is true that he has an extensive collection of books.

I go on earning money until I have more than you.  
.....

- ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς προίεναι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν, ἕως Κύρω συμμείξειαν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

He decided to go forward until he would meet the general.  
.....

- παρήγγελτο δὲ τὰ μὲν δόρατα ἐπὶ τὸν δεξιὸν ὄμον ἔχειν, ἕως σημαίνοι τῇ σάλπιγγι (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

Somebody told them to carry the weapons until the general would give a signal.  
.....

3/ Read these sentences, paying attention to what meaning you give to ἕως and why:

- ἕως ἂν τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ἀγησίλαος, ἐκεῖσε πορεύωμαι, δίδου δὲ τῇ στρατιᾷ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

Meaning of ἕως: .....



- ἄθυμία ἐνέπεσε πᾶσιν· ὄνοντο γὰρ ... , ἕως ἂν πέμπωσιν ἑτέρους πρέσβεις, πολλοὺς τῷ λιμῷ ἀπολεῖσθαι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

Meaning of ἕως: .....

- ἕως δ' ἂν ταῦτα διαπράξωνται, φυλακὴν καὶ μισθὸν τοῖς φρούροις ἐξ μηνῶν κατέλιπε (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

Meaning of ἕως: .....

- ἔνθα δὴ ἀναμείνας, ἕως καὶ οἱ σύμμαχοι πάντες παρεγένοντο, ἀπῆγε πᾶν ὁμοῦ τὸ στράτευμα μέχρι Κορίνθου (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). ✧ **μέχρι** is here a prepositional adverb.

Meaning of ἕως: .....

- κολάζω, ἔφη, πᾶσι κακοῖς, ἕως ἂν δουλεύειν ἀναγκάσω (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).

Meaning of ἕως: .....

#### d) Indefinite *ever* temporal clauses

1/ Add the particle ἂν to these conjunctions so that they form one word:

ἐπειδὴ + ἂν = ..... ὅτε + ἂν = .....

2/ Transform these sentences to make them future indefinite:

✧ Example: ὅτε λέγεις, γελῶ > ὅταν λέγῃς, γελάσω

- ἐπεὶ τοῦτο ποιεῖς, χρήματα δέχει.

.....

- ὅτε ὁ Ἀχιλλεὺς μάχεται, οἱ πολεμῖοι φοβοῦνται.

.....

- ὅτε ὀρῶ τὸν ἀδελφόν, χαίρομαι.

.....

- ἐπεὶ ἐργάζονται, ἡσυχάζουσιν.

.....

3/ Translate these sentences into Greek:

- Whenever you want me to come, tell me.

.....

- Whenever you may be in danger, I will help you.
- .....

- Whenever you send me the book, I will read it.
- .....

- Whenever you arrive, we will have dinner.
- .....

## 5. Concessive clauses

[104]

### a) With a subordinate

Using the Greek sentence as a model, translate the English one into Greek.

- θαυμάζω δὲ τῇ ἀποκλήσει μου τῶν πυλῶν, **καὶ εἰ** μὴ ἀσμένους ὑμῖν **ἀφίγμαι** (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

I am surprised at your words, even if you do not like me.

.....

- **καὶ εἰ** τούτων ἦν πονηρότατος, κατὰ τοὺς νόμους ἔδει παρ' ἐμοῦ δίκην λαμβάνειν (Demosthenes, *In Midiam*).

Although he was not very wise, we had to give him a prize.

.....

- ἡγοῦμαι πάντας ὑμᾶς πιστεύειν, **καὶ εἰ** μηδεὶς **ἐμαρτύρησεν** (Demosthenes, *In Theocrinem*).

I think that you agree with me, although nobody has said it.

.....

- **καὶ εἰ** μὲν ἦν καλός, ἐφοβούμην ἂν σφόδρα λέγειν (Plato, *Theaetetus*).

Even if it was a good book, I would be afraid of using it.

.....

- ἐὰν τοῦτο ποιήσης ἅπαξ ἢ δις, **καὶ εἰ** πᾶν ἰσχυρά **ἐστίν**, παύσεται (Plato, *Symposium*).

If you come here, although I have no food, you will receive something else.

.....

- ταῦτα λέγω, **καὶ εἰ** τι σὺ ἄλλο **ἔχεις** εἰπεῖν (Plato, *Phaedrus*).

They say this, although I can say something else.

.....

## b) With a participle

Using the Greek sentence as a model, translate the English one into Greek.

- Ἀγεσίλαος δέ, **καίπερ** αἰσθανόμενος ταῦτα, ὅμως ἐπέμενε ταῖς σπονδαῖς (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

Themistocles, although he realised about the treason, nevertheless did not break the truce.

.....

- ὁ δέ, **καίπερ** πολλὰ τραύματα ἔχων, ὅμως οὐκ ἐπελάθετο τοῦ θείου (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

And she, in spite of having no weapons, continued fighting.

.....

- εἰ γὰρ μὴ ἐξήμαρτον, οὐδὲ σὺ ἐξελέγξεις, **καίπερ** σοφὸς ὢν (Plato, *Euthydemus*).

If I do not want to, you will not compel me, in spite of being strong.

.....

- ὃ Πρωταγόρα, τοῦτο μὲν οὐδὲν θαυμαστὸν λέγεις, ἀλλὰ εἰκός, **καίπερ** τηλικούτος ὢν καὶ οὕτως σοφός (Plato, *Protagoras*).

O Aphrodite, in spite of being so nice I will not obey you.

.....

◇

- ... τὴν τῶν τηλικούτων γυμναστικὴν, ἣν βουλοίμην ἂν ὑμῖν **καίπερ** ἄτοπον οὖσαν δηλώσαι (Plato, *Leges*).

I would like to show to you these books, although they are strange.

.....

- θάνομι' ἐκείνην **καίπερ** οὐκ οὖσαν προδούς (Euripides, *Alcestis*).

May I die if I do not do this, although it is difficult.

.....

- ἐπὶ τοῖσδε τοίνυν **καίπερ** ἠδίκημένη οὐκ ἠγγιώμην (Euripides, *Electra*).

Pericles, although he had been wronged, did not punish them.

.....

- ἐκείνῳ μὲν οὐδὲν ἀπεκρίνετο, **καίπερ** θαυμάσας τὸ φρόνημα καὶ τὴν τόλμαν αὐτοῦ (Plutarch, *Themistocles*).

He did not do anything, although he had heard about the events.

.....

## 6. Result clauses

[105]

### a) Expression of real or possible result

1/ What is the difference for a result clause between having its verb in indicative or in infinitive?

.....

2/ Read these easy sentences, paying attention to when the result clause has its verb in indicative and when in infinitive, and underline the harbinger in the main clause:

- οὕτως πονηροί εἰσι οἱ πολέμιοι **ὥστε** οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι οὐκ **ἐθελήσουσιν** ἐπὶ αὐτοὺς μάχεσθαι.
- τοσαῦτα χρήματα ἔχει **ὥστε** ὠνεῖσθαι **δύναται** πάντα ἃ ἂν βούληται.
- οὕτως φίλοι εἰσιν **ὥστε** ἀεὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις **βοηθεῖν**.
- οὕτω βραδέως τρέχει **ὥστε** ἀεὶ πάντες αὐτὸν **νικῶσιν**.

3/ Translate into Greek twice using either system (infinitive or indicative):

- He is so clever so as to answer any question.
- .....

- This teacher is so wise that all students want to be taught by him.
- .....

- She is so wise that she will become queen.
- .....

- They are so cowardly so as to fear the enemies.
- .....

4/ Using the Greek sentence as a model, translate the English one into Greek.

- τοσαύτην κραυγὴν καὶ θόρυβον περὶ τὴν σκηνὴν ἐποίησαν **ὥστε** καὶ τὸν στρατηγὸν ἐλθεῖν (Demosthenes, *Or.* 54).

They shouted so much that everybody came.

.....

- ἡ μὲν Δάφνη οὕτως ἐμίσησέ με ὥστε εἶλετο ξυλὸν γενέσθαι μᾶλλον ἢ ἐμοὶ ξυνεῖναι (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods* 15).

They hate me so much that they prefer to die rather than to collaborate with me.

.....

- οὕτω σφόδρα ἐτυφλώθη, ὥστε ἀπέμαθον καὶ ταῦτα ἃ ὄμην εἶδέναι (Plato, *Phaedo*).

He is so blind that he does not see anything.

.....

- χρὴ πᾶν ποιεῖν ὥστε ἀρετῆς καὶ φρονήσεως ἐν τῷ βίῳ μετασχεῖν (Plato, *Phaedo*).

We must try everything so that we have a share of the glory.

.....

- πολλάκις δὴ αὐτὸ πέπονθα, ὥστε μοι δοκεῖν πάνυ πονηροὺς εἶναι τινὰς ἀνθρώπους (Plato, *Cratylus*).

They have experienced this many times, so as to know that the slaves always try to flee away.

.....

- πολλοὶ γὰρ ἤδη, ὧ θανάσιε, πρὸς με οὕτω διετέθησαν, ὥστε ἀτεχνῶς δάκνειν ἔτοιμοι εἶναι (Plato, *Theaetetus*).

He is disposed towards me in such a way so as to be ready to attack me without reason.

.....

## b) A special use

Using the Greek sentence as a model, translate the English one into Greek, paying attention to the combination of ὥστε + a comparative:

- ... καταφανέστερον ἢ ὥστε λανθάνειν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

This is too evident to miss his attention.

.....

- ἔγωγε μάλα φοβοῦμαι αἰεὶ, μή τι μεῖζον ἢ ὥστε φέρειν δύνασθαι κακὸν τῇ πόλει συμβῆ (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).

They are afraid that something too bad for the army to cope with may happen.

.....

- ἦν δὲ ἀσθενέστερος ἢ ἢ ὥστε γυμνάζεσθαι, ... (Hippocrates, *De Morbis*).

If he is too slow to run, ...

.....

## 7. Conditional clauses

[106]

a/ Write in what tense (if applicable) and mood the conditional clause would be written in Greek for each of these conditional periods, and indicate whether they would have the particle ἄν or not:

- Real: .....
- Eventual: .....
- Potential: .....
- Unfulfilled in the present: .....
- Unfulfilled in the past: .....

b/ Read these sentences, all of which have the same context (somebody saying / somebody coming); pay attention to the tenses used:

- εἰ ταῦτά μοι εἶπες, ἐγὼ ἦλθον ἄν.
- εἰ ταῦτά μοι ἔλεγες, ἐγὼ ἤρχομην ἄν.
- ἐὰν ταῦτά μοι λέγῃς, ἐγὼ εἶμι.
- εἰ ταῦτά μοι εἶποις, ἐγὼ ἴοιμι ἄν.

c/ Translate these sentences into Greek according to the conditional periods that they represent:

- If we see the general, we flee.

.....

- If we ever see the general, we will flee.

.....

- If we were to see the general, we would flee.

.....

- If we saw the general now, we would flee.

.....

- If we had seen the general, we would have fled.

.....

- If we had seen the general, we would flee. (mixed type)

.....

◇

- If you sacrifice to the gods, they offer the victory to you.

.....

- If you ever sacrifice to the gods, they will offer the victory to you.
- .....

- If you were to sacrifice to the gods, they would offer the victory to you.
- .....

- If you were sacrificing to the gods, they would be offering the victory to you.
- .....

- If you had sacrificed to the gods, they would have offered the victory to you.
- .....

- If you had sacrificed to the gods, they would offer the victory to you. (mixed type)
- .....

d/ Complete these sentences with one of the given options and observe the differences between them with respect to the degree of accomplishment of the condition:

*ὄψει / ἐνίκησας ἄν / εἶ / εἶχες ἄν / ἐνίκας ἄν / λάβοις ἄν*

- εἰ χρήματα τοῖς πολεμίοις δίδως, μῶρος [you are] .....
- εἰ ὄπλα εἶχες, τοὺς πολεμίους [you would defeat] .....
- ἐὰν εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν εἰσῆς, τὸν σὸν φίλον ἐκεῖ [you will see] .....
- εἰ τὴν πόλιν διαφθείροις, πολλοὺς αἰχμαλώτους [you would capture] .....
- εἰ ὄπλα ἔσχες, τοὺς πολεμίους [you would have defeated] .....
- εἰ τοῦτο ἐποίησας τότε, νῦν χρήματα [you would have] ..... ✧ Mixed type

e/ Do the same with these sentences, a little more difficult than the previous ones, but now you must write the verb in the correct form:

*προδίδωμι / ποιέω / προτιμάω / εἰμί (thrice)*

- ἄνδρες, ἐάν μοι πεισθῆτε, τῶν ἄλλων πλέον [you will be honoured] ..... στρατιωτῶν ὑπὸ Κύρου (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- οὐ γὰρ ἔγωγε ἔτι πρεσβύτερος ἔσομαι, ἐὰν τήμερον [I hand over] ..... ἑμαυτὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

- οὐδὲν γάρ μου ὄφελος [there would be] ..... ὃ Σώκρατες, εἰ μὴ τὰ τοιαῦτα πάντα ἀκριβῶς εἰδείην (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- εἰ τὴν αὐτὴν γνώμην περὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἔχοιτε, ἦνπερ περὶ ὑμῶν αὐτῶν, οὐκ [there would be] ..... ὅστις οὐκ ἐπὶ τοῖς γεγενημένοις ἀγανακτοίη (Lysias, *De Caede Eratosthenis*).
- εἴ τινα εἶχε ταύτης μείζω τιμωρίαν, [he would have done it] ..... (Lysias, *De Caede Eratosthenis*).
- εἰ πάντας, ὃ Σώκρατες, πείθοις ἃ λέγεις ὡςπερ ἐμέ, πλείων εἰρήνην καὶ κακὰ ἐλάττω κατ' ἀνθρώπους [there would be] ..... (Plato, *Theaetetus*).



ἐθέλω / δοκέω / ἀκούω / εἰμί / βούλομαι / ἐπιχειρέω

- εἰ τοίνυν καὶ σοὶ [it seems well] ..... πορεύεσθαι, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὧδε χρὴ ποιεῖν (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- [I would want] ..... ἔφη, εἰ μὴ οἰοίμην γε ὑπὸ σοῦ ἐξαπατᾶσθαι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- εἰ μὴ τις ἄρξει πολέμου, οὐκ [will be willing] ..... οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι λύειν τὰς σπονδὰς πρὸς τοὺς συμμάχους (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- εἰ δέ τις [attempted] ..... λοιδορήσασθαι αὐτῷ, καὶ τοῦτον ἐτιμωρήσατο (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 18*).
- ἦν γάρ με, ὃ Πάρι, δικάσης εἶναι καλὴν, ἀπάσης [you will be] ..... τῆς Ἀσίας δεσπότης (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 20*).
- εἰ δ' ἐθέλεις, ὃ καλέ, καὶ τάδε μου [listen!] ..... (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 20*).

## 8. Relative clauses

[107]

### a) Introduction

1/ In these compound sentences, bracket the relative clause and underline its antecedent in the main clause. In some of the sentences the relative is not expressed in English: can you identify in which ones?

- I wonder where I have left the book that I bought yesterday.
- Who can tell me the room in which I must leave this?
- The way they took led them to the house.
- Those whom Caesar hated died in the battle.
- The runner against whom you must compete is really fast.





- I do not like the way he talks to me.
- We met with the players who had won the game.
- The reason for which he had behaved so strangely was a mystery.
- You must write all I tell you.
- I told him to buy again the book he had lost.

## 2/ Choose the correct option:

The relative and the antecedent must agree...

- |                         |                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| a) in case              | d) in case and number      |
| b) in gender and number | e) in syntactical function |
| c) in gender and case   |                            |

## b) Normal uses of the relative

1/ Complete these sentences, in which the subject of the main clause is the antecedent of the relative, with one of the options:

ἄς / ἧς / ὧν / αἷς / οὓς

- ἐκεῖ ἐστι ἡ γυνὴ ..... τὸν παῖδα διδάσκεις.
- οὗτοι νόμοι εἰσίν, ..... τὸ πλῆθος ἔγραψε (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- αἱ κάμελοι δὲ τότε ἐλήφθησαν, ..... Ἀγησίλαος εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀπήγαγεν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ναυμαχία παλαιτάτη ..... ἴσμεν γίγνεται Κορινθίων πρὸς Κερκυραίου (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἑκατὸν ἐποιήθησαν τριήρεις, ..... καὶ πρὸς Ξέρξην ἐναυμάχησαν (Plutarch, *Themistocles*).

2/ Complete these sentences, but in this case the antecedent is not the subject of the main clause:

οἷ / οὖ / οὔς (4 times)

- ἄρα πιστεύεις τοῖς λόγοις ..... λέγει ὁ ρήτωρ;
- ἀκούω τοῦ ἀνθρώπου ..... τὸν υἱὸν χθὲς εἶδες.
- ἔδοξε τῷ δήμῳ τριάκοντα ἄνδρας ἐλέσθαι, ..... τοὺς πατρίους νόμους συγγράψουσι, καθ' οὓς πολιτεύσουσι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- τυραννοῦνται ὑπὸ δέκα ἀνδρῶν, ..... Λύσανδρος κατέστησεν ἐν ἐκάστη πόλει (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

- οἱ ἄνθρωποι τούτοις μάλιστα ἐθέλουσι πείθεσθαι ..... ἂν ἠγῶνται βελτίστους εἶναι (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- οὐκ οἶσθα ὅτι, εἰ ἐκτείναις τοὺς περιπάτους, ..... ἐν πέντε ἢ ἑξ ἡμέραις περιπατεῖς, ῥαδίως ἂν Ἀθήνηθεν εἰς Ὀλυμπίαν ἀφίκοιο; (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).

3/ Combine these sentences by transforming the second one into a relative clause. The antecedent has been highlighted in bold:

✧ Example: χθὲς ἐγὼ αὐτὸν εἶδον ἐν **τῇ πόλει**. οἱ Πέρσαι τὴν πόλιν εἶλον > χθὲς ἐγὼ αὐτὸν εἶδον ἐν τῇ πόλει **ἣν** οἱ Πέρσαι εἶλον.

- τοῦτο ἐν **τῇ βίβλῳ** ἀνέγνω. σὺ βίβλον ἔγραψας.

- πέμψω **τὸν υἱὸν** πρὸς τὰς Ἀθήνας. ὁ υἱὸς ἀγαθὸς μαθητὴς ἐστίν.

- οἱ στρατιῶται νέον **στρατόπεδον** ὠκοδόμησαν. οἱ στρατιῶται ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ πολὺν χρόνον μενοῦσιν.

- χάριν ἔχομεν **τῇ γυναικί**. ἡ γυνὴ ἡμᾶς ἔσωσεν.

- δῶρον **τοῖς πολίταις** δοῦναι βούλομαι. οἱ πολῖται τὸν τύραννον ἐκ τῆς πόλεως ἐξέβαλον.

- ἐκεῖ ἔστηκε νῦν ὁ **ρήτωρ**. τῷ ῥήτορι διαλέγεσθαι βούλομαι.

4/ Now do the opposite, make a whole independent clause out of the relative clause:

✧ Example: ὁρῶ τὰς γυναῖκας **αἱ** μοι τοῦτο ἤγγειλαν > ὁρῶ τὰς γυναῖκας. **αἱ γυναῖκές** μοι τοῦτο ἤγγειλαν.

- ἐμμενῶ ταῖς σπονδαῖς **ἃς** βασιλεὺς κατέπεμψε (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- δοκεῖ μοι κατακαῦσαι τὰς ἄμαξας **ἃς** ἔχομεν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ξένους ἔχω μισθοφόρους **οἷς**, ὡς ἐγὼ οἶμαι, οὐδεμία πόλις δύναται ἂν ῥαδίως μάχεσθαι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- οἱ μὲν ἰδιῶται ἔρχονται καὶ εἰς πόλεις **ἃς** ἂν βούλωνται θεαμάτων ἕνεκα (Xenophon, *Hiero*).
- ... , ἔχων ναῦς ἐτέρας Κύρου πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν, **αἷς** ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

5/ Complete these sentences adding a relative after the preposition (the antecedent has been highlighted in bold):

- οὐδεμία γὰρ εὐρήται **παιδεία** τοιαύτη, δι' [.....] γένοιτό τις ἂν περὶ τοὺς λόγους δεινότερος (Isocrates, *Antidosis*).
- ὀρῶ τοὺς **νεανίας** σὺν [.....] οἰκεῖς.
- πολλάκις δὲ πορευόμενον στράτευμα καὶ εἰς **ὄδοῦς** ἔρχεται ἐν [.....] οὐδὲν πλέον οἱ πολλοὶ τῶν ὀλίγων δύνανται (Xenophon, *Hipparchicus*).     ✧ Talking about the Thermopylae?
- οὗτός ἐστιν Ἄλέξανδρος, εἰς [.....] ἡ οἰκουμένη νῦν ἀποβλέπει (Plutarch, *Alexander*).
- τὴν δὲ **ἄνθρωπον** οὐδεὶς εἶδεν, δι' [.....] ἐξηπάτησας τοὺς δικαστάς (Demosthenes, *In Evergum et Mnesibulum*).
- **πάντες** ἐφ' [.....] ταῦτα παρεσκευάζετ' ἐκεῖνος ἐπολεμοῦντο (Demosthenes, *De Corona*).

6/ Translate into Greek:

- I see the citizens that will save the city.

.....

- I see the citizens whom everybody honours.

.....

- I see the citizens whose exploits everybody knows.

.....

- I see the citizens to whom we must give a prize.

.....

- I see the citizens against whom you want to fight.

.....

◇

- I will give the prize to the general whom you chose.

.....

- There is the woman whose child you teach.

.....

- He arrived with the twenty prisoners that he had captured.

.....

- This is the sword with which I fought in the battle.
- .....

- The city whose leaders have fled will be captured soon.
- .....

- The house towards which you go is nice.
- .....

## b) Special uses of the relative

### 1/ Connective relative

a/ Read these sentences and replace the form of οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο with the equivalent relative in order to link back to the author's original sentence:

- πολλάκις τῶν φιλοσόφων ἀκούομεν· τούτους / ..... μέγα τιμῶμεν.
- ... Ἄριστόλοχος καὶ Ὡκυλλος· τούτους / ..... οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι, ἐπεὶ τὸ πρᾶγμα ἠγγέλθη, συλλαβόντες ἐφύλαττον. (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν ταύταις / ..... Ξενίας ὁ Ἄρκας τὰ Λύκεια ἔθυσε καὶ ἀγῶνα ἔθηκε (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ἔπειτα ὅτε Ξέρξης ἦλθεν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ τότε ἐνίκων οἱ ἡμέτεροι πρόγονοι καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν. τούτων / ..... ἔστι μὲν τεκμήρια ὅρᾶν τὰ τρόπαια (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ πεδίου εἰς κόμας· ἐν ταύταις / ..... ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

b/ Translate into Greek using, for the pronouns in italics, first a form of οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο and then a connective relative:

- There is our friend. I will give the money to *him* now.
- .....

- Yesterday I saw Socrates. I spoke with *him* for a lot of time.
- .....

- They built this city long ago. I will capture *it* easily.
- .....

## 2/ Attraction of the relative

a/ Read these sentences and rewrite the relative to make it agree with its role:

- ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ πόλει συνοικῶ τοῖς ἐταίροις οἷς [.....] σὺ χθὲς εἶδες.
- ἐκέλευσαν τὸν Τελευτίαν σὺν ταῖς δώδεκα ναυσὶν αἷς [.....] εἶχεν περιπλεῖν πρὸς τὸν Ἐκδικόν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

b/ In these two sentences the antecedent is absent. Rewrite them using a form of οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο for the antecedent and write the relative without attraction to the case of the antecedent:

- σὺν οἷς εἶχεν ἦει πρὸς τὸ τεῖχος τῶν Ἀλιαρτίων (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
.....
- ναῦς δὲ πρὸς αἷς εἶχε συμπληρώσας ἐξ Ἀβύδου τρεῖς ἄλλας κατήγεν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). ✧ ναῦς is an Acc. plural  
.....

c/ Translate these sentences using the attraction of the relative:

- Did you fight with the weapons that you have now?  
.....
- I have the book of the woman whom you saw yesterday.  
.....
- I lived five years in the city that the Spartans destroyed.  
.....

## 3/ Lack of antecedent

a/ Read these sentences and write before the relative the form of οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο for the antecedent that has been elided:

- ..... ὃν οἱ θεοὶ φιλοῦσιν, νέος ἀποθνήσκει.
- παρέσομαι πράξων ..... ὧν ὑμεῖς δεῖσθε (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἀνάγκη που ἡμᾶς ἐν προτέρῳ τινὶ χρόνῳ μεμαθηκέναι ..... ἃ νῦν ἀναμνησκόμεθα (Plato, *Phaedrus*).  
✧ Platonic argumentation about reminiscence.
- καὶ ὁ μὲν ὄχετο εἰς τὴν ἀγορὰν ἐντειλάμενος τῷ ὑπέρῳ ..... ἃ δεῖ ποιεῖν (Lucian, *Philopseudeis*).

- πρῶτον μὲν ..... οὓς πάντες ἦδεσαν ἐν τῇ δημοκρατία ἀπὸ συκοφαντίας ζῶντας συλλαμβάνοντες ὑπὸ θανάτου (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ..... οὓς ἐβούλοντο συνελάμβανον (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἔδοσαν τὴν σκυτάλην ἐκείνῳ, ἐν τῇ γεγραμμένοι ἦσαν ..... οὓς ἔδει συλληφθῆναι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ..... ὃν σὺ καλεῖς πατέρα, οὐκ ἔφη σε εἶναι αὐτοῦ (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

**b/ Translate into Greek without using antecedent:**

- Those (fem.) you saw yesterday are rich.
- .....

- The one that came yesterday is a great speaker.
- .....

- What you told me is not true.
- .....

**4/ Inclusion of the antecedent**

**a/ The relative has been highlighted; find and underline the antecedent inside the relative clause:**

- λέγει ὡς ἐγὼ **οὓς** ἡ πόλις νομίζει θεοὺς οὐ νομίζω (Xenophon, *Apologia*).
- **ἃς** παρέλαβε πόλεις διεφύλαττεν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- Χειρίσοφος μὲν αὐτοῦ ἔμενον, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι διαλαχόντες **ἃς** ἐώρων κώμας ἐπορεύοντο ἕκαστοι τοὺς αὐτῶν ἔχοντες (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).     ✧ The soldiers distribute themselves among the villages.
- βούλομαι δὲ καὶ **ἃς** βασιλεῖ πρὸς τὴν πόλιν συνθήκας ὁ Λυκοῦργος ἐποίησε διηγήσασθαι (Xenophon, *De Republica Lacedaemoniorum*).

**b/ Rewrite each sentence removing the antecedent (in bold type) out of the relative clause and placing it into the main clause in the correct case:**

- Κόνων ἐκ τῆς Ἄνδρου σὺν αἷς εἶχε **ναυσὶν** εἴκοσιν ψηφισαμένων Ἀθηναίων εἰς Σάμον ἐπλευσεν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- .....

- ἐπιμελεῖσθαι θεοὺς ἐνόμιζεν ἀνθρώπων οὐχ ὃν **τρόπον** οἱ πολλοὶ νομίζουσιν (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- .....

- ἔξεστι δὲ ὄν ἄν τις βούληται **τρόπον** τοὺς θεοὺς τιμᾶν; (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- .....

- δημοκρατικὸν μὲν οὖν ἔστιν, ἐν αἷς **πόλεσι** κρατεῖ τὸ πλῆθος (Diogenes Laertius, *Vitae Philosophorum*).
- .....

### 5/ Generic μή in a relative clause

Complete these sentences with one of the given options and try to understand why μή is used instead of οὐ:

ἄ (thrice) / οὓς (twice) / ὄν

- ... , ὥστε μὴ λυπεῖν ..... μὴ προσήκει (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- φαίνονται καὶ λέγοντες ..... μὴ ἴσασι καὶ πράττοντες (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- προσημαίνουσί σοι ..... τε χρηὴ ποιεῖν καὶ ἄ μή (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- προστάττουσιν αὐτοῖς μὴ κλέπτειν μηδὲ ἀρπάζειν, μὴ παίειν ..... μὴ δίκαιον (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- ἐγὼ δὲ οἶμαι εἰς μὲν τὸ δικαστήριον τούτους εἰσακτέον εἶναι ..... μὴ εἰσάγων διὰ κέρδος ἄν τις δοκοίη τοῦτο ποιεῖν (Xenophon, *Hipparchicus*).
- ..... μὴ δεῖ λέγειν, ἔφη, σιωπᾶς (Xenophon, *Symposium*).

### 6/ Other phenomena

Read these sentences and for each one try to find out the peculiarity about the agreement of the relative and the antecedent. Rewrite them avoiding this peculiarity:

- ἡ τε φιλία καὶ ὁ πλοῦτος ἃ δηλοῖ ὁ Σωκράτης μεγάλα ἔστιν.
- .....

- καὶ ἀνεῖλεν αὐτῷ ὁ Ἀπόλλων θεοῖς οἷς ἔδει θύειν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- .....

- ἦλθε τὸ ναυτικὸν τὸ τῶν βαρβάρων, ὃ τίς οὐκ ἄν ἰδὼν ἐφοβήθη; (Lysias, *Epitaphius*).
- .....

- τῶν νῦν ὑφ' ἡμῶν ἀποθανόντων οὐ μόνον ὑμεῖς ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡμεῖς ἔστιν οὓς πολλὰ κατεδακρυσάμεν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- .....

- τοὺς μὲν φιλίους νεκροὺς οὐ προήκαντο, τῶν δὲ πολεμίῳν ἦν οὐδὲ ὑποσπόνδους ἀπέδωσαν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- .....

- οἱ δὲ ἀνηγάγοντο ἐπ' αὐτὸν εἴκοσι ναυσίν, ἃς ὁ Δωριεὺς φυγῶν πρὸς τὴν γῆν ἀνεβίβαζε τὰς αὐτοῦ τριήρεις (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- .....

## 9. Comparative clauses

[108]

### a) First type: Comparing through correlatives

1/ Complete these sentences with the correct form of ὅσος, -α, -ον or of οἷος, -α, -ον :

- **τοσαύτα** ναῦς ἔχουσι οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ..... οἱ Πέρσαι.
- ἄρα ἡγῆ σὺ εἶναι τῷ ὄντι ἐν τοῖς θεοῖς πρὸς ἀλλήλους μάχας καὶ ἄλλα **τοιαῦτα** πολλά, ..... λέγεται τε ὑπὸ τῶν ποιητῶν; (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- ὁ μεμαθεκῶς ἕκαστα **τοιοῦτός** ἐστιν ..... ἢ ἐπιστήμη ἕκαστον ἀπεργάζεται (Plato, *Gorgias*).
- ... λέγειν πρὸς ὑμᾶς **τοιαῦτα** ..... ἂν ὑμῖν μὲν ἤδιστα ἦν ἀκούειν (Plato, *Apologia*).

2/ Translate into Greek:

- She reads as many books as you read.
- .....

- I have not lived in as many places as you have.
- .....

- He never says such things as you say.
- .....

### b) Second type: “The more..., the more...”

1/ Fill the two gaps in each sentence with ὅσῳ and τοσοῦτω and decide in what order you must write them so that the sentence makes sense:

- ..... ἂν πλείω χρόνον ἐν τυραννίδι βιῶ, ..... μᾶλλον τοιοῦτος [γίγνεται] (Plato, *Respublica*).
- ἢ προθυμία σου [εἶη ἂν] ..... μείζων ..... χαλεπωτέρα (Plato, *Crito*).
- Λάβωμέν γε μὴν αὐτὸ ..... μᾶλλον ..... σκοτεινότερόν ἐστιν (Plato, *Philebus*).
- πάντες πάντα ποιῶσιν, ..... ἂν ἀμείνους ᾶσι, ..... μᾶλλον (Plato, *Symposium*).



## 2/ Translate into Greek:

- The more he learns, the more clever he becomes.
- .....

- The more I work, the richer I become.
- .....

- The larger a house is, the more expensive it is.
- .....

## c) Third type: Comparing two events through other ways

## 1/ Read and complete these sentences with one of the given options:

*έπεστάλη / προσόδοις / ίστε / άνηγάγετο / ύπέσχετο / δοκεί / εΐρετο*

- μετά δέ την έκκλησιάν παρασκευασάμενος **ώς** έπί ναυμαχίαν [he set sail] ..... έπί την Κύζικον (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ώρχήσαντο **ώσπερ** έν ταΐς πρός τούς θεούς [processions] ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- οί τε ούν 'Αθηναίοι τούς πρόσβεις, **ώσπερ** [it had been ordered] ..... , κατείχον (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ό δέ άφικόμενος τά τε άλλα έποίησεν **ώσπερ** [he requested] ..... και την έπιστολήν διέπεμψεν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- πολεμήσομεν, **ώσπερ** έμοιγε άμεινον [it seems] ..... εΐναι (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ένδειξ έγένετο, **ώσπερ** [you know] ..... (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- Περδίκκας δέ ύστερον Στρατονίκην την έαυτοϋ άδελφήν δίδωσι Σεϋθη **ώσπερ** [he promised] ..... (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

## 2/ Read these sentences. What is the difference in sense with respect to the previous ones?

- όμοια γάρ μοι δοκοϋσι πάσχειν **ώσπερ εΐ** τις πολλά έχοι και πολλά έσθίων μηδέποτε έμπίμπλαιτο (Xenophon, *Symposium*).
- **ώσπερ εΐ** θησαυρῶ τις έντύχοι, πλουσιώτερος μέν αν εΐη (Xenophon, *Agésilas*).
- **ώσπερ εΐ** τις την γαμετήν άπολιπόν, ... και παιδοποιούμενος έξ έτέρας μη συγγράφοιτο γάμον (Plutarch, *De Stoicorum Repugnantis*).

## 3/ Translate into Greek:

- He works as well as any other worker.
- .....

- They did everything as you ordered.
- .....

- He fights as if he were Achilles.
- .....

- He started talking as if he were the leader of the city (2 ways: participle and optative).
- .....

## d) Fourth type: Comparing through αὐτός

1/ Read these sentences and complete them with one of the given options (use each of them twice) so that it matches the translation, and observe the different ways of introducing the second element of the comparison:

καί / ὅπερ / σοί

- τὸ δὲ αὐτὸ [as] ..... ἐν τῇ Περγᾶμω πεπόνθασιν οἱ τῷ Τηλέφῳ θύοντες (Pausanias, *Graeciae Descriptio*).
- τοῦτο δ' ἂν εἶη τὸ αὐτὸ [that] ..... εἶρηκεν Ἐρατοσθένης (Strabo, *Geographica*).
- οἱ ἀμαθέστατοι τῶν ἰατρῶν τὸ αὐτὸ [as you] ..... ποιοῦσιν (Lucian, *Adversus Indoctum*).
- τὸ δὲ αὐτὸ [as] ..... ἐν ταῖς ὑπὲρ Μαϊάνδρου πόλεσι θεοὶ ποιοῦσιν οἱ καταχθόνιοι (Pausanias, *Graeciae Descriptio*).
- εἰ γὰρ τὸ αὐτό [as you] ..... ποιήσειαν ἅπαντες, ... (Origenes, *Contra Celsum*).
- σὲ ἐρωτῶ τὸ αὐτὸ [that] ..... καὶ τοῦτον (Plato, *Amatores*).

## 2/ Translate into Greek using the required methods:

- She has the same teacher as you. [use a dative]
- .....

- I use the same sword as the general. [use καί]
- .....

- We saw the same buildings as you. [use a relative]
- .....

## 10. Fear clauses

[109]

a/ Choose the correct option. We use the construction μή + subj. when we talk...

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a/ about a fear concerning the past.   | b/ about a fear concerning the present. |
| c/ about a fear concerning the future. | d/ in all the three former cases.       |

b/ Read these sentences.

- ἐμοῦ γὰρ πολλοὶ κατήγοροι γεγόνασι, οὐς ἐγὼ μᾶλλον φοβοῦμαι ἢ τοὺς ἀμφὶ ἼΑνουτον (Plato, *Apologia*).
- τί δέ; τοὺς ταύτη χρωμένους τῇ τέχνῃ τίνας φήσομεν; ἐγὼ μὲν γὰρ φοβοῦμαι σοφιστὰς φάναί (Plato, *Sophista*).
- τί δ' αὖ φοβῆ, ὦ Σώκρατες; (Plato, *Hippias Maior*).
- μάλιστα δ' Ἀντίπατρον ἐφοβεῖτο καὶ τοὺς παῖδας (Plutarch, *Alexander*).
- ταῦτ' ἀκούσαντες οἱ Ῥωμαῖοι τὸν τε πόλεμον ἐφοβοῦντο (Plutarch, *Romulus*).
- δέδια δ' εἰπεῖν ὅτι ... (Plutarch, *Quaestiones Convivales*).

▷ Why don't we find in any of the former sentences the usual construction of μή + subj./opt. of fear clauses?

.....

c/ Write the given verb in the subjunctive as requested:

- φοβοῦμαι μέντοι μή τούτου πᾶν τούναντίον [.....] (Plato, *Cratylus*). [ἔστί]
- φοβοῦμαι οὖν μή οὔτε τὰ λεγόμενα [.....] (Plato, *Theaetetus*). [συνίεμεν]
- φοβοῦμαι δὲ μή τινος ἡδονὰς ἡδοναῖς [.....] ἐναντίας (Plato, *Philebus*). [εὐρίσκομεν, in aorist]
- τοῦτο γὰρ διὴ μάλιστα φοβοῦμαι, μή δημεραστῆς ἡμῖν γενόμενος [.....] (Plato, *Alcibiades*).  
[διαφθεῖρει, 2<sup>nd</sup> singular, in passive aorist]
- ὁ Τάνταλος ἐν ἼΑιδου λέγεται τὸν ἀεὶ χρόνον διατρίβειν φοβούμενος μή δις [.....] (Xenophon, *Oeconomicus*).  
[ἀποθνήσκει, in aorist]

d/ Read these sentences in which the fear clause is introduced by a verb of fear other than φοβέομαι :

- δέδοικα δ' αὐτὴν μή τι βουλεύσῃ νέον (Euripides, *Medea*).
- δέδοικα μή τισιν δόξω περὶ τούτου μᾶλλον σπουδάζειν ἢ περὶ ... (Isocrates, *Helenaie Encomium*).
- δέδοικα μὴ μάτην τὰ τοιαῦτα λέγωμεν (Isocrates, *De Pace*).

- οὐ δέδια τοῦ θεοῦ μεστός γενόμενος μὴ ἀθαρσέστερον ἀγωνίσωμαι (Plutarch, *Septem Sapientium Convivium*).
- βουλοίμην ἄν, ὃ Σώκρατες, ἀλλ' ὄρρωδῶ μὴ τὸναντίον γένηται (Plato, *Epistulae*).

e/ Read these sentences and change the subjunctives into oblique optative:

- ἐφοβεῖτο μὴ ἀπολίπωσιν / ..... αὐτόν (Plutarch, *Antonius*).
- οὐκ ἐφοβεῖτο μὴ οὐ δύνηται / ..... φέρειν αὐτά (Dio Chrysostomus, *Orationes*).
- τοὺς συμμάχους ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ ἀποστῶσιν / ..... (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- οἱ μὲν θεώμενοι ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ τι πάθῃ / ..... (Xenophon, *Symposium*).
- φοβηθεῖσα μὴ ὁ νεανίσκος ἐξαγορεύσῃ / ..... τὸ αἴσχος αὐτῆς, ἐπαφῆκεν αὐτῷ τοὺς κύνας  
(Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 16*)     ✧ Artemis, very ugly according to Lucian, has just been seen naked by Acteon.

f/ Write the given verb in the requested optative form:

- ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ ποτε βασιλεὺς αὐτὸς ποιησάμενος στρατείαν ..... τῆς διὰ τὸν ποταμὸν δυσχωρίας  
(Isocrates, *Philippus*). [κρατέω, 3<sup>rd</sup> sing. aorist]
- ἐφοβούμην μὴ τι ..... (Plato, *Protagoras*). [λέγω, 3<sup>rd</sup> sing. present]
- ἐφοβοῦντο δὴ μὴ σύγκλητος ἐκκλησία ..... ἐξαίφνης (Demosthenes, *De Falsa Legatione*).  
[γίγνομαι, 3<sup>rd</sup> sing. aorist]
- τὰ χρήματα τῷ δήμῳ ἔδωκεν, φοβούμενος μὴ διὰ τὴν οὐσίαν ..... (Andocides, *In Alcibiadem*).  
[ἀπόλλυμαι, 3<sup>rd</sup> sing. aorist]

g/ Translate into Greek:

- I'm afraid that the students have not done the homework.

.....

- I'm afraid that the students will not do the homework.

.....

- He was afraid that they had not arrived on time.

.....

- He was afraid that they would not arrive on time. [use oblique optative]

.....

- Why are you afraid to fight?
- .....

## 11. Indefinite clauses

[110]

a/ Complete these sentences with an expression from the below options:

ὡς ἂν δύνωμαι / ὅταν οἴωνται / μέχρι ἂν ἀφίκωνται / ὅ τι βούλεται / ὅστις ἂν πεφύκη / ἐπειδὴν δέη

- Χειρίσοφος ἐπιτρέπει αὐτῷ ποιεῖν [whatever he wants] ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ταῦτα πάντα, [whenever they think] ..... ναυμαγήσειν ἄνθρωποι, καὶ ἀσκεῖται καὶ μελετᾶται (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- [whoever is] ..... βροτῶν κακός, ζημιούσιν οἱ θεοί (Euripides, *Ion*).
- ἐλέσθαι δὲ ἐκέλευον ἄρχοντας, [until may arrive] ..... οἱ ἡρημένοι ἀντ' ἐκείνων (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- [whenever it may be necessary] ..... κοιμᾶσθαι, μόνοι καθευδήσομεν (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 15*). ✧ Apollo and Hermes complain about their lack of success with women.
- πειράσομαι ὑμᾶς ἐξ ἀρχῆς [however I may be able] ..... δι' ἐλαχίστων διδάξαι (Lysias, *De Caede Eratosthenis*). ✧ Let's see if I can make it short.

▷ Can you spot the only indefinite sentence, among the former ones, that does not make use of the subjunctive?

.....

b/ Read these sentences and change them into the secondary sequence, which means writing the main clause in aorist (or in imperfect if you consider it to be a repeated action) and writing the indefinite clause in the optative:

- ἐγὼ ὅταν ὑμῶν ἄρχω, εὐχομαί τε οὐδὲν ἦττον ζῆν ὑμᾶς ἢ καὶ ἐμαυτόν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- .....

- πῶς εὖνοιαν ἔχειν σοὶ καὶ τοῖς σοῖς διδάσκεις ὄντινα ἂν βούλη; (Xenophon, *Oeconomicus*).
- .....

- νομίζω γὰρ ὅστις ἐν πολέμῳ ὦν στασιάζει πρὸς ἄρχοντα, τοῦτον πρὸς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σωτηρίαν στασιάζειν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- .....

- **ὅταν** ὑμεῖς πλήρη **ἔχητε** τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, τότε καὶ ἐμὲ ὄψεσθε ἀφθονώτερον διαιτώμενον (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- .....

- ἐγὼ πειράσομαι **ὅ τι ἂν δόνωμαι** ὑμᾶς ἀγαθὸν ποιεῖν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- .....

▷ Can you spot the only indefinite sentence, among the former ones, that does not make use of the subjunctive?

.....

c/ Using the Greek sentence as a model, translate the English one into Greek:

- δέδοικα τοῦτον, **ὅστις ἂν ᾖ** (Demosthenes, *Philippica 4*).

I fear those soldiers, whoever they are.

.....

- τούτῳ μόνῳ Ἀθηναίων ἐξαιρετόν ἐστι καὶ ποιεῖν καὶ λέγειν παρὰ τοὺς νόμους **ὅ τι ἂν βούληται** (Lysias, *In Theomnestum*).

They may do whatever they want.

.....

- νόμον ἔθεντο φεύγειν **ὅστις ἂν ἀποκτείνῃ** πελαργόν [= stork] (Plutarch, *De Iside et Osiride*).

I will send out of the country whoever kills a citizen.

.....

- ἐκέλευον δὲ καὶ τὸν Θηραμένην λαβεῖν **ὄντινα βούλοιο** (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

They allowed him to take whatever he wanted.

.....

- ἐξὸν ἤδη ποιεῖν αὐτοῖς **ὅ τι βούλουντο**, πολλοὺς μὲν ἔχθρας ἔνεκα ἀπέκτεινον, πολλοὺς δὲ χρημάτων (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

As they could buy whatever they wanted, they bought a lot of books.

.....

## 12. Proviso clauses

[111]

a/ Write the verb given in brackets in the future tense (keeping it in the same person):

- φέρε δὴ ὅπως ..... ταῦτα (Plato, *Gorgias*). [μεμνήμεθα]
- ἀλλ' ὅπως μή μοι ..... ἡ διδάσκαλος (Plato, *Menexenus*). [χαλεπαίνει]
- ὅπως μοι μή ..... ὅτι ... (Plato, *Respublica*). [λέγεις]
- ἀλλ' ὅπως μου μή ..... (Plato, *Menexenus*). [κατείρεις]
- ἀλλ' ὅπως μή οὐχ οἷός τ' ..... (Plato, *Respublica*). [εἰμί]
- δοκεῖ μοι χρῆναι τοῦτο σκοπεῖν, ὅπως ἡ φιλία ὅτι πλεῖστον χρόνον ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
[συμμένει]

▷ Except the very last one, these former sentences seem to be the equivalent of ...

a/ an order      b/ a result      c/ a condition      d/ a temporal circumstance

b/ Complete these sentences choosing from the given options; at the end of each sentence there is some clue:

*συνείσεται / ἔσονται / ἀντιποιήσεται / ἀγωνιούμεθα / ἐρεῖς*

- ἐν ὀπόσαις τε χάραις ἐνοικεῖ ἐπιμελεῖται τούτων ὅπως κῆποι τε ..... , οἱ παράδεισοι καλούμενοι (Xenophon, *Oeconomicus*).      ✧ Somebody really liked gardens.
- ἡμῶν δ' οὐδεὶς οὐδὲν ἀντεπιμελεῖται ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).  
✧ About competition.
- ὃ ἄνδρες, οὕτω χρῆ ποιεῖν ὅπως ἕκαστός τις ἑαυτῷ ..... τῆς νίκης αἰτιώτατος ὢν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
✧ About being conscious.
- ὅπως μοι, ὦ ἄνθρωπε, μή ..... ὅτι ἔστιν τὰ δώδεκα δις ἕξ (Plato, *Respublica*).  
✧ Don't try to teach me maths.
- εἰπέ μοι, ἔφη, ὦ Ἄριστιππε, εἰ δέοι σε παιδεύειν παραλαβόντα δύο τῶν νέων, τὸν μὲν, ὅπως ἰκανὸς ἔσται ἄρχειν, τὸν δ', ὅπως μηδ' ..... ἀρχῆς, πῶς ἂν ἐκάτερον παιδεύοις; (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).  
✧ Everybody tries to achieve power.

## c/ Read these sentences:

- τὸν στρατηγὸν ἐπιμελεῖσθαι δεῖ, **ὅπως** σῶοί τε οἱ στρατιῶται **ἔσονται** καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια **ἔξουσι** (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- οὐ μῶρος οἶει εἶναι εἰ μὴ σκοπεῖς **ὅπως** μὴ ιδιώτης [here, unskilled] **ἔσει** τούτου τοῦ ἔργου; (Xenophon, *Oeconomicus*).  
✧ Looking like a beginner is never convenient.
- ἔτη μὲν οὐπω πεντεκαίδεκα γεγονυῖα ἦλθε πρὸς ἐμέ, τὸν δ' ἔμπροσθεν χρόνον ἔζη ὑπὸ πολλῆς ἐπιμελείας **ὅπως** ὡς ἐλάχιστα μὲν **ὄψοιτο**, ἐλάχιστα δ' **ἀκούσοιτο**, ἐλάχιστα δ' **ἔροιτο** (Xenophon, *Oeconomicus*).
- πολλοὶ αὐτῶν εἰσὶν οἱ οὐκ ἐθέλουσιν ἐπιμελεῖσθαι **ὅπως** αὐτοῖς **ἔσται** ταῦτα ἃ βούλονται (Xenophon, *Oeconomicus*).
- σκεπτόν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι **ὅπως** ἀσφαλέστατα **μενοῦμεν**, εἴ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, **ὅπως** ἀσφαλέστατα **ἄπιμεν**, καὶ **ὅπως** τὰ ἐπιτήδεια **ἔξομεν** (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

## d/ Translate into Greek:

- Take care that you bring everything you need.

.....

- I always see to it that my students learn everything.

.....

- You must make an effort so that you are well prepared.

.....

- Mind they don't send you to war!

.....



## c) Infinitive clauses

### 1. Which verbs use the infinitive and how?

[112]

#### a) Use of the infinitive

1/ How would you define an infinitive?

- a/ a noun    b/ an adjective    c/ an adverb    d/ none of these

2/ Which of these English -ing forms would be translated by an infinitive in Greek? Underline them:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I see them writing.</li> <li>- Reading is good for your education.</li> <li>- How did you achieve to pass the subject?<br/>Studying a lot!</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Please, stop disturbing!</li> <li>- I prefer running than sleeping.</li> <li>- They are now in the office, working<br/>on that project.</li> </ul> |
|--|---|

#### b) Normal usage

1/ Identify the infinitive and its role, marking clearly what words (if any) depend on it and then translate the sentence:

✧ Example:    βούλομαι βιβλον ἀναγιγνώσκειν.

Infinitive: ἀναγιγνώσκειν.    Role: direct object (of βούλομαι)

Words that depend on it: βιβλον

Translation: I want to read a book.

- διὰ τί βούλεσθε αὐτὸν ἰδεῖν;

Infinitive: .....    Role: .....

Words that depend on it: .....

Translation: .....

- ἡ βουλή ἐβουλεύσατο ἄγαλμα ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ θεῖναι.

Infinitive: .....    Role: .....

Words that depend on it: .....

Translation: .....

- βούλομαι σε δεῦρο εὐθύς ἐλθεῖν.

Infinitive: ..... Role: .....

Words that depend on it: .....

Translation: .....

- ἐκέλευσα τοὺς στρατιώτας τοῖς πολεμίοις μάχεσθαι.

Infinitive: ..... Role: .....

Words that depend on it: .....

Translation: .....

- βία μὲν οὐκ ἐβούλετο ἐλεῖν [τὴν πόλιν] (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

Infinitive: ..... Role: .....

Words that depend on it: .....

Translation: .....

- ὁ Ἑριπίδας ἐπιθυμῶν λαμπρὸν τι ἐργάσασθαι, αἰτεῖ τὸν Ἀγησίλαον ὀπλίτας (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

Infinitive: ..... Role: .....

Words that depend on it: .....

Translation: .....

## 2/ Decide whether μή or οὐ must be used as a negative for the infinitive and why:

- ὁ Σωκράτης ἐκέλευσε τοὺς μαθητὰς ..... δακρῦειν.

Because .....

- οἶομαι τοὺς πολίτας ..... εἰδέναι τί δεῖ ποιεῖν,

Because .....

- οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἐνόμιζον τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους ..... εἰσβαλεῖν.

Because .....

- οἱ φύλακες ἐβούλοντο τοὺς νεανίας ..... ἀπελθεῖν.

Because .....

### c) A double choice

Write the words in italics in another case that would also be acceptable:

- Ἐὰρ' οὖν μοι, ὦ θαυμάσιε Εὐθύφρων, κράτιστόν ἐστι *μαθητῆ σῶ* / ..... γενέσθαι (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς ἐλθοῦσιν ὡς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους *συμμάχους* / ..... γενέσθαι (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- *ἐμοὶ* / ..... μέν, ὦ Μιλήσιοι, ἀνάγκη τοῖς οἴκοι ἄρχουσι πείθεσθαι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

## 2. What tense of infinitive?

[113]

### a) With verbs of desire

1/ Change the infinitive from present to aorist or vice-versa and decide if the sense changes or not:

- τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἐβούλετο ἀποστήσαι / ..... αὐτούς (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἐβούλετο γὰρ ὁ Ἀλκιβιάδης φθάσαι / ..... τὰς τε ἀπὸ τῆς Πελοποννήσου ναῦς (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- εἴ τι ὑγιᾶς διανοοῦνται, λέγειν / ..... ἐκέλευσεν ἅπασιν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἐκεῖνος κελεύει αὐτοὺς πέμψαι / ..... σφῶν αὐτῶν ἄνδρας (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- πειράσομαι σαφέστερον φράσαι / ..... (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- θαυμάζω ὅπως ἠθέλησέ σοι ὁ τοῦ δεσμοτηρίου φύλαξ ὑπακοῦσαι / ..... (Plato, *Apologia*).
- βούλονται αὐτὸν πέμψαι / ..... παρὰ Λύσανδρον (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

2/ Translate into Greek:

- Do you (sing.) want to eat now?

.....

- We decided to go to Athens at once.

.....

- I want you to prepare the weapons for me.

.....

- They want him to see the Acropolis.

.....

- You (sing.) prevented them from writing.

.....

## b) With verbs of indirect statement

1/ Change the second given element into an infinitive clause so that it combines with the first one:

✧ Example: ὁ διδάσκαλος νομίζει ... / ὁ μαθητὴς τοῦτο ἐποίησεν > ὁ διδάσκαλος νομίζει τὸν μαθητὴν τοῦτο ποιῆσαι.

- οἱ πολῖται νομίζουσιν... / ὁ ἄρχων πολεμεῖν βούλεται.

.....

- οἱ πολέμιοι ἐνόμιζον ... / οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι εἰσβαλοῦσιν.

.....

- ὁ υἱὸς οἶεται ... / ἡ μήτηρ οὐ διὰ πολλοῦ εἰς τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν ἀφίξεται.

.....

- ὁ Ἀχιλλεὺς ἠγεῖτο ... / ὁ Ἔκτωρ ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἀποθανεῖται.

.....

- οἱ φύλακες φήθησαν ... / οἱ αἰχμαλώτοι ἀποφυγεῖν πειράσσονται.

.....

2/ Change the infinitive from present to aorist or vice-versa and observe the change in meaning:

- οἶομαι τούτους τοὺς παῖδας σοφοὺς εἶναι / .....
- ἄρα νομίζεις με τοῦτο εἰπεῖν / .....
- ἐνόμιζον δὲ οὐδεμίαν εἶναι / ..... σωτηρίαν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἐγὼ μὲν γὰρ οἶμαι πάσας τὰς πόλεις διὰ τοῦτο τοὺς νόμους τίθεσθαι / .....  
(Lysias, *De Caede Eratosthenis*).

3/ Let's do the process backwards: for each one of the previous sentences take the indirect statement (the infinitive clause) and put it into direct form:

✧ Example: νομίζω τὸν Σωκράτη βίβλον γράφειν / γράψαι.

Infinitive clause: τὸν Σωκράτη βίβλον γράφειν / γράψαι

Direct statement: ὁ Σωκράτης βίβλον γράφει / ἔγραψεν.

Previous sentence: .....

Infinitive clause: .....

Direct statement: .....

Previous sentence: .....

Infinitive clause: .....

Direct statement: .....

Previous sentence: .....

Infinitive clause: .....

Direct statement: .....

Previous sentence: .....

Infinitive clause: .....

Direct statement: .....

4/ Fill the blanks with an infinitive of the given verb, writing it in the correct tense so that it corresponds to the English sense:

- καὶ ταῦτα οἶει τὸν Ἡφαιστον [knows] ..... ; (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods* 15). [οἶδα]
- οὕτω φασὶ [they will do] ..... (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods* 20) [ποιέω]
- ἀκούσαντες δὲ οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται [they would deliberate] ..... ἔφασαν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [βουλευόμαι]
- τὸν δὲ πόλεμον, εἴ τις ὕμῶν μὴ οἶεται [there will be] ....., γνώμης ἀμαρτάνει (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [εἰμί]
- ἔλεγεν ὅτι [τοῦτο] ἄποπον δοκοίη ἑαυτῷ γε [to be] ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [εἰμί]

5/ Translate into Greek paying attention to the chosen tense of the infinitive:

- Why do you (plural) think that he is in the city?

.....

- I thought that he was in Athens.

.....

- She considers that Pericles was a great general.

.....

- They think that I have written a book.

.....

- She thinks that they have already arrived.

.....

### c) Three special cases

1/ Complete these sentences by writing the future infinitive of the given verb:

- μέλλομεν εἰς τὴν νῆσον ..... . [διαβαίνω]
- ὑπισχνοῦμεν τὸ ξίφος σοι ..... . [παρέχω]
- ἐλπίζω αὐριον τὸ ἄθλον ..... . [φέρομαι]

2/ Complete these sentences by translating the English expression with only one Greek word:

- ὁ δ' ὑπέσχετο ἀνδρὶ ἐκάστω [to give] ..... πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ἐλπίζω μὲν οὖν [that he] ..... δώσειν δίκην (Lysias, *In Andocidem*).
- [I promise] ..... δὴ σοι τὴν Ἑλένην παραδώσειν (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods* 20).
- ὑπισχνεῖτο Ἄναξίβιος, εἰ ἀφίκοιντο ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου, μισθοφορὰν αὐτοῖς [that there would be] ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- τί δ' ἂν ἔπραξαν μέλλοντες μεγάλα μὲν ἐμὲ [to harm] ..... ; (Lysias, *Pro Milite*).
- ὁ δὲ Ἄρης τὰ μὲν πρῶτα ἥλιπυε [to break] ..... τὰ δεσμά (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods* 17).

3/ Translate into Greek:

- They hope to be fortunate men.
- .....

- Do you promise to tell me the truth?
- .....

- She is about to write a book.
- .....

- She was about to arrive.
- .....

### 3. Where there is no change of subject

[114]

a/ Read these sentences and observe that the infinitive does not have any subject of its own:

- ἐδόκει τίς μοι γυνὴ προσελθοῦσα **καλέσαι** με καὶ εἰπεῖν· " ὦ Σώκρατες, ... " (Plato, *Crito*).
- πολλοῖς δόξω **ἀμελῆσαι** (Plato, *Crito*).

- ὃ Σώκρατες, οὐ μοι δοκῶ τάναντία **γιγνώσκειν** οἷς εἰρηκας περὶ τοῦ δικαίου (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- πάνυ μοι δοκῶ τὰ λεγόμενα ὑπὸ σοῦ **ἀκηκοέναι** (Xenophon, *Oeconomicus*).
- ταῦτα δοκῶ μοι **ἀγνοεῖν** (Xenophon, *Hiero*).

b/ In these sentences there are predicative objects that depend on the infinitive, not on the main verb. Find them:

- νομίζουσι θεῖοι εἶναι.
- ὁ αὐτὸς δοκεῖ ἀνὴρ εἶναι καὶ ἀγαθὸς καὶ φίλος (Aristoteles, *Ethica Eudemia*).
- φιλοχρηματώτερός τισι δοκῶ εἶναι (Xenophon, *Symposium*).

c/ Add the correct form of αὐτός, -ή, -όν in agreement with the subject of the main verb:

- οὐκ ἔφη ..... στρατηγεῖν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ..... ἀναγκασθῆσθαι ἔφασαν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

d/ Translate into Greek:

- We think that we are valiant.

.....

- I think I am fast.

.....

- He thinks that he (he himself) is a good orator.

.....

- He thinks that he (somebody else) is a good orator.

.....

- The students said that they (the students themselves) were the wisest citizens.

.....

- The students said that they (somebody else) were the wisest citizens.

.....

#### 4. Infinitive with article

[115]

a/ Write the given verb in the infinitive and underline the article that goes with it:

- τὸ ..... ἀγαθὸν ἐστίν. [τολμάω]
- τὸ τοῖς φίλοις ..... ἀγαθὸν ἐστίν. [πιστεύω]

- τῷ πρὸς τοὺς θεοὺς ..... κακὸς πολιτὴς γενήσεται. [ἀσεβέω]
- ὁ τοῦ πρὸς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους ..... φόβος τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους προχωρεῖν κωλύει. [πολεμέω]
- ξυνήθης ἤδη μοί ἐστιν, ὃ Σώκρατες, διὰ τὸ πολλάκις δεῦρο ..... (Plato, *Crito*). [φοιτάω]  
 ✧ *Crito* explains why the porter lets him in.
- ὁρῶν αὐτοὺς ἀθυμούντας ἐβούλετο ὑπόμνησιν ποιήσασθαι τοῦ ..... (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [θαρσέω]

b/ Translate into Greek using an infinitive with an article for the expressions in italics:

- *Laughing* is good, *crying* is bad.
- .....

- It's good *to want* money.
- .....

- Through *fighting* you will not defeat the Greeks.
- .....

- The desire *of harming* the enemies is bad. ✧ Double parenthetical construction
- .....

c/ Complete each sentence with one of the options below:

τῷ ποιεῖν / διὰ τὸ μὴ πυνθάνεσθαι / τοῦ μὴ λύειν ἔνεκα / διὰ τὸ μισεῖν / ἐν τῷ διανοεῖσθαι / τοῦ ἀρέσκειν ἔνεκα

- ... , οὐκ ἀργυρίου ἔνεκα οὐδὲ [because of hating] ..... Λακεδαιμονίους (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι οὐκ ἐβοήθουν [because they did not get to know] ..... ταῦτα (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- προεῖπον δὲ ταῦτα [for the sake of not breaking] ..... τὰς σπονδὰς (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- καὶ ἐγώ, ἔφη, καὶ σὺ πολλὰ δὴ [for the sake of pleasing] ..... τῇ πόλει καὶ εἵπομεν καὶ ἐπράξαμεν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- οἱ δ' ἐμποδῶν νομίζοντες αὐτὸν εἶναι [for doing] ..... ὅ τι βούλοιντο, ἐπιβουλεύουσιν αὐτῷ (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἐπεὶ καὶ ἐν ᾧ δοκεῖ ἐλάχιστη σώματος χρεία εἶναι, [in the fact of thinking] ..... , τίς οὐκ οἶδεν ὅτι καὶ ἐν τούτῳ πολλοὶ μεγάλα σφάλονται διὰ τὸ μὴ ὑγιαίνειν τὸ σῶμα; (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).



## 5. Infinitive after verbs of negative idea

[116]

### a) Normal construction

1/ Identify the negative word that reinforces the negative sense of the verb in bold:

- τῆ μὲν φωνῇ **ἤρνεϊτο** μηδὲν εἰδέναι, τῆ δὲ χειρὶ αὐτὸν τὸν τόπον ὑπεδείκνυεν (Aesopus, *Fabulae*).
- **ἀπαγορεύω** μὴ ποιεῖν ἐκκλησίαν (Aristophanes, *Acharnenses*).
- τούτους **ἀπαγορεύει** μὴ δημηγορεῖν (Aeschines, *In Timarchum*).
- **ἤρνεϊτο** μηδὲν αὐτῆς [τῆς ἀρχῆς] δεῖσθαι (Dio Cassius, *Historiae Romanae*).
- ὃ Πέρσαι, βασιλεὺς Δαρεῖος **ἀπαγορεύει** ὑμῖν μὴ δορυφορεῖν Ὀροίτην (Herodotus, *Historiae*).

2/ For each sentence, write the infinitive of the given verb:

- Τελαμῶν δὲ **ἤρνεϊτο** μὴ ..... Φώκῳ θάνατον (Pausanias, *Graeciae Descriptio*). [βουλεύω]
- οἱ νόμοι διαρρήδην **ἀπαγορεύουσιν** μὴ ..... λέγειν τοῖς τοιούτοις (Demosthenes, *In Aristogitonem 2*). [ἔξεστι]
- ὁ δὲ νόμος **ἀπαγορεύει** μηδὲν τούτων ..... (Demosthenes, *Contra Macartatum*). [ποιέω]
- τὰ δ' ἐξέφερον σκεύη, **ἀπαγορευούσης** τῆς γυναικὸς μὴ ..... αὐτοῖς (Demosthenes, *In Evergum et Mnesibulum*). [ἄπτομαι]

### b) Repetition of the negative

1/ For each of the previous sentences, make the main verb negative and repeat the negative adverb οὐ before the infinitive:

✧ Example: εἶργω σε μὴ τοῦτο ποιεῖν > οὐκ εἶργω σε μὴ οὐ τοῦτο ποιεῖν.

- Τελαμῶν δὲ .....
- οἱ νόμοι διαρρήδην .....
- ὁ δὲ νόμος .....
- τὰ δ' ἐξέφερον σκεύη, .....

2/ Remove the negation from the main verb and make any other necessary change in the infinitive clause:

- τὰς τε πρὸς ἑτέρους φιλονεικίας καὶ μάχας οὐκ ἀρνοῦμαι μὴ οὐχὶ συμβεβηκέναι μοι (Aeschines, *In Timarchum*).
- .....

## 6. Infinitive absolute

[117]

a/ Complete each sentence by choosing one of the options:

τὸ νῦν εἶναι / ὡς ἔπος εἰπεῖν / ἐκὼν εἶναι / ὡς φαίνεσθαι / τὸ νῦν εἶναι / ὡς ἔπος εἰπεῖν / ὀλίγου δεῖν

- [As it seems] ..... , ὁ Περικλῆς χθὲς ἀφίκετο, ἡ γὰρ πόλις τέτρηχεν.
- δεῖ μηδὲν ποιεῖν [for the present moment] .....
- [So to speak] ..... ὁ Περικλῆς πάλιν τῷ πολέμῳ ψηφίζεσθαι παραινέσει, εἰ καὶ οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἄρτι ἡμᾶς [almost] ..... ἐνίκησαν.
- [As far as I am concerned] ..... , τοῦτο οὐ ποιήσω.
- καίτοι ἀληθές γε [so to speak] ..... οὐδὲν εἰρήκασιν (Plato, *Apologia*).
- παῦσαι, ἔφη, [for the present moment] ..... μεμφόμενός μοι (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).

b/ Now only those expressions that have not been used previously are offered:

ὡς εἰκάσαι / ὀλίγου δεῖν / ὡς μὲν συνελόντι εἰπεῖν / ὡς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν

- μία γὰρ [almost] ..... ἅπασιν ὄριστο ζημία τοῖς ἀμαρτάνουσι θάνατος (Plutarch, *Solon*).
- γράμματα ἐπέδωκεν [as it seems] ..... τῆς Ἀλεξάνδρου χειρός (Flavius Josephus, *Antiquitates Iudaicae*).
- ἀλλ', ὦ μακάριοι, αὐτὸ μὲν τί ποτ' ἐστὶ τάγαθὸν ἐάσωμεν [for the present moment] ..... (Plato, *Respublica*). ✧ In the sense of "we'll deal with it later."
- ἄνευ γὰρ ἀρχόντων οὐδὲν ἂν οὔτε καλὸν οὔτε ἀγαθὸν γένοιτο [in short] ..... οὐδαμοῦ (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- οἱ μὲν οὖν Πριηνεῖς, [as it seems to me] ..... , ὀρθῶς ἴσταντο (Polybius, *Historiae*).  
✧ Translate ἴσταμαι by "to act")

c/ Complete these sentences with expressions from the previous exercises:

- πέπεισμαι ἐγὼ [as far as I am concerned] ..... μηδένα ἀδικεῖν ἀνθρώπων (Plato, *Apologia Socratis*).
- [In short] ..... οὐδὲν ἀξιόλογον ἄνευ πυρὸς ἀνθρώποι τῶν πρὸς τὸν βίον χρησίμων κατασκευάζονται (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- πάντας [almost] ..... ἡλευθέρωσαν Λατίνους (Plutarch, *Comparatio Thesei et Romuli*).

- μετὰ δὲ Σόλωνα οἰχόμενον ἔλαβε ἐκ θεοῦ νέμεσις μεγάλη Κροῖσον, [as it seems] ..... , ὅτι ἐνόμισε ἑαυτὸν εἶναι ἀνθρώπων ἀπάντων ὀλβιώτατον (Herodotus, *Historiae*).
- καὶ οὔτε αὐτὸς [as far as I am concerned] ..... πόρρω ἐθελήσαιμι ἂν πιεῖν οὔτε ἄλλω συμβουλευέσαιμι (Plato, *Symposium*).

## 7. (unapplied in this book)

## 8. Infinitive with ἄν

[118]

### a) Its normal use

1/ Replace the English expressions with one of the given options:

ἂν ἀποπλεῖν / ἂν δικάσαι / ἂν διαπράττεσθαι / ἂν θαυμάζειν / ἂν δύνασθαι

- ἔφασαν οὐκ [would be surprised] ..... εἰ καὶ πεμφθείη τις Λακεδαιμονίων (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- οἶμαι σε ταῦτα διαπραξάμενον [would sail away] ..... , εἰ βούλοιο (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- δοκῶ δέ μοι καλῶς [I would have judged] ..... πάσαις ἀποδοῦς τὸ μῆλον (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 20*).
- ἠγήσαντο οὖν, εἰ ἓνα ἔλοιτο ἄρχοντα, μᾶλλον ἢ πολιαρχίας οὔσης [he would be able] ..... τὸν ἓνα χρῆσθαι τῷ στρατεύματι (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ἐγὼ δὲ τούτοις ὁμολογήσαιμι ἂν ἀπὸ χρημάτων πολλὰ διαπράττεσθαι Ἀθήνησι, καὶ ἔτι πλείω [I would accomplish] ..... , εἰ πλείους ἔτι ἐδίδοσαν ἀργύριον (Xenophon, *Atheniensium Respublica*).

2/ Try to work the infinitive sentence backwards to what was originally said or thought (but remember that an infinitive may come from an indicative or from an optative):

✧ Example: νομίζω τὸν στρατηγὸν τὴν πόλιν ῥαδίως ἐλεῖν ἄν.

Possible original sentence: ὁ στρατηγὸς ῥαδίως τὴν πόλιν εἶλον ἄν / THE GENERAL WOULD HAVE CAPTURED THE CITY EASILY.

(or maybe: ὁ στρατηγὸς ῥαδίως τὴν πόλιν ἔλοι ἄν / THE GENERAL WOULD CAPTURE THE CITY EASILY.)

- Κλέαρχος δὲ ὁ ἄρμοσθης οἰόμενος οὐδένα ἂν τοῦτο ποιῆσαι διέβη παρὰ τὸν Φαρνάβαζον (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

.....

- ἐπίστευον μηδένα ἂν ἐπὶ σφᾶς βοηθῆσαι (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

.....

- τέλος δὲ λέγει Σπιθριδάτης πᾶν ποιεῖν ἄν ἠδέως ὅ τι σοι δοκοίη (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- .....

- νομίζω γὰρ ἔτι ῥᾶον τὴν κατὰ θάλατταν ἢ τὴν κατὰ γῆν ἀρχὴν παραλαβεῖν ἄν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- .....

- ἐνόμιζον γὰρ ἄν κρατῆσαι τῆς πόλεως ἢ ἐβούλοντο (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- .....

### b) Prolepsis of ἄν

Take the five sentences of the last exercise, make the main verb negative and move the particle ἄν towards the beginning of the sentence:

- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....

## d) Participle clauses

### 1. Participle with article (also known as *attributive participle*)

[119]

a/ These nouns are in different cases. Write the active participle of the verb in brackets in the spaces, in the correct form:

✧ Example: τὸν ..... ἄνθρωπον [γράφω]

τὸν ἄνθρωπον is masculine, singular and accusative, so the necessary form is **γράφοντα**.

τάς ..... παρθένους [γράφω]

τῷ ..... ἀγῶνι [σφάζω]

τῇ ..... θεᾷ [πορεύομαι]

τὰ ..... θηρά [τρέχω]

τοῦ ..... χρόνου [σπεύδω]

τὸν ..... κυβερνήτην [παρασκευάζω]

τῶν..... φόβων [ταράττω]

b/ Do the same as in the previous exercise (verbs are maybe a little more difficult here):

τάς ..... παρθένους [γελάω]

τὴν ..... θεάν [ἀτιμῶ]

τῇ ..... κόρη [σκοπέω]

τῇ ..... κόρη [δίδωμι]

τῷ ..... ἀγῶνι [τελευτάω]

τοὺς ..... ἀνθρώπους [τίθημι]

τὸν ..... μαθητὴν [χωρέω]

c/ Read these sentences and transform the participles into clauses with a relative:

✧ Example: τίς ἐστι ὁ **δακρῶν** παῖς; > τίς ἐστὶν ὁ παῖς ὃς **δακρύει**;

- οἱ παῖδες οἱ **βαίνοντες** νῦν διαλέγονται.

.....

- ἡ ἀδελφὴ ἢ μάχεσθαι **τολμῶσα** ἐνθάδε ἐστίν.

.....

- ὁ **λέγων** ἄνθρωπος βλέπει πρὸς τοὺς ἀκούοντας πολῖτας.

.....

- οἱ στρατιῶται οἱ **μαχόμενοι** διώκουσι τοὺς φεύγοντας πολεμίους.
- .....

- οἱ ἀνδρεῖοι **ὄντες** ἀεὶ νικῶσιν.
- .....

- τὰς βίβλους δίδωμι ταῖς σοφαῖς **οὔσαις**.
- .....

d/ Read these sentences (now the participles are without a noun) and transform them into clauses with a relative, but adding a demonstrative pronoun at the beginning:

✧ Example: οἱ **γράφοντες** σοφοί εἰσιν > **οὗτοι οἱ γράφουσιν** σοφοί εἰσιν.

- οἱ **ἀκούοντες** τὸν λέγοντα ἐπαινοῦσιν.
- .....

- οἱ ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι **οἰκοῦντες** τοὺς ἐννοοῦντας φιλοῦσιν.
- .....

- αἱ βίβλους **ἀναγιγνώσκουσαι** σοφαί εἰσιν.
- .....

- αἱ τοῖς παισὶ **ἡγούμεναι** τὴν ὁδὸν γιγνώσκουσιν.
- .....

- οἱ **μαχόμενοι** οὐκ ἀεὶ ἀποθνήσκουσιν.
- .....

e/ Translate into Greek using participles with an article for the words in italics:

- I see *those* (masc.) *who run*.
- .....

- You see *those* (fem.) *who fight*.
- .....

- *Those who lie* are bad.
- .....

- What does *the speaker* say?
- .....



- I bring presents for the goddess *who guards* Athens.
- .....

- *Those who are wise* don't drink wine.
- .....

- I give a present *to those* (fem.) *who are* good.
- .....

- They give a present *to those* (masc.) *who are* rich.
- .....

f/ Combine the two sentences by transforming the second one into an attributive participle.

✧ Example: ὁ παῖς διαλέγεται. ὁ παῖς βαίνει. > ὁ **βαίνων** παῖς διαλέγεται.

- ἡ κόρη μανθάνει. ἡ κόρη γράφει.
- .....

- οἱ ναῦται μάχονται. οἱ ναῦται ἀνδρεῖοί εἰσιν.
- .....

- τὸ ὄρος καλὸν ἐστίν. τὸ ὄρος ἐγγὺς τῆς Σπάρτης ἐστίν.
- .....

- οἱ στρατιῶται τὴν θεὰν τιμῶσιν. οἱ στρατιῶται θυσίαν ποιοῦσιν.
- .....

- οἱ νεανῖαι τῷ διδασκάλῳ ἔπονται. οἱ νεανῖαι διὰ τῆς χώρας διαβαίνουσιν.
- .....

g/ Do the same as before, but this time the subject of the second sentence will be a different one, which means that the participle will agree with an object of the first sentence, not with the subject.

✧ Example: ὁ παῖς τὴν βίβλον ἀναγινώσκει. ἡ βίβλος ἀγαθὴ ἐστίν. > ὁ παῖς ἀναγινώσκει τὴν βίβλον **τὴν ἀγαθὴν οὖσαν**.

- οἱ στρατιῶται τὴν κόρην ὀρῶσιν. ἡ κόρη πρὸς τὴν οἰκίαν βαίνει.
- .....

- ὁ ἰατρός τοὺς παῖδας φυλάττει. οἱ παῖδες μανθάνουσιν.
- .....

- οἱ ναῦται ἐν τῷ πλοίῳ εἰσίν. τὸ πλοῖον ταχέως πλεῖ.
- .....

- ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐμάχετο ἐν τῇ μάχῃ. ἡ μάχη χαλεπὴ ἦν. ✧ Mind the new case of χαλεπή!
- .....

- τιμῶμεν τοὺς παῖδας. οἱ παῖδες πιστεύουσι τῷ διδασκάλῳ.
- .....

h/ Now join them but this time transforming the underlined verb into a participle (it may belong to the first or second sentence) and eliminating its subject to make it only *article + participle*. The article with which the verb transformed into a participle must agree is underlined.

✧ Example: αἱ θεαὶ τὴν μάχην ὀρῶσι καὶ τὴν σοφίαν δηλοῦσιν. > **αἱ τὴν μάχην ὀρῶσαι** τὴν σοφίαν δηλοῦσιν.

(Remember to "carry" with the participle any object that it had as normal verb and to put these objects between the article and the participle.)

- ὁ ῥήτωρ τοὺς πολῖτας πεῖθει καὶ τῆς χώρας ἄρχει.
- .....

- τιμῶμεν τοὺς στρατιῶτας. οἱ στρατιῶται τὴν χώραν σώζουσιν.
- .....

- φιλοῦμεν τοὺς ναῦτας. οἱ ναῦται πολλάκις νικῶσιν.
- .....

- ὁ στρατηγὸς ἄγγελον πέμπει καὶ τὸν τύραννον πεῖθει.
- .....

- οἱ στρατιῶται τὰ ὄπλα δέχονται καὶ νικῶσιν.
- .....

◇

- τιμῶμεν τοὺς στρατιῶτας. οἱ στρατιῶται ὑπὲρ τῆς πατρίδος μάχονται.
- .....

- οἱ θεοὶ βοηθοῦσι τοῖς ἀνθρώποις. οἱ ἄνθρωποι εὐχονται.
- .....

- ὁ δῆμος τοὺς πολῖτας τιμᾷ. οἱ πολῖται μάχεσθαι βούλονται.
- .....



- γέρας δίδομεν τοῖς ναῦταις. οἱ ναῦται τὴν χώραν ἐλευθεροῦσιν.

- ὀρῶ τὰς κόρας. αἱ κόραι βίβλους διδάσσι τῷ διδασκάλῳ.

◇

- οἱ πολέμοι οὐκ ἀποκτείνουσι τοὺς πολῖτας. οἱ πολῖται ἀγάλματα τοῖς θεοῖς ἀνατιθέασιν.

- δέχομαι τοὺς ἡγεμόνας. οἱ ἡγεμόνες τῷ στρατῷ ἡγοῦνται.

- ἡ θεὰ τὴν ὁδὸν δείκνυσι καὶ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις βοηθεῖ.

- ἀποκτείνομεν τοὺς πολεμίους. οἱ πολέμοι ἄδικοί εἰσιν. (Mind the new case of ἄδικοι!)

i/ Read the following sentences and try to find an English term for the attributive participles (in bold). For example, rather than translating οἱ γράφοντες by “those who write”, translate it by “the writers”:

- πρῶτον δὲ διηγῆσασθαι βούλομαι **τὰ πραχθέντα** τῇ τελευταίᾳ ἡμέρᾳ. (Lysias, *De Caede Eratosthenis*).

English term: .....

- ἔστιν δὲ δὴ τῶν οἰκείων τις **ὁ τεθνεὼς** ὑπὸ τοῦ σοῦ πατρός; (Plato, *Euthyphro*).

English term: .....

- **τὰ** μὲν οὖν **γεγεννημένα** καὶ ἐμοῦ καὶ τῶν μαρτύρων ἀκηκόατε (Lysias, *Contra Simonem*).

English term: .....

- οὔτε λόγῳ οὔτε ἔργῳ ἔβλαψα οὐδένα **τῶν κατηγορούντων** (Lysias, *Pro Milite*).

English term: .....

◇

- ἄδηλον μὲν παντὶ ἀνθρώπῳ ὅπῃ **τὸ μέλλον** ἔξει (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

English term: .....

- **τῷ** δ' **ἐπιόντι** ἔτει, ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

English term: .....

- ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι ἐν τῷ παρόντι οὐκ ἂν δύναιτο ἰκανὴν αὐτῷ ἐκπέμψαι ἐπικουρίαν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

English term: .....

- τῆς ἐπιούσης νυκτὸς ἐνέβαλον εἰς τὴν Λυδίαν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

English term: .....

## 2. Participle without article (also known as *circumstantial participle*)

[120]

a/ Read these pairs of sentences and compare: is each participle restrictive (“attributive”) or complementary (“circumstantial”)?

- οἱ παῖδες βίβλους ἀναγιγνώσκοντες σοφοὶ γίνονται .....  
οἱ παῖδες οἱ βίβλους ἀναγιγνώσκοντες σοφοὶ γίνονται. ....
- οἱ ναῦται μαχόμενοι κωλύουσι τοὺς πολεμίους εἰς τὸν λιμένα εἰσπλεῖν. ....  
οἱ μαχόμενοι ναῦται κωλύουσι τοὺς πολεμίους εἰς τὸν λιμένα εἰσπλεῖν. ....
- τιμῶμεν τοὺς στρατιώτας ἐν κινδύνῳ ὄντας. ....  
τιμῶμεν τοὺς ἐν κινδύνῳ ὄντας στρατιώτας. ....
- αἱ θεαὶ ἀγαθαὶ οὔσαι τοῖς ἀνθρώποις βοηθοῦσιν. ....  
αἱ θεαὶ αἱ ἀγαθαὶ οὔσαι τοῖς ἀνθρώποις βοηθοῦσιν. ....

b/ Combine these sentences adding in the second sentence the information about the subject provided in the first sentence by means of a circumstantial participle and then translate:

✧ Example: οἱ θεοὶ ἐν τῷ οὐρανῷ οἰκοῦσιν. οἱ θεοὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ὑβρίζουσιν.

Combination: ἐν τῷ οὐρανῷ οἰκοῦντες, οἱ θεοὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ὑβρίζουσιν.

- οἱ Τρῶες λέγουσιν ὅτι ὁ ἵππος δῶρὸν ἐστίν. οἱ Τρῶες ἔλκουσιν αὐτὸν εἰς τὴν Τροίαν.

.....

- οἱ πολῖται καθεύδουσιν. οἱ πολῖται οὐχ ὀρώσιν τοὺς Ἕλληνας εἰσβαίνοντας.

.....

- οἱ στρατιῶται τὰς σκηνὰς διαφθεύρουσιν. οἱ στρατιῶται τὸν πόλεμον νικῶσιν.

.....

- τὰ ὄπλα κρύπτω. τὸν πόλεμον φεύγειν πειρῶμαι.

.....

- ἡ Κλυταιμνήστρα τὸν Ἀγαμέμνονα ἀποκτείνει. ἡ Κλυταιμνήστρα τοὺς θεοὺς ὑβρίζει.
- .....

c/ Do the same as in the previous exercise, but in this case the information given in the first sentence will refer not to the subject, but to an object of the second sentence:

✧ Example: ὁ παῖς ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ ἐστίν. ἄρα τὸν παῖδα ὄρᾳς;

Combination: ἄρα τὸν παῖδα ἐν τῷ **ἀγρῷ ὄντα** ὄρᾳς;

- ἡ ἐκκλησία περὶ τῆς μάχης διαλέγεται. ἄρα τὴν ἐκκλησίαν ὄρᾳς;

.....

- οἱ στρατιῶται τοὺς πολεμίους ἀποκτείνουσιν. ὄρῶ τοὺς στρατιώτας.

.....

- οἱ τῆς Τροίας πολῖται καθεύδουσιν. δίδομεν τοῦτο τοῖς πολίταις.

.....

- οἱ Ἕλληνες τὰ τῆς Τροίας χρήματα λαμβάνουσιν. ἄρα ὄρατε τοὺς Ἕλληνας;

.....

- τὸ στρατόπεδον ἔρημὸν ἐστίν. οἱ Τρῶες τὸ τοῦ στρατοπέδου τεῖχος ὄρῶσιν.

.....

d/ In the following sentences, find out the specific meaning of the participle highlighted in bold (temporal, causal, conditional, etc.):

- ὁ μέντοι Ξενοφῶν **ἀναγνούς** τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἀνακοινοῦται Σωκράτει τῷ Ἀθηναίῳ περὶ τῆς πορείας (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

Specific meaning: .....

- **φοβούμενοι** δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ ἄκοντες ὅμως οἱ πολλοὶ δι' αἰσχύνην συνηκολούθησαν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

Specific meaning: .....

- τῶν Ἑλλήνων **ἔχων** ὀπίστας ἀνέβη τριακοσίους (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

Specific meaning: .....

- ὁ δὲ **λαβὼν** τὸ χρυσίον στράτευμα συνέλεξεν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

Specific meaning: .....

- Πρόξενον δὲ τὸν Βοιωτίον ξένον **ὄντα** ἐκέλευσε **λαβόντα** ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους παραγενέσθαι (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

Specific meaning: .....

e/ In the following sentences, replace (with Xenophon's permission...) the participle clause highlighted in bold with a subordinate (relative, temporal, etc.) according to the sense:

✧ Example: οἱ δὲ Ἀθηναῖοι **ἅμα τῷ ἡλίῳ ἀνίσχοντι** ἐπὶ τῷ λιμένι παρετάξαντο ὡς εἰς ναυμαχίαν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

Replacement: οἱ δὲ Ἀθηναῖοι, **ὅτε ὁ ἥλιος ἀνίσχεν**, ἐπὶ τῷ λιμένι παρετάξαντο ὡς εἰς ναυμαχίαν.

• τούτου [τοῦ ποταμοῦ] τὸ εὖρος δύο πλέθρα: γέφυρα δὲ ἐπὶν **ἐπὶ τὰ ἐξευγμένη πλοίοις** (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

After replacement: .....

• **ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα** ἐπεΐθοντο καὶ διέβησαν πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. Κῦρος δ' ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο **διαβεβηκότας** ἤσθη (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

After replacement: .....

• ἐδόκει δὴ θεῖον εἶναι καὶ σαφῶς ὑποχωρῆσαι τὸν ποταμὸν Κύρω **ὡς βασιλεύσοντι** (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

✧ It seems that even the unusually low level of the river is helping Cyrus, as he could cross it easily.

After replacement: .....

• **ὄντι δ' αὐτῷ ἐν Ἀμφιπόλει** ἀγγέλλει Δερκυλίδας ὅτι νικῶν τε αὖ Λακεδαιμόνιοι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

After replacement: .....

◇

• ἵππεύς τις προσήλανε καὶ μάλα ἰσχυρῶς **ιδρῶντι τῷ ἵπῳ** (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

After replacement: .....

• **τῷ μὲν δὴ Τιριβάζῳ ἀκούοντι** ἰσχυρῶς ἤρεσκον οἱ τοῦ Ἀνταλκίδου λόγοι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

After replacement: .....

• πλέων δὲ περιτυγχάνει Φιλοκράτει τῷ Ἐφιάλτου **πλέοντι μετὰ δέκα τριήρων** (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

After replacement: .....

• ἐπειτα δὲ κατεστρατοπεδεύσατο ἐπὶ λόφῳ **ἀπέχοντι τῆς πόλεως ὡς πέντε στάδια** (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

After replacement: .....

f/ Read the following fragment and answer the questions:

ὁ δὲ λαμβάνει Κῦρον ὡς **ἀποκτενῶν**, ἡ δὲ μήτηρ **ἐξαίτησαμένη** αὐτὸν ἀποπέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχὴν· ὁ δέ, ὡς ἀπῆλθε **κινδυνεύσας** καὶ **ἀτιμασθεῖς**, βουλεύεται ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλά, ἦν δύνηται, βασιλεύει ἀντ' ἐκείνου.

Παρούσατις μὲν δὴ ἡ μήτηρ ὑπῆρχε (= supported) τῷ Κύρῳ, **φιλοῦσα** αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν **βασιλεύοντα** Ἄρταξέρξηνην (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

– Which of the highlighted participles has a causal meaning?

.....

– Which one is an attributive participle instead of circumstantial?

.....

– Which one has a purpose meaning?

.....

– Write one that has a temporal meaning:

.....

### 3. The participle is impersonal

[121]

a/ In the following pairs of sentences, say to which person the participle refers (1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup> or 3<sup>rd</sup> singular/plural):

• τὴν οἰκίαν **ὄρῶν**, ἔβαινον. ....

τὴν οἰκίαν **ὄρῶν**, ἔβαινε.

• **μαχόμενος** ἐν τῇ μάχῃ, τῷ φίλῳ διελέγετο, σὺ δέ, **μαχόμενος** ἐν τῇ μάχῃ, τοὺς πολεμίους ἐνίκας. ....

**μαχόμενος** ἐν τῇ μάχῃ, τῷ φίλῳ διελεγόμην, σὺ δέ, **μαχόμενος** ἐν τῇ μάχῃ, τοὺς πολεμίους ἐνίκας. ....

• τὴν ἐλευθερίαν **φυλάττουσαι**, αἱ θεαὶ τὴν πατρίδα σῶζομεν. ....

τὴν ἐλευθερίαν **φυλάττουσαι**, αἱ θεαὶ τὴν πατρίδα σῶζουσιν. ....

• τὰ ὅπλα **κρύψαντες**, τὴν μάχην φεύγειν πειρώμεθα. ....

τὰ ὅπλα **κρύψαντες**, τὴν μάχην φεύγειν πειρῶνται. ....

b/ Translate into Greek:

• I (fem.) see a man walking. [The man is walking, not I.]

.....

• Walking, I (fem.) see a man. [I am walking, the man is not.]

.....

• I, reading, become wise, but you, reading, learn nothing.

.....

- Daring to fight, the maidens show their courage.
- .....

- Daring to fight, we, the maidens, show our courage.
- .....

#### 4. The temporal correlation

[122]

a/ Complete these sentences with the present participle of one of the verbs below:

*καθεύδω / τρέχω / ταραττώ / θορυβέω / μάχομαι / δακρύω*

- ἄρα εἶχες ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ τοὺς [disturbing] ..... δούλους;
- ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἦσαν οἱ [crying] ..... παῖδες.
- μὴ δὸς δῶρον τοῖς [sleeping] ..... μαθηταῖς.
- διὰ τί οἱ [making a fuss] ..... παῖδες τὰ ἀγάλματα ῥηγνύασιν;
- πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς οὐ [fighting] ..... ἐκολάζομεν, ἔπειτα δὲ τοὺς εἰς τὴν μάχην [running] ..... ἐπαινοῦμεν.

b/ Translate into Greek using a present participle for the words in italics:

- I received the friend *who was escaping*.

.....

- We were persuading the slaves *who were not working*.

.....

- You admire the children *who converse* in the agora.

.....

- Give the money to the soldiers *who fight*.

.....

- They ran towards the soldiers *who were besieging* the city.

.....

c/ Complete these sentences with the future or aorist participle of one of the offered verbs, according to the indication, making it agree with the words in bold:

*ἔρχομαι / φέρω / φυλάττω / ἀποκτείνω / πιστεύω / μάχομαι*

- ὁ σῆτον [that will bring] ..... **ἀνὴρ** ἡμῖν βοηθεῖ.

- τῷ δεσπότη [trusting] ..... , ὁ δοῦλος τὸ ἔργον ἔπραξεν.
- τοῖς πρὸς τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους [who will fight] ..... καλοὺς λόγους λέγει ὁ στρατηγός.
- πρὸς τὴν πόλιν [after going] ..... οἱ παῖδες τὸν πατέρα εἶδον.
- οἱ τὴν πόλιν [who will guard] ..... ἀνδρεῖοί εἰσιν.
- τὸν τῶν πολεμίων στρατηγὸν [after killing] ..... , πρὸς τὴν Λακεδαιμονίαν **φευξόμεθα**.

d/ Translate into Greek using a future or an aorist participle for the words in italics:

- *Having sent* the message to his slave, the master went to the camp.

.....

- I choose soldiers *to pursue* (*who will pursue*) the enemies.

.....

- *After arriving* to Athens, the girls spoke with the teacher.

.....

- The messenger comes *to announce* the victory.

.....

- I will send you students *to write* (*who will write*) the book.

.....

- *After stealing* the money, they remained at home.

.....

e/ Complete the following sentences with a participle of the verb given to replace the English expression:

- ἤδη ὥρα ἀπιέναι, ἐμοὶ μὲν [to die] ..... , ὑμῖν δὲ [to live] ..... (Plato, *Apologia*).  
[ἀποθνήσκω, βιόω]

- ἔφουγον [after destroying] ..... πεντεκαίδεκα τριήρεις (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [ἀπόλλυμι]

- ἔρχεται [to accuse] ..... μου (Plato, *Euthyphro*). [κατηγορέω]

- ὑμεῖς οὕτω παρασκευάζεσθε ὡς αὔριον, ἐὰν πλοῦς ᾖ, [to set sail] ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [ἀνάγομαι]

✧ The main verb is an imperative, not an indicative.

- οἱ δὲ Ἀθηναῖοι τὸ Βυζάντιον ἐπολιόρκουν [after fortifying] ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [περιτειχίζω]

◇

- τροπαῖον δὲ [having set up] ..... αὐτοῦ ἠϋλίζοντο (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [ἴστημι]
- οἱ δ' Ἀθηναῖοι ἐπιηκολούθουν, καίπερ [knowing] ..... ὅτι κίνδυνος εἴη κυκλωθῆναι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [γινώσκω]
- οἱ μὲν δὴ Θηβαῖοι [after departing] ..... παρεσκευάζοντο ὡς [to defend themselves] ..... , οἱ δ' Ἀθηναῖοι ὡς [to offer support] ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [ἀπέρχομαι, ἀμύνομαι, βοηθήεω]
- [to take a walk] ..... ἀπῆλθον (Xenophon, *Symposium*). [περιπατέω]
- Ἀγησίλαος δέ, καίπερ [becoming aware of] ..... ταῦτα, ὅμως ἐπέμενε ταῖς σπονδαῖς (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [αἰσθάνομαι]



- ἡμεῖς οὔτε συνήλθομεν ὡς βασιλεῖ [to fight] ..... οὔτε ἐπορευόμεθα ἐπὶ βασιλέα (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [πολεμέω]
- οὐ κακῶς γε [to do] ..... ἀλλὰ βασιλεῖ [after fighting] ..... ἀπερχόμεθα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [ποιέω, πολεμέω]
- [(I) after hearing] ..... ὅτι προσπλέοιεν δέκα τριήρεις παρὰ Διονυσίου [in order to help] ..... τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις, ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [ἀκούω, βοηθέω]
- ὁ μὲντοι Ἀγησίλαος ἐκείνους μὲν καίπερ [seeing] ..... οὐκ ἐδίωκε (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [ὁράω]
- ἡμεῖς οὐδὲν βίαιον [to do] ..... παρεληλύθαμεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [ποιέω]

## 5. Verbs that usually require a participle

[123]

a/ Complete each of these sentences with the verb given in brackets, in aorist tense:

- ἡμεῖς οὐκ ..... τὸν διδάσκαλον ἐκ τοῦ διδασκαλείου ἐκβαίνοντες. [λανθάνω]
- οἱ θεοὶ ..... ἐν τῇ μάχῃ μαχόμενοι. [φαίνομαι]
- ὁ δοῦλος ..... τὸν δεσπότην τὰ χρήματα λάβων. [λανθάνω]
- οἱ παῖδες τοὺς φίλους ..... πρὸς τὸν λιμένα τρέχοντες. [φθάνω]

b/ Write the present participle of the verb given in brackets in the necessary form:

- οἱ θεοὶ **τυγχάνουσι** ἐνθάδε ..... . [εἰμί]
- αἱ κόραι **φθάνουσι** τοὺς ναῦτας εἰς τὸ πλοῖον ..... . [εἰσβαίνω]



- τότε ὁ Περικλῆς **ἐτόγγανεν** ἐπὶ τὴν Σπάρτην ..... [μάχομαι]
- ἡ φύσις **φαίνεται** ἀγαθὴ ..... [εἰμί]

c/ Translate into Greek using the verb given in brackets:

- The general doesn't realize that the enemies arrive. [λανθάνω]
- .....

- The farmer seems to be working. [φαίνομαι]
- .....

- The gods finish the tasks before men do. [φθάνω]
- .....

- Zeus happens to be a cruel god. [τυγχάνω]
- .....

d/ Complete each sentence with the two given verbs, making the second one a participle (in the original sentence the participle may go first):

✧ Example: Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐπεὶ κατεῖδε τοὺς πολεμίους **ἐπαύσατο πορευόμενος** (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

[παύομαι (aorist), πορεύομαι]

- ὁ γὰρ ἀνὴρ ὁ ὑβρίζων εἰς σὲ καὶ τὴν σὴν γυναῖκα ἐχθρὸς ..... ἡμῖν .....  
(Lysias, *De Caede Eratosthenis*). [τυγχάνω, εἰμί]
- ..... ἐταῖρος αὐτῷ καὶ συνήθης ..... (Lucian, *Philopseudeis*).  
[λανθάνω (aorist), γίνομαι (aorist)]
- ὁ νεανίσκος οὐκ ..... (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).  
[παύομαι (aorist), ἐσθίω]
- ὁ μὲν πρεσβύτερος ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).  
[τυγχάνω (imperfect), πάρεμι]
- ὁ δὲ Κορύλας, ὃς ..... τότε Παφλαγονίας ..... , πέμπει παρὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας πρέσβεις  
(Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [τυγχάνω (imperfect), ἄρχω]
- ἐμὲ ..... (Plato, *Philebus*). [λανθάνω (aorist), ἀποκρίνομαι (aorist)]

e/ Complete each sentence with one of the verbs τυγχάνω, λανθάνω or παύομαι and a participle of the verb given in brackets so that the sense of the Greek sentence agrees with the information given in English:

- ✧ Example: τῶν δὲ Ἀθηναίων ἡ βουλή ..... ἐν ἀκροπόλει ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
[κάθημαι] ✧ Everybody was there, waiting for the assembly to start.  
τῶν δὲ Ἀθηναίων ἡ βουλή ἐτύγγανεν ἐν ἀκροπόλει καθημένη.
- πρὸ δὲ τοῦ στρατεύματος φῶς ἐποίει, ἵνα μηδεὶς ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
[πρόσειμι] ✧ He did not want anybody to pass in front of the camp unnoticed.
- ἡμῖν ἡ μάθησις οὐκ ἄλλο τι ἢ ἀνάμνησις ..... (Plato, *Phaedrus*). [εἶμι]

✧ Platonic argumentation about reminiscence: it's nothing else than that.
- οὔποτε ..... ἡμᾶς μὲν ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [οἰκτίρω]

✧ I was always feeling sorry for us.
- ἐσπέρας δ' ἐπιγιγνομένης ..... εἰς τὸν ὄπισθεν κόλπον τῆς Μαντικῆς  
(Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [στρατοπεδεύομαι] ✧ Nobody saw that he had pitched camp there.
- Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ..... αὐτῷ (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [εἶμι]

✧ They knew each other from long ago.
- ταῦτα ἀδικήσας ..... ἑαυτὸν ἀθλιώτατος ..... (Plato, *Gorgias*). [γίγνομαι]

✧ Sometimes you yourself do not realise what you have become.

## 6. Adjectives that usually require a participle

[124]

a/ For each sentence, write the given verb as a participle:

- καὶ βασιλεὺς δῆλος ἦν ..... πάλιν, ὡς ἐδόκει, ὄπισθεν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [πρόσειμι]
- ..... τε γὰρ φανερός ἦν πολλάκις μὲν οἴκοι (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*). [θύω]
- Μένων δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς δῆλος ἦν ..... μὲν πλουτεῖν ἰσχυρῶς, ἐπιθυμῶν δὲ ἀρχεῖν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).  
[ἐπιθυμέω]
- οἱ Καρδοῦχοι φανεροὶ ἤδη ἦσαν εἰς τὸ πεδῖον ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [καταβαίνω]

b/ Complete each sentence with a participle of one of the given verbs; some clues are given in English to help you:

φθονέω / θεραπεύω / φυλάττω / προσελαύνω

- ἐπεὶ δὲ **δῆλοι** ἦσαν ..... οἱ πολέμιοι, ἐδέοντο οἱ Μαντινεῖς τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἰπέων βοηθησθαι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). ✧ Danger approaches.
- ..... αὐτοῖς **δῆλοι** ἦσαν (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*). ✧ It seems that they didn't have many friends.
- **φανερὸς** ἦν ..... τοὺς θεούς (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*). ✧ If not, gods could get angry.
- ἄνδρες δ' οὐδαμοῦ ..... ἡμᾶς **φανεροί** εἰσιν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). ✧ A good moment to escape!

## 7. Genitive Absolute

[125]

a/ Change the underlined clause into a genitive absolute:

✧ Example: ὅτε ἐγὼ ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις ᾤκουν, οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι εἰς τὴν Ἀττικὴν εἰσέβαλον

> ἐμοῦ ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις οἰκούντος, οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι εἰς τὴν Ἀττικὴν εἰσέβαλον.

- τοῦτο ποιήσω διότι ὁ δεσπότης κελεύει.

.....

- ἐὰν οἱ ἐμοὶ φίλοι εἰς καιρὸν μὴ ἀφίκωσιν, μόνος ἄπειμι.

.....

- καὶ εἰ ἡμᾶς ὠφελεῖς, τοῦτο χαλεπώτατόν ἐστιν.

.....

- ἐπεὶ οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἀπῆλθον, οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἐκ τῆς πόλεως ἐξέδραμον.

.....

- ὅτε εἰς τὰς ναῦς εἰσεβαίνομεν, ἀφίκοντο οἱ ναύαρχοι.

.....

b/ Write the participle of the given verb so that it agrees with the underlined word (if any) and produces a genitive absolute:

- νεκρῶν τε πολλῶν ἐπ' ἀλλήλοις ἦδη ..... ἐν τῷ ποταμῷ καὶ διεφθαρμένου τοῦ στρατεύματος (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [κεῖμαι]

- ἀνηγάγετο ἐπὶ τὴν Κύζικον ..... πολλῶ (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [ῥεῖ] ✧ Bad weather.

- ἐπειδὴ δ' ἐγγὺς τῆς Κυζίκου ἦν, αἰθρίας ..... καὶ τοῦ ἡλίου ..... , ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
[γίγνομαι, ἐκλάμπω]      ✧ The weather improves.
- εἰς τὴν Μεγαρίδα κατέβησαν Κορίνθιοι μετὰ τῶν συμμάχων, νομίζοντες ἀδυνάτους ἔσεσθαι Ἀθηναίους βοηθεῖν τοῖς Μεγαρεῦσιν ἐν τε Αἰγίῃ ..... στρατιᾶς πολλῆς (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [ἄπειμι]

c/ Change the genitive absolute into a subordinate clause:

- ✧ Example: ἐμοῦ ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις οἰκούντος, ... > ὅτε ἐγὼ ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις ᾤκουν, ...
- ἀνάγεσθαι ἤδη αὐτοῦ μέλλοντος ὡς ἐπὶ ναυμαχίαν, ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
.....
- προσιόντος ἤδη τοῦ στρατεύματος, ... (Thucydides, *Historiae*).  
.....
- ταῦτα εἰπόντος τοῦ Σωκράτους, ... (Plato, *Phaedo*).  
.....
- τελευτήσαντος δὲ Ἀλεξάνδρου τοῦ Μακεδόνοιο, ... (Diogenes Laertius, *Vitae Philosophorum*).  
.....
- ἀφικομένων τῶν τελευταίων πρεσβέων ἐκ Λακεδαιμόνος καὶ λεγόντων ἄλλο οὐδὲν ὄν πρότερον εἰώθησαν, ... (Thucydides, *Historiae*).  
.....

d/ Fill in the gaps with the phrase in brackets as a genitive absolute:

- ..... διελέλυντο εὐθὺς αἰ σπονδαί (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [αὐτοὶ ἀφίκοντο]
- ..... πρὸς Πτολεμαῖον ἀπέστειλαν (Plutarch, *Demetrius*).  
[ἡ γυνὴ αὐτῷ γράμματα ἔπεμψε]
- ..... οἱ Κορίνθιοι τὸν πλοῦν παρεσκευάζοντο.  
[τοιαῦτα οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἀπεκρίναντο]
- ..... ἐξαίφνης θύελλα ἐγένετο. [ἡ ναὺς ἔπλει]
- ..... ἐγίνοντο σπονδαί (Thucydides, *Historiae*).  
[οἱ στρατηγοὶ τὸν λόγον ἐδέξαντο]
- οἱ δὲ ..... διακόψαντες τὸν μόχλον ἐξῆλθον (Thucydides, *Historiae*).  
[γυνὴ πέλεκυν ἔδωκε]

e/ Match these genitive absolutes with their meanings:

IN THIS STATE OF AFFAIRS / IF NOBODY OPPOSES / IN THE MIDDLE OF THE MORNING / IN THE COURSE OF TIME / WITH GOD'S WILL / AT THE BEGINNING OF THE WINTER

θεοῦ θελόντος	.....	τούτων οὕτως ἔχόντων	.....
ἀγορᾶς πληθούσης	.....	μηδενὸς καλύοντος	.....
ἀρχομένου χειμῶνος	.....	προιόντος τοῦ χρόνου	.....

## 8. Accusative Absolute

[126]

a/ What kind of verbs may be used for an accusative absolute?

.....

b/ Match these accusative absolutes with their meanings:

BEING CONVENIENT / HAVING BEEN DECIDED / BEING NECESSARY / BEING EVIDENT / HAVING BEEN SAID / BEING CONVENIENT / BEING POSSIBLE / BEING DECIDED / BEING POSSIBLE / BEING NECESSARY / HAVING BEEN DECIDED / BEING IMPOSSIBLE

δεδογμένον	.....	δοκοῦν	.....
παρόν	.....	προσηκόν	.....
εἰρημένον	.....	δῆλον ὄν	.....
χρέον	.....	δόξαν	.....
ἀδύνατον ὄν	.....	πρέπον	.....
δέον	.....	ἐξόν	.....

c/ Using the Greek sentence as a model, translate the English one into Greek:

- διατρίβομεν, ὃ Ἑρμῆ, πάλα δέον ἐκκλησιάζειν (Lucian, *Iuppiter Tragoedus*). ✧ Now both are late.

Being necessary to go to Athens, we are going now.

.....

- τούτων δὲ γενομένων, ὡς ἐξόν ἤδη ποιεῖν αὐτοῖς ὅ τι βούλοιντο, πολλοὺς μὲν ἔχθρας ἔνεκα ἀπέκτεινον (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

As we could do whatever we wanted, we took the money.

.....

- **δόξαν** δὲ ταῦτα ἐκήρυξαν οὕτω ποιεῖν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

Having been decided to fight against Sparta, we assembled the army.

.....

- οἱ δὲ σοί τε λοιδοροῦνται, οὐδὲν **δέον** (Lucian, *Saturnalia*).

They killed all the prisoners, although it was not necessary.

.....

- **παρὸν** δ' αὐτῷ πολλοῖς καὶ ἀγαθοῖς χρῆσθαι ὅ τι ἐβούλετο, ὅμως ὑπ' οὐδενὸς τούτων ἐκρατήθη (Xenophon, *Agésilas*).

✧ He didn't fall into the temptation of making use of his resources.

Although they could have captured the city, they did not attack.

.....

- τὸ πλῆθος ἐνηφίσαντο πολεμεῖν. **δεδογμένον** δὲ αὐτοῖς εὐθύς μὲν ἀδύνατα ἦν ἐπιχειρεῖν ἀπαρασκευάσις οὖσιν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

Having been decided by them to sail to Troy, they embarked into the ships.

.....

## 9. Participle with ἄν

[127]

### a) Its use in reported speech

Change each sentence into reported speech with a participle + ἄν, introduced by the given verb:

✧ Example: τὸν Ἀχιλλέα ἐνίκησαμεν ἄν, εἰ ὅπλα ἔσχομεν.

οἶδα ἡμᾶς τὸν Ἀχιλλέα νικήσαντας ἄν, εἰ ὅπλα ἔσχομεν.

- εἰ τοῦτό μοι δοίης, χαίρομι ἄν.

ὀρῶ .....

- εἰ χθὲς ἀφικόμεθα, τὸν Σωκράτη εἶδομεν ἄν.

οἶδα .....

- εἴ μοι χρήματα παρεῖχες, ἠδέως ἐλάμβανον ἄν.

οἶσθα .....

- εἴ μοι χρήματα παρέχοις, ἠδέως λάβοιμι ἄν.

οὗτος αἰσθάνεται .....

- εἰ τὸν βασιλέα ἐξέβαλες, νῦν αὐτὸς βασιλεὺς ἦσθα ἄν.

πάντες ἴσασιν .....

### b) Its use to give the participle a potential meaning

1/ In the following sentences, replace the potential relative by a participle + ἄν :

✧ Example: ὁρῶ γυναῖκα ἣ τῆς πόλεως ἄριστα ἄρχει ἄν > ὁρῶ γυναῖκα τῆς πόλεως ἄριστα ἄρχουσαν ἄν.

- χθὲς εἶδον ἄνδρα ὃς τὸν Ἀχιλλέα νικήσειεν ἄν.

.....

- ἔχω βίβλον ἣ σοι ἀρέσκοι ἄν.

.....

- πόλεις εἰσὶν ἐκεῖ αἱ ῥαδίως λαμβάνονται ἄν.

.....

- γυναῖκές τινες οἰκοῦσιν ἐνθάδε αἱ τοὺς μαθητὰς διδάσκουσιν ἄν.

.....

2/ Observe these pairs of sentences (the second one is just the first one + ἄν next to the participle) and answer the questions:

- τοὺς πολεμίους νικᾷν δυνάμενος, ἐάσω αὐτοὺς ἀποφυγεῖν.

τοὺς πολεμίους νικᾷν ἄν δυνάμενος, ἐάσω αὐτοὺς ἀποφυγεῖν.

▷ Is there any difference in meaning between both sentences? .....

- ῥαδίως τὰ χρήματα λαβὼν, ἀπῆλθον.

ῥαδίως τὰ χρήματα ἄν λαβὼν, ἀπῆλθον.

▷ Which sentence implies that I did not take the money? .....

- εἰς καιρὸν ἀφικόμενοι, ἐκεῖ ἐμένομεν πολὺν χρόνον.

εἰς καιρὸν ἀφικόμενοι ἄν, ἐκεῖ ἐμένομεν πολὺν χρόνον.

▷ In which sentence is ἐκεῖ the place of arrival and in which is it somewhere else? .....

## 3/ Read this sentence:

- ῥαδίως ἂν ἀφεθείς, προείλετο ἀποθανεῖν (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*). [ἀφίημι to acquit]

In case we removed the particle ἂν, what would the new sentence mean?

.....

## 4/ Replace the potential causal clause with a construction of ὡς + participle + ἂν :

✧ Example: οὐ φιλῶ τούτους τοὺς πολίτας διότι τὴν πόλιν οὐκ ἂν σῶζοιεν.

> οὐ φιλῶ τούτους τοὺς πολίτας ὡς τὴν πόλιν οὐκ ἂν σῶζοντας.

- τοῦτο σοι οὐκ ἔρῳ διότι οὐ βουλοίμην ἂν σέ μοι χαλεπαίνειν.

.....

- πέμψω σε ἀντὶ ἔμοῦ διότι ἐγὼ αὐτὸς ἰέναι οὐ δυναίμην ἂν.

.....

- ἐγὼ αὐτὸς τὴν πόλιν εἶλον διότι ὑμεῖς αὐτὴν οὐκ ἐλάβετε ἂν. ✧ Use a genitive absolute.

.....

- ἀδύνατόν ἐστιν ἐπὶ τοὺς θεοὺς μάχεσθαι διότι οὐκ ἂν ἀποθάνοιεν.

.....

▷ In the previous sentences the participle should be in present tense, no matter in what tense it appears in the potential causal clause, except in one. Which one?

.....



e) Indirect speech

**1. (unapplied in this book)**
**2. Indirect statement clauses**

[128]

**a) The ὅτι construction**

1/ In an indirect statement, what kind of verbs will NOT make use of the ὅτι construction?

- a) Verbs of saying      b) Verbs of thinking      c) Verbs of physical perception

2/ Give the aorist for these verbs that may be used with the ὅτι construction:

μανθάνω .....	ἀκούω .....
ἀγγέλλω .....	αἰσθάνομαι .....
διαβεβαιόομαι .....	θαυμάζω .....
ἀποκρίνομαι .....	λέγω .....
πυνθάνομαι .....	δείκνυμι .....
γιγνώσκω .....	ὁράω .....

3/ What verb of saying never uses the ὅτι construction?

.....

4/ Complete the following sentences with a form of the verb given in brackets (the orientation in English has been given in accordance with the tense of the main verb):

- ἀγγέλλω ὅτι οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἐν τῇ μάχῃ [have won] ..... . [νικάω]
- ὁ κῆρυξ εἶπεν ὅτι οἱ πρεβεῖς ἦδη [had arrived] ..... . [ἀφικνέομαι]
- οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι οὐδαμοῦ Κῦρος [appeared] ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).  
[φαίνομαι, use oblique optative]
- ὁ δὲ Μειδίας εἶπεν ὅτι [he would come] ..... εἰς λόγους (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
[ἔρχομαι, use aorist optative + ἄν]

- **ἐδίδασκον ὅτι** [it was] ..... ἐπὶ Τισσαφέρνει, εἰ βούλοιτο, ἀφιέναι αὐτονόμους τὰς Ἑλληνίδας πόλεις (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [εἰμί, use oblique optative]

5/ Now let's work backwards: reproduce the direct statement, disregarding the introductory expression:

✧ Example: **ἀπήγγελλε δὲ ὅτι** ἐπαινοίη αὐτοὺς καὶ Ἀναξίβιος ὁ ναύαρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).  
> ἐπαινεῖ ὑμᾶς καὶ Ἀναξίβιος ὁ ναύαρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι.

- **κατεβόων** τῶν Ἀθηναίων **ὅτι** σπονδάς τε λελευκότες εἶεν καὶ ἀδικοῖεν τὴν Πελοπόννησον (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- .....

- **εἶπον ὅτι** σφίσι μὲν δοκοῖεν ἀδικεῖν οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- .....

- **ἠγγέλη** αὐτῷ **ὅτι** Μέγαρα ἀφέστηκε (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- .....

- **προϊδόντες** γὰρ οἱ Θηβαῖοι **ὅτι** ἔσοιτο ὁ πόλεμος, ἐβούλοντο τὴν Πλάταιαν προκαταλαβεῖν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- .....

6/ Make a prolepsis of the subject of the ὅτι clause:

✧ Example: οἶδα ὅτι **σὺ** σοφὸς εἶ > οἶδά **σε** ὅτι σοφὸς εἶ.

- οὐκ **ἴσασιν ὅτι** Ἰππίας πρεσβύτατος ὢν ἤρχε τῶν Πεισιστράτου υἱέων (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- .....

- **εἶπον ὅτι** νῆες ἐκεῖναι ἐπιπλέουσιν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- .....

- ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς **εἶπεν ὅτι** ἡ πόλις σφῶν τετείχισται ἤδη (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- .....

7/ In each of these sentences, the ὅτι clause does not depend on the main verb. State on what they depend:

- **ἀποκρινάμενοι ὅτι** πέμψουσιν ὡς αὐτοὺς πρέσβεις ἀπήλλαξαν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

It depends on .....

- **εἰδέναι** δὲ χρὴ **ὅτι** ἀνάγκη πολεμεῖν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

It depends on .....

- ἦλθον ἄγγελοι ὅτι πολιορκοῦνται (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

There is something missing in this sentence. What is it? .....

It depends on .....

8/ Translate into Greek using the ὅτι construction for the words in italics:

- We maintain *that the Athenian citizens are wise*.

.....

- I saw *that you had fled towards Sparta*. ✧ Mind what Greek tense you will use for "had fled".

.....

- The girl said *that the army had already departed*.

.....

- The herald announced *that Pericles was in the city*.

.....

- I showed him *that this was not difficult*.

.....

## b) The infinitive construction

1/ Give the aorist for these verbs that may use the infinitive construction:

ὁμολογέω ..... νομίζω ..... οἶμαι .....

ἠγέομαι ..... ὑποπεύω ..... ὑπολαμβάνω .....

2/ What verb of saying always uses the infinitive construction?

.....

3/ Put these direct statements into indirect form introduced by νομίζω :

✧ Example: ὁ Σωκράτης βίβλον ἔγραψεν > νομίζω τὸν Σωκράτη βίβλον γράψαι.

- ὁ σὸς ἀδελφὸς τοῦς μαθητὰς ἐδίδαξεν.

.....

- ἡ πᾶρθενος τῷ νεανία τὴν πόλιν δείκνυσιν.

.....

- οἱ ἄρχοντες τοὺς πολίτας μέμφονται.
- .....

- ὑμεῖς ταύτας τὰς βίβλους ἀναγνώσεσθε.
- .....

- οἱ ῥήτορες ὄψε εἰς τὴν ἐκκλησίαν ἀφίκοντο.
- .....

4/ Complete the following sentences with an infinitive of the verb given in brackets in the requested tense and put the subject of the infinitive (if there is any) in the accusative case:

- αὐτὸς ἄρα νομίζω [εἰμί, present] ..... [θεοί] ..... καὶ οὐκ εἰμί τὸ παράπαν ἄθεος (Plato, *Apologia*).
- οἶεται δὲ καὶ ἀναπαύεσθαι [χρή, present] ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- οἱ δὲ Ἄχαιοι [ποιέω, perfect] ..... τε οὐδὲν ἐνόμιζον [αὐτός] ..... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- διὰ δὲ τὸν πλοῦτον οἶεται [δύναμαι, future] ..... τὰ συμφέροντα πράττειν (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- καὶ μοι λέγε, τί καὶ ποιοῦντά [σύ] ..... φησι [διαφθείρω, present] ..... τοὺς νέους; (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- διὰ τοῦτο εἰκότως [δυστυχέω, present] ..... τε ἐνόμιζον (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

5/ Now follow the procedure backwards and reproduce the direct statement:

✧ Example: νομίζω τὸν Σωκράτη σοφὸν εἶναι > ὁ Σωκράτης σοφός ἐστιν.

- ὡς οὐκ ἐνόμιζον ἀξιόμαχοι εἶναι, ἡσύχαζον (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- .....

- ἐνόμιζον δὲ οὐδεμίαν εἶναι σωτηρίαν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- .....

- ἐνόμιζον ἐξηπατηθῆναι (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- .....

- ἡγοῦμαι γὰρ αὐτοὺς οὐ τι διαπράξασθαι ὃ ἐβουλήθησαν (Plato, *Protagoras*).
- .....

- **οὔεται** κακὸς εἶναι προστάτης τῆς πόλεως (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- .....

- **ἡγοῦμαι** δὲ τοῦτον οὐκ εἰς μικρὸν κίνδυνον ἰέναι οἷ σπεύδει (Plato, *Theages*).
- .....

6/ Using the Greek sentence as a model, translate the English one into Greek:

- Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ **οὐκ ἔφασαν** πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα ἀνδραποδιεῖν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

They say that you will not arrive in time.

.....

- ὁ δ' **οὐκ ἔφη** (Plato, *Phaedo*).      ✧ Socrates answers a question.

Those people always say "no".

.....

### c) The participle construction

1/ Transform these ὅτι clauses into participle clauses:

✧ Example: οἶδα ὅτι αὕτη ἡ γυνὴ πολλὰς βίβλους ἔγραψεν > οἶδα ταύτην τὴν νυνᾶκα πολλὰς βίβλους γράψασαν.

- ἤκουσα ὅτι χθὲς ἀφίκετο ὁ Περικλῆς.
- .....

- ὁρῶ ὅτι τάληθῆ λέγεις.
- .....

- ἴσμεν ὅτι οἱ πολέμιοι νικᾶν οὐ δύνανται.
- .....

- δεῖξω σοι ὅτι αὕτη ἡ πόλις μεγίστη ἐστίν.
- .....

- χθὲς ἐμάθομεν ὅτι οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἐκ τῶν νεῶν ἐξέβησαν.
- .....

- ἄρα οἶσθα ὅτι ὁ στρατηγὸς ἀπέθανε χθὲς;
- .....

2/ Now do the opposite: transform these participle clauses into ὅτι clauses:

- γιγνώσκομεν τὸν διδάσκαλον ἐν τῇ πόλει ὄντα.

.....

- δείξω σοι τοὺς φιλοσόφους ψευδοῦντας.

.....

- εἶδον τοὺς πολεμίους φεύγοντας.

.....

- ὀρῶ ἄνδρα τῷ μὲν νῶ οὐδὲν χρώμενον (Plato, *Phaedo*).

.....

3/ Write the verb given in brackets as a participle in the required tense, making it agree with the word in bold:

- μεταστρεφόμενος οὐδαμοῦ ὀρῶ **Σωκράτη** ..... (Plato, *Symposium*). [ἔπομαι, present]
- ὀρῶ δὲ καὶ **ἄλλους** τὰ αὐτὰ ..... (Plato, *Symposium*). [πάσχω, present]
- καὶ **με** ὡς εἶδον ..... ἐξ ἀπροσδοκίτου, εὐθὺς ἠσπάζοντο (Plato, *Charmides*). [εἴσειμι, present]
- οὐ γὰρ πώποτε εἶδον ..... **τὸ νῦν λεγόμενον** (Plato, *Respublica*). [γίγνομαι, aorist]
- οἶδα καὶ **ἄλλους** πάνυ ὄψε ..... (Plato, *Phaedo*). [πίνω, present]
- ἐπειδὴ ἐπύθετο **τὴν εἰρήνην** ..... , ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [γίγνομαι, perfect]

4/ Complete each sentence with a participle of one of these verbs writing the correct form so that it corresponds to the English sense (and make it agree with the word in bold):

σπεύδω / εἶμι / διαλέγομαι / διαφθείρω / διεξέρχομαι / προσελαύνω / εἰμί

- ἠδέως μὲν ἀκούω **Σωκράτους** [conversing] ..... (Plato, *Symposium*).
- ἐπειδὴ πυνθάνεται **Κῦρον** [advancing forward] ..... , ... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ἐπεὶ ἔγνω τῶν Ἀθηναίων **τὰ πράγματα** [having been destroyed] ..... , ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ὁ Ἀγησίλαος, ἐπεὶ ἔγνω **αὐτὸν** [hurrying] ..... , αὐτὸς ἐπὶ Δασκυλείου ἀπεπορεύετο (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- **σοῦ** ἀκούω οὕτω [narrating] ..... (Plato, *Theaetetus*).
- ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε **Κῦρον** ἐν Κιλικίᾳ [being] ..... , παρὰ βασιλέα ἀπὴλαυνεν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ταῦτα δὲ λέγων **θορόβου** ἤκουσε διὰ τῶν τάξεων [going] ..... (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

5/ Translate into Greek using a participle clause:

- You perceive that the children are laughing.

.....

- Do they know that she is abroad now?

.....

- They heard that you were writing a book.

.....

- Do you know that those sailors always win in battles?

.....

- Yesterday I got to know that they had given you a prize.

.....

### 3. Indirect command clauses

[129]

a/ Transform these direct commands into indirect introduced by *κελεύω*:

✧ Example: *γράφε βιβλον!* > *κελεύω σε βιβλον γράφειν.*

- *δεῦρο ἐλθέ!*

.....

- *εἰπέτε μοι τὴν ἀλήθειαν!*

.....

- *δός αὐτῇ τὴν βιβλον!*

.....

- *μάχεσθε ἀνδρείως!*

.....

- *βλέψατε πρὸς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν!*

.....

b/ Now do the opposite: transform these indirect commands into direct:

✧ Example: *σὺ κελεύεις με ἀνάξιον εἶναι βασιλείας* (Plutarch, *Artaxerxes*) > *ἴσθι ἀνάξιος βασιλείας!*

- *τότε ἐκέλευον σοὶ διδόναι τὰ ἀριστεῖα τοὺς στρατηγούς* (Plato, *Banquet*).

.....

- ὁ νόμος, ὃ Ἀγησίλαε, οὐκ ἀδελφὸν ἀλλ' υἱὸν βασιλέως βασιλεύειν κελεύει (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- .....

- Λύσανδρος ἀθροίσας τοὺς συμμάχους ἐκέλευσε βουλευέσθαι περὶ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- .....

- αἰσθόμενος δὲ Ἀγησίλαος, βοηθεῖν ἐκέλευσε τοὺς ἰππέας (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- .....

- διεκελεύσατο μὴτ' ἀποκτεῖναί τινα μὴτ' ... (Plutarch, *Marcellus*).
- .....

- σπουδάσαι ἡμᾶς διεκελεύσατο (Plato, *Theaetetus*).
- .....

- τοῖς δὲ ἡγεμόσι κτείνειν διεκελεύσατο τοὺς ἐντυγχάνοντας τῶν Ῥωμαίων (Polybius, *Historiae*).
- .....

## 4. Indirect question clauses

[130]

### a) Simple indirect questions

1/ Write the optional form that these interrogative words could have if used in an indirect question:

πῶς;	.....	πότε;	.....	τίνες;	.....
ποῦ;	.....	τίς;	.....	τίσι;	.....
ποῖ;	.....	τί;	.....	τίνος;	.....
πόθεν;	.....	τίνα;	.....	τίνας;	.....

2/ Transform these direct questions into indirect introduced by ἐρωτῶ :

✧ Example: τί ἐποίησας χθές; > ἐρωτῶ ὃ τι ἐποίησας χθές.

- ποῦ ἐγένετο ἡ μάχη;
- .....

- πόσους ἀνθρώπους ὄρας ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ;
- .....

- πῶς ἐδυνήθης πάντα ποιεῖν;
- .....



- ποῖος ἀνὴρ ἐστὶν ὁ Σωκράτης;
- .....

- εἰς τίνα χώραν εἰσέβαλον οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι;
- .....

3/ Now do the same, but introduce the indirect question by ἤρόμην and write the verb of the indirect question in the optative:

- ποῖ οὕτω ταχέως τρέχεις;
- .....

- πόθεν ἤκουσιν οὗτοι καὶ τίνες εἰσίν;
- .....

- πόσους ἀδελφούς ἔχεις;
- .....

- πόσαι γυναῖκές εἰσιν ἐν τῇ ἀκροπόλει;
- .....

- τίνος ἐστὶ ἀδελφὸς οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ;
- .....

- ἐν τίνι πόλει οἰκεῖς;
- .....

4/ Now do the opposite: transform these indirect questions into direct disregarding any introductory part:

✧ Example: οὐκ οἶδα ὅπως τοῦτο ἐποίησας > πῶς τοῦτο ἐποίησας;

- πρόαγε δὴ, καὶ σκόπει ἅμα ὅπου καθιζήσομεθα (Plato, *Phaedrus*).
- .....

- ὁπότεροι δὲ ἡμῶν ἔρχονται ἐπὶ ἄμεινον πράγμα, ἄδηλον παντὶ πλὴν ἢ τῷ θεῷ (Plato, *Apologia*).
- .....

- ἐκεῖνος οἶδε τίνα τρόπον οἱ νέοι διαφθείρονται καὶ τίνες οἱ διαφθείροντες αὐτούς (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- .....

- πόθεν δέ μοι σύ, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες, οἶσθα ὅποια καλὰ καὶ αἰσχρά; (Plato, *Hippias Major*).
- .....

- ἐγὼ μὲν οὐκ οἶδ' ὅστις ἄνθρωπος γεγένημαι (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- .....

- εἰ μὲν ὅ τι ἐστὶν ἐρωτᾶς, οὐκ οἶδα (Xenophon, *Symposium*).
- .....

5/ Read these sentences and, if possible (and indicate when it is not possible), change the verb of the indirect question into optative and change it into indicative if it is already in optative:

- ὁ δὲ ἤρετο ἦντινα ἐκάστη [τέχνη] ἔχοι ὠφελίαν (Plato, *Phaedrus*).
- .....

- ἐπεχείρησας σαυτὸν ἐπισκοπεῖν ὅστις εἴης; (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*). ✧ A consequence of the "know thyself."
- .....

- κρούσας τὴν θύραν εἶπε τῷ ὑπακούσαντι εἰσαγγεῖλαι ὅστις τε εἴη καὶ δι' ὅ τι κατάγεσθαι βούλοιο (Xenophon, *Symposium*).
- .....

- ... ὧν ἐγὼ οὔτε γένος ἔχω εἰπεῖν οὔτε ὀπόθεν ἐσῆλθον ἢ ὅποι ἀπεχώρησαν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- .....

- εἴ τινα βούλει ἐρωτᾶν ὄντινα πονηρότατον νομίζει εἶναι καὶ πλουσιώτατον, οὐδεὶς ἂν φήσειεν ἄλλον ἢ τοῦτον (Plato, *spuriā*).
- .....

- ὁ Κῦρος ἤρετο τί ἂν μάλιστα χαρίζοιο ποιῶν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- .....

## b) Double indirect questions

1/ Change these direct questions into indirect, using the structure βούλομαι εἰδέναι πότερον ..... ἢ οὐ:

✧ Example: ἄρα βίβλον ἔγραψας; > βούλομαι εἰδέναι πότερον βίβλον ἔγραψας ἢ οὐ.

- ἄρα τὴν ἀκρόπολιν εἶδες;
- .....

- ἄρα πολλοὺς πολεμίους ἀπέκτεινας;
- .....

- ἄρα τὴν πόλιν ἔσωσαν αἱ γυναῖκες;
- .....

- ἄρα ἤδη ἐπανῆλθε ὁ Περικλῆς;
- .....

2/ Write the verb of the indirect question in the correct form to reflect the English meaning (mind the tense!):

- ἦρετό με εἰ ἄγαμος ὁ Πάρις [was] ..... (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods* 20).
- οἱ Παφλαγόνες ἦροντο εἰ καὶ γυναῖκες [were fighting side by side] ..... αὐτοῖς (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).  
[use συμμάχομαι]    ✧ If you find the original sentence you will see something curious about the tense]
- ἦρετο γὰρ δὴ εἴ τις ἐμοῦ [was] ..... σοφώτερος (Plato, *Apologia*).
- σφόδρα πιέσας αὐτοῦ τὸν πόδα ἦρετο εἰ [he felt it] ..... (Plato, *Phaedo*). [use αἰσθάνομαι]  
[Socrates has already drunk the hemlock]
- ἐξῆν ὀρᾶν, εἶτε τι ὀρθῶς [was doing] ..... εἶτε τι [was erring] .....  
(Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [use πράττομαι and ἀμαρτάνω]  
✧ If you find the original sentence you will see something curious about the tense]

3/ Work backwards and find the original question, disregarding the introductory part:

- ✧ Example: ἐρωτᾷ πότερον βούλεται εἰρήνην ἢ πόλεμον ἔχειν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).  
> πότερον βούλει εἰρήνην ἢ πόλεμον ἔχειν;

- οὗτος ἐρωτᾷ εἰ οὐδὲν δίκαιον οἶμαι εἶναι ἐν τοῖς ἀνθρώποις (Plato, *Cratylus*).
- .....

- προσήκει σκοπεῖν, πότερον ἀγαθὰ ἢ κακὰ ἐστὶ τὰ πεπραγμένα (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- .....

- ἐξετάσωμεν τὰ ἔργα ἑκατέρου αὐτῶν, ἵνα εἰδῶμεν πότερον τὰ αὐτὰ ἐστὶν ἢ διαφέρει τι (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- .....

- δίδωμι ὑμῖν βουλευσασθαι εἶτε βούλεσθε πολεμεῖν ἡμῖν εἶτε φίλοι εἶναι (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- .....

- πάλιν δὲ ἐρωτώμενος ἡ ἀνδρεία πότερον εἶη διδακτὸν ἢ φυσικόν, ... (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- .....

## 5. Subordinate clauses in indirect speech

[131]

### a) Introductory verb in primary tense (i.e. present, future or perfect)

1/ Change these compound sentences into indirect speech, introduced by νομίζω :

- ✧ Example: ὁ νεανίας ταχέως τοῦτο ποιήσει, ὁπότεν κελεύης  
> νομίζω τὸν νεανίαν ταχέως τοῦτο ποιήσῃν, ὁπότεν κελεύῃς.

- οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι νικήσουσιν ἐὰν μάχωνται.
- .....

- ὁ παῖς ἀναγνώσεται ἅτινα ἢ μήτηρ κελεύῃ ἄν.
- .....

- αἱ γυναῖκες τοὺς φύλακας ἐκβαλοῦσιν ἐπειδὰν εἰς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν εἰσίσωσιν.
- .....

- οἱ μαθηταὶ πολλὰ μανθάνουσιν ὁπότεν βίβλους ἀναγιγνώσκουσιν.
- .....

2/ Rewrite these sentences into direct speech after removing the introductory verb οἶμαι :

- οἶμαί με τὸν θεὸν οὐκ ἐὰν διαλέγεσθαί σοι, ὃν ἐγὼ περιέμενον (Plato, *Alcibiades*).
- .....

- οἶμαι γὰρ σε ἀκηκόεσθαι ἐν τοῖς συμποσίοις ἀδόντων ἀνθρώπων τοῦτο τὸ σκολιόν (Plato, *Gorgias*).
- .....

- ὑποχέριοι δὲ μηδέποτε γενόμεθα ζῶντες τοῖς πολεμίοις, οἶμαι γὰρ ἂν ἡμᾶς τοιαῦτα παθεῖν οἷα τοὺς ἐχθροὺς οἱ θεοὶ ποιήσειαν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- .....

### b) Introductory verb in secondary tense (i.e. imperfect, aorist or pluperfect)

1/ Change the same sentences from the previous exercise (1/) into indirect speech, but now introduced by ἐνόμιζον, changing the subjunctives into optatives:

- ✧ Example: ὁ νεανίας ταχέως τοῦτο ποιήσει, ὁπότεν κελεύῃς  
> ἐνόμιζον τὸν νεανίαν ταχέως τοῦτο ποιήσειν, ὁπότε κελεύοις.

- οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι νικήσουσιν ἂν μάχωνται.
- .....

- ὁ παῖς ἀναγνώσεται ἅτινα ἢ μήτηρ κελεύῃ ἄν.
- .....

- αἱ γυναῖκες τοὺς φύλακας ἐκβαλοῦσιν ἐπειδὴν εἰς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν εἰσίσωσιν.
- .....

- οἱ μαθηταὶ πολλὰ μανθάνουσιν ὅποταν βίβλους ἀναγιγνώσκωσιν.
- .....

2/ Read these sentences and answer the questions:

- οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι, ἂν μὴ τις αὐτοῖς χρήματα **διδῶ** (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

Could the conditional clause have been moved into εἰ + optative? Why?

.....

- ὁ δ' ὑπέσχετο ἀνδρὶ ἐκάστῳ δώσειν πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς, διότι εὐ **ἐμαχίσαντο** (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

Could **ἐμαχέσαντο** have been written in optative? Why?

.....

- ὁ δὲ Μειδίας εἶπεν ὅτι ἔλθοι ἂν εἰς λόγους, εἰ ὁμήρους **λάβοι** (Xenophon, *Hellenica*)

Could **λάβοι** have been written in subjunctive or indicative? Why?     ✧ Be careful! It's more difficult than it seems!

.....

- ἔφασαν οὐκ ἂν θαυμάζειν εἰ καὶ **πεμψείη** τις Λακεδαιμονίων (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

Try to write this sentence as direct speech after removing **ἔφασαν**.

.....

Moreover, there is something very unusual about the **οὐκ** in this sentence; can you see what it is?

.....

- εἶπεν ὅτι γελοῖον εἶη, εἰ οὕτως **ἔχοι** (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

Try to write this sentence as direct speech after removing **εἶπεν ὅτι**.

.....

## f) Verbal adjectives

### 1. Ending in -τέος, -τέα, -τέον

[132]

#### a) Formation and meaning

1/ Link each verbal adjective with its meaning and state from what verb it comes:

MUST BE SAVED / MUST BE THROWN / MUST BE TAKEN / MUST BE ANNOUNCED / MUST BE DONE / MUST BE CROSSED / MUST BE CARRIED  
/ MUST BE GONE TO / MUST BE TRUSTED / MUST BE LISTENED TO / MUST BE GUARDED / MUST BE SAID

<i>Verbal adjective</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>It comes from...</i>
ληπτέος	.....	.....
διαβατέος	.....	.....
ἀκουστέος	.....	.....
φυλακτέος	.....	.....
ιτέος	.....	.....
ἀγγελτέος	.....	.....
πιστευτέος	.....	.....
σωστέος	.....	.....
οιστέος	.....	.....
πρακτέος	.....	.....
βλητέος	.....	.....
ρήτέος/ λεκτέος	.....	.....

2/ Trying not to consult the previous table, form the verbal -τέος adjectives from the verbs below:

λαμβάνω	.....	ἀγγέλλω	.....	σφίζω	.....
εἶμι	.....	φέρω	.....	φυλάττω	.....
πράττω	.....	ἀκούω	.....	βάλλω	.....
διαβαίνω	.....	πιστεύω	.....	λέγω	.....

**b) Use**

1/ Write the verbal adjective in -τέος, -α, -ον in the correct form and translate the sentence:

- εὐρήσομεν, ὡς ἐγϕ̄μαι, ἃ ..... (Plato, *Respublica*). [λέγω]
- πρῶτον μὲν δῆπου ..... ἂν εἴη κατάλογος (Plato, *Leges*). [καταλέγω]
- οὐ τὸ ζῆν περὶ πλείστου ..... ἀλλὰ τὸ εὖ ζῆν (Plato, *Crito*). [ποιέω]
- γινώσκων δὲ ὅτι εἰ μὴ ἰππικὸν ἰκανὸν κτήσαιτο, οὐ δυνήσοιτο κατὰ τὰ πεδία στρατεύεσθαι, ἔγνω τοῦτο ..... εἶναι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [κατασκευάζω]
- ἔστι γάρ τις λόγος ἀληθής, πολλακίς μὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ καὶ πρόσθεν ῥηθείς, ἔοικεν δ' οὖν εἶναι καὶ νῦν ..... (Plato, *Epistulae*). [λέγω]

2/ The same again with these sentences, but moreover add the agent of the verbal adjective as requested:

- ..... δὴ οὗτος ὁ λόγος ..... ἐστίν (Plato, *Gorgias*). [ἐξελέγχω] [by us]
- οἶμαι τὰ μὲν τοιαῦτα ..... καὶ ..... (Plato, *Phaedrus*). [ἔάω] [συγγινώσκω] [by the speaker]
- ἐὰν δέ τις κατὰ τι κακὸς γίγνηται, ..... ἐστί (Plato, *Gorgias*). [κολάζω] [by you]
- ἡ πόλις ..... ἐστίν ..... (Plato, *Leges*). [παραδίδωμι] [by us]
- ἄρ' οὖν οὐ πανταχοῦ ταῦτα ..... (Plato, *Respublica*). [διώκω] [by the young people]

3/ Write the verbal adjective in the neuter singular form:

- διώριζε δὲ τούτων ἅ τε πρὸς τοὺς φίλους ..... καὶ ἅ πρὸς ἐχθρούς (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*). [ποιέω]
- ὁ δὲ Δερκυλίδας ἐπειδὴ ἔγνω ..... ὄν, ... (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [μένω]
- ταύτην τὴν πρᾶξιν ..... (Plato, *Protagoras*). [πράττω]

Why must the verbal adjective in these sentences be in the neuter gender? In other words: what is the difference with respect to the sentences of the 1<sup>st</sup> exercise?

.....

4/ Rewrite the 1<sup>st</sup> and 4<sup>th</sup> sentences of Exercise 2/ in the impersonal way:

.....

5/ Translate these sentences into Greek using -τέος, -α, -ον adjectives:

- We must not cross this river.

- This must be done by you immediately.

- I must write a letter.

- We must send the letter.

- He must carry these books to Athens.

- This must not be said.

## 2. Ending in -τός, -τή, -τόν

[133]

### a) Formation and meaning

1/ Link each verbal adjective with its meaning and state from what verb it comes:

EDUCATED / SENT / UNKNOWN / VISIBLE / SAID / CAN BE TAUGHT / RELIABLE / DONE / CROSSABLE

<i>Verbal adjective</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>It comes from...</i>
πεμπτός	.....	.....
όρατός	.....	.....
άγνωστος	.....	.....
διαβατός	.....	.....
παιδευτός	.....	.....
ποιητός	.....	.....
πιστευτός	.....	.....



ρήτὸς .....  
 διδασκτὸς .....

2/ Trying not to consult the previous table, form the verbal -τός adjectives from the same verbs:

διαβαίνω .....	ἀγνοέω .....	πέμπω .....
παιδεύω .....	πιστεύω .....	λέγω .....
ὀράω .....	ποιέω .....	διδάσκω .....

### b) Use

1/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the usage of the -τός -τή, -τόν adjective:

- πῦρ δὲ καὶ ὕδωρ καὶ γῆ καὶ ἀήρ ὀρατὰ γέγονεν (Plato, *Timaeus*).
- ὑπερβατὸν ἦν τὸ περιτείχισμα (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- κατὰ μὲν οὖν τὴν ὄψιν ἀγνωστος ἦν διὰ τὸ σκότος (Polybius, *Historiae*).
- πιστὸς δὲ τῇ πόλει γεγένημαι (Xenophon, *Symposium*).
- τοῦτο δὲ ὀρατον, πῦρ δὲ καὶ ὕδωρ καὶ γῆ καὶ ἀήρ σώματα πάντα ὀρατὰ γέγονεν (Plato, *Timaeus*).

2/ Explain why we have διδασκτὸν in the 1<sup>st</sup> sentence and why we have διδασκτὸς in the 2<sup>nd</sup> one:

- πότερον δὲ σοι, ἔφη, δοκεῖ εἶναι διδασκτὸν ἢ ἀρετὴ ἢ ἔμφυτον; (Plato, *spuria*).
- .....

- τυγχάνει ἢ ἀρετὴ διδασκτὸς οὐσα (Plato, *spuria*).
- .....

3/ Write the verbal adjective in -τός, -ή, -όν in the necessary form:

- πάντες γὰρ οἱ ποταμοὶ τοῖς πρὸς τὰς πηγὰς προσιοῦσι ..... γίνονται (Xenophon, *Anabasis*). [διαβαίνω]
- αὐτὸ ἠγοῦμαι οὐ ..... εἶναι (Plato, *Protagoras*). [διδάσκω]
- ἀλλ' ἔστιν αἰδῆ τὰ τοιαῦτα καὶ οὐχ .....; (Plato, *Phaedo*). [ὀράω]
- ὁ γὰρ Ἀσωπὸς ποταμὸς ἐρρῆν μέγας καὶ οὐ ῥαδίως ..... ἦν (Thucydides, *Historiae*). [διαβαίνω]
- αὐτοὶ οἱ βασιλεῖς σὺν τοῖς ..... στάντες ἐπὶ τὰς εἰσόδους αὐτοὶ ἐμάχοντο (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).  
 [πιστεύω, and put it in the superlative]

- ..... δὲ γλῶσσαν καὶ ὠμοφάγοι εἰσὶν, ὡς λέγονται (Thucydides, *Historiae*).  
[ἀγνοέω, and put it in the superlative]

4/ Translate these sentences into Greek using -τός, -ή, -όν adjectives:

- We can cross this river.

.....

- I think that wisdom can be taught.

.....

- It rains, the ship is not visible from here.

.....

- Do not worry, this is already done.

.....

- You are unknown in Athens.

.....

- She is an educated woman.

.....

## g) Combination of negatives

### 1. Negatives cancelling or reinforcing each other?

[134]

a/ For each pair, observe both sentences and answer the questions:

- εἰς μάχην μὲν γὰρ οὐδὲ ἤλπισεν ἐπεξιέναι οὐδένα (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

εἰς μάχην μὲν γὰρ οὐδένα ἤλπισεν οὐκ ἐπεξιέναι.

▷ In which sentence is it said that he hoped everybody to go to battle? .....

- οὐκ ἀπέκτεινε δὲ οὐδένα (Antiphon, *Tetralogia*).

οὐδένα οὐκ ἀπέκτεινε.

▷ In which sentence is it said that he killed everybody? .....

- οὐκ ἄρ' οὐδεὶς σ' ἠδίκηει (Euripides, *Cyclops*).

οὐδεὶς ἄρ' οὐ σ' ἠδίκηει.

▷ In which sentence is it said that nobody harmed him? .....

- τούτων οὐδεὶς οὐκ ἀπεῖπεν πώποτε, οὐκ ἐκώλυσε (Demosthenes, *Contra Eubulidem*).

τούτων οὐκ ἀπεῖπεν οὐδεὶς πώποτε, οὐκ ἐκώλυσε οὐδεὶς.

▷ In which sentence is it said that nobody prevented him? .....

- οὐκ οἶδεν οὐδεὶς (Euripides, *Ion*).

οὐδεὶς οὐκ οἶδεν.

▷ In which sentence is it said that everybody knows it? .....

b/ Put the negatives given in brackets in the correct order so that the sentence means what is indicated in English:

- ..... ἐβούλετο τοῦτον ὁμοιοκέναι τὸν ὄρκον ..... τῶν αὐτοῦ συμμάχων  
(Demosthenes, *De Falsa Legatione*). [οὐ, οὐδένα]

Nobody wanted to swear.

- ..... ἔστιν ὅστις ἂν μέμψαιτό σε (< Euripides, *Electra*). [οὐ, οὐδεῖς]

Everybody would blame you.

- ..... ἔστιν ..... σοι πατήρ θνητῶν (Euripides, *Ion*). [οὐ, οὐδεῖς]

No mortal is your father.

- ὡς σὺ λέγεις, ..... ἀνθρώπων φιλοκερδῆς ..... ἔστιν (< Plato, *Hipparchus*). [οὐ, οὐδεῖς]

Everybody loves money.

- ..... εἶδον οὕτως ἄνδρ' ἄγροικον (< Aristophanes, *Clouds*). [οὐδαμοῦ, οὐ]

They saw him everywhere.

◇

- τοῦτο δ' ..... φαίνεται ..... (Aristoteles, *De Caelo*). [οὐδαμοῦ, οὐ, οὐδέποτε]

It's impossible to see this.

- ..... θησαυρὸν ..... εὕρηκα (< Theophrastus, *Characteres*). [οὐ, οὐδέποτε]

I am rich.

- ἰχθυῶς ..... ἐνῆν φαγεῖν (< Athenaeus, *Deipnosophistae*). [οὐ, οὐδενί]

Everybody ate fish.

- ..... γὰρ ἔστιν ..... κενὴν εὐρεῖν χώραν (Galenus, *De Naturalibus Facultatibus*). [οὐδέποτε, οὐ]

All places are crowded everywhere.

c/ Here we have sentences with compound negatives in combination. Read them and answer the questions:

- **οὐδεὶς οὐκέτι** ἐτόλμα αὐτὸν ἐπερωτῆσαι (*Evangelium secundum Marcum*).

▷ Did anybody dare to ask him? .....

- **οὐδεὶς γὰρ οὐτε** ἀμαθία ἀναγκάζεται αὐτὸ δρᾶν, **οὐτε** φόβῳ (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

▷ Are all men compelled to do that? .....

- καὶ γὰρ **οὐδὲ** ἐφαίνετο **οὐτ'** ἐπὶ τοῦ τείχους **οὐδεὶς οὐτε** κατὰ πύλας ἐξήει, κεκλημμένοι τε ἦσαν **πᾶσαι** (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

▷ Was it possible to see anybody? .....

- ἄλλος **οὐδεὶς** ἦν ἐν τῷ τείχει **οὐτε** δοῦλος **οὐτ'** ἐλεύθερος (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

▷ Who was there? .....



- οὔτε γὰρ ἠδικήσαμεν οὐδένα (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

▷ Who was hurt? .....

- ... οὔτε πόλιν οὔτε ἰδιώτην οὐδένα (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

▷ Any city? Any citizen? .....

- φεύγομεν οὐδένα οὐδαμοῦ αἰτιασόμενοι (Themistocles, *Epistulae*).

▷ Where will we blame somebody? .....

- ἀκούει δ' οὐδὲν οὐδεὶς οὐδενός (Euripides, *Cyclops*).

▷ Was it very noisy? .....

d/ Translate into Greek using *doble negatives*:

- I do not want to see anything.

.....

- I want to see everything.      ✧ *You will have to modify the structure of the English sentence.*

.....

- I have not seen him anywhere.

.....

- I have seen him everywhere.      ✧ *You will have to modify the structure of the English sentence.*

.....

## 2. Other combinations of negatives side by side

[135]

### a) οὐ μή

1/ The following sentences have verbs that accompany the οὐ μή in the subjunctive. Read them and answer the questions:

- εὖ ἐπίστασθε, ἔφη, ὧ ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, ὅτι οὐ μή ἐπιλάθωμαι ὑμῶν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

▷ Will I remember you? .....

- οὐ μὴ παύσωμαι φιλοσοφῶν (Plato, *Apologia*).

▷ Do I like philosophy? .....

- οὐ μὴ ποτε κτησώμεθα ἱκανῶς οὐ̄ ἐπιθυμοῦμεν (Plato, *Phaedo*).

▷ Do we want even more? .....

- οὐ μὴ ποτέ τις αὐτοῖς ἄλλος εἰς τὴν γῆν ἔλθῃ (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

▷ Will they be invaded? .....

- ἐὰν γὰρ τοὺς φίλους κρατῆς εὖ ποιῶν, οὐ μὴ σοι δύνωνται ἀντέχειν οἱ πολέμοι (Xenophon, *Hiero*).

▷ Will you defeat your enemies? .....

2/ The following sentences have verbs that accompany the οὐ μὴ in the future indicative. Read them and answer the questions:

- ἀλλὰ θάρρει, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐ μὴ σε κρύψω πρὸς ὄντινα βούλομαι ἀφικέσθαι (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).

▷ Will I give you the information? .....

- ὦ θύγατερ, οὐ μὴ μῦθον εἰς πολλοὺς ἐρεῖς; (Euripides, *Supplikes*).

▷ What do I want you to do? .....

- ταῦτα δὲ οὐ μὴ ποτε κτήσεται ἄνευ πολλῆς πραγματείας (Plato, *Phaedrus*).

▷ Will it be easy to obtain these things? .....

- οὐ μὴ λαλήσεις (Aristophanes, *Nubes*).

▷ Express this as an imperative: .....

- οὗτος μὲν οὐ μὴ σοι ποιήσει ζημίαν (Aristophanes, *Pax*).

▷ Will he be nice to you? .....

3/ Translate into Greek using οὐ μὴ :

- (There is no fear) that they may flee.

.....

- (There is no way) that they may capture the city.

.....

- You shall not go to Athens!

.....

- Do not give him the book!      ✧ *You will have to modify the structure of the English sentence.*

.....

## b) μή οὐ

1/ Change the meaning of these sentences by removing the initial negative word in bold and making any other necessary changes:

- οὐ γάρ τις οὕτω παῖδας εὖ παιδεύεται, ὥστ' ἐκ πονηρῶν μή οὐ κακοὺς πεφυκέσθαι (Euripides, *fragmenta*).

.....

- οὐδ' ἐθέλω προλιπεῖν τόδε, μή οὐ τὸν ἐμὸν στενάχειν πατέρ' ἄθλιον (Sophocles, *Electra*).

.....

- νῦν μὲν, ὦ Ἀλέξανδρε, οὐκ ἂν ἔξαρνος γένοιτο μή οὐκ ἐμὸς υἱὸς εἶναι (Lucian, *Dialogi Mortuorum*).

.....

- τὸν δ' οὖν Ὀδυσσεά μή οὐχὶ μισεῖν οὐκ ἂν δυναίμην, ὦ Ἀγαμέμνον, οὐδ' εἰ αὐτῇ μοι ἡ Ἀθηναῖα τοῦτο ἐπιτάττοι (Lucian, *Dialogi Mortuorum*).

.....

2/ In these sentences, what previous word with negative sense makes that unnecessary οὐ (only the one in bold type) be there?

- δήμου τε αὖ ἄρχοντος ἀδύνατα μή οὐ κακότητα ἐγγίγνεσθαι (Herodotus, *Historiae*).

- ἦν δέ τις παῖς ποτε πλιγὰς λαβὼν ὑπ' ἄλλου κατείπει πρὸς τὸν πατέρα, αἰσχρὸν ἐστὶ μή οὐκ ἄλλας πλιγὰς ἐμβάλλειν τῷ υἱεῖ (Xenophon, *De Republica Lacedaemoniorum*)      ✧ Poor Spartan children!

- πείσομαι γὰρ οὐ τοσοῦτον οὐδὲν ὥστε μή οὐ καλῶς θανεῖν (Sophocles, *Antigone*).

3/ Observe this sentence:

- δέδιμεν μή οὐ βέβαιοι ἦτε (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

▷ Why do we have the two negatives in this sentence?

.....

▷ What do we fear?

.....

4/ Translate into Greek:

- (There is some chance) that we do not see the speakers in the agora.
- .....

- (There is some chance) that he does not give us the money back.
- .....

- It is not unfair not to tell him about this.
- .....

- It is not nice not to receive him in our house.
- .....



## h) The use of particles

### 1. (unapplied in this book)

### 2. Most common particles

[136]

Although the translation of Greek particles into English may depend on the context, try to link each one with its approximate meaning:

NO DOUBT / BE SURE / THEREFORE NOT / INDEED / PROBABLY / AND YET / HOWEVER / AND NEVERTHELESS / BUT / FOR / AND MOREOVER / THEREFORE / AT LEAST / THEREFORE / ALSO / NOW THEN

καὶ δὴ καὶ .....	τοίνυν .....	καίτοι .....
γε .....	δέ .....	δή .....
δήπου .....	οὐκοῦν .....	μέντοι .....
γάρ .....	οὐ̅ν .....	καὶ γάρ .....
οὐ μὴν ἀλλά .....	καί .....	
οὐ̅κουν .....	ἢ μὴν .....	

#### a) δέ

1/ The particle δέ has been elided from these sentences; replace it where you think it should go:

- ὁ στρατηγὸς τοὺς πολεμίους διώκει, οἱ πολέμιοι φεύγουσιν.

.....

- ἄγγελον πρὸς τὴν οἰκίαν πέμπουσιν, σὺ διώκεις τὸν ἄγγελον.

.....

- φοβούμενοι τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ ἄκοντες ὅμως οἱ πολλοὶ δι' αἰσχύνην καὶ ἀλλήλων καὶ Κύρου συνηκολούθησαν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

.....

2/ Translate into Greek using the particle δέ :

- The slave does not take the horse, and the horse runs towards the field.

.....

- The teacher teaches myths, but the gods offer money.
- .....

### b) μέν - δέ

1/ The particles μέν - δέ have been elided from these sentences; replace them where you think they should go:

- ἡ εἰρήνη ἀναγκαία ἐστίν, τὸ ἀργύριον οὐ.
- .....

- ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ πόλεμον ποιεῖ, ὁ ἰατρὸς ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ ἐσθίει.
- .....

- τῷ διδασκάλῳ οἶνον παρέχω, τῇ κόρῃ βίβλον.
- .....

- ἐνίστε οἱ σύμμαχοι τοῖς Ἀθηναίοις βοηθοῦσιν, ἐνίστε λείπουσιν.
- .....

- καὶ τέλος πείθει με τοὺς οἰκέτας πάντας ἐν τῇ Μέμφιδι καταλιπεῖν, αὐτὸν μόνον ἀκολουθεῖν μετ' αὐτοῦ  
(Lucian, *Philopseudeis*).
- .....

- ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα πολλοὶ ἐδάκρυσαν, πάντες ἐψησίσαντο βοηθεῖν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- .....

2/ In the next sentence, two pairs of particles μέν - δέ have been elided; the second pair depend on the first δέ :

- Περίνθιοι εἰσεδέξαντο εἰς τὸ ἄστυ τὸ στρατόπεδον· Σηλυμβριανοὶ ἐδέξαντο οὐ, χρήματα ἔδοσαν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- .....

3/ Translate into Greek using the particles μέν - δέ : (mind which two elements you are contrasting)

- Gods live in the sky, while men live in the house.
- .....

- In war, gods show (the) victory and the general pursues the enemies.
- .....

- They send a messenger towards the river, but the army towards the sea.
- .....

- Sometimes he kills the enemies, sometimes he honours them.
- .....

### c) γάρ

1/ The particle γάρ has been elided from these sentences; replace it where you think it should go:

- ὁ πόλεμος ἀπροσδόκητος οὐκ ἔστιν, οἱ σύμμαχοι πρὸς τὴν χώραν βαίνουσιν.
- .....

- ὁ ἰατρός πολλοὺς ἰατρεῦει, σοφὸς ἔστιν.
- .....

2/ Translate into Greek using the particle γάρ :

- I don't walk towards the river, as I guard the house.
- .....

- You and I are wise, for the teacher is wise.
- .....

### d) οὖν

1/ The particle οὖν has been elided from these sentences; replace it where you think it should go:

- ὁ διδάσκαλος σοφὸς ἔστιν· τοὺς υἱοὺς εὖ παιδεύει.
- .....

- οἱ θεοὶ ἀγαθοὶ εἰσιν· οἱ ἄνθρωποι τοῖς θεοῖς καρποὺς παρέχουσιν.
- .....

2/ Translate into Greek using the particle οὖν :

- We always send the allies to the war; therefore, the allies make the battles.
- .....

- The army walks into the country; therefore, the country is free.
- .....

**e) καί**

1/ The particle καί, with the meaning of ALSO, has been elided from these sentences; replace it where you think it should go (some help is offered in brackets):

- ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ τιμὴν ἔχει. [Not only abroad.]
- .....

- οἱ πολῖται ἔχουσι τὴν τῆς θαλάττης ἀρχήν. [They have a lot of things!]
- .....

- αἱ Ἀθῆναι καλαί εἰσιν, καλὴ δὲ ἡ Σπάρτη ἐστίν. [Not only Athens is nice.]
- .....

2/ Translate into Greek using the particle καί :

- I have many good friends.
- .....

- I see also my friend.
- .....

- Also the presents of the gods are good.
- .....

**f) τε - καί**

1/ The particles τε - καί have been elided from these sentences; replace them where you think they should go:

- κελεύω τοὺς στρατιῶτας φέρειν τὰ ὅπλα τὸ ἀργύριον.
- .....

- τὴν σοφίαν τὴν ἀρετὴν θαυμάζομεν.
- .....

- πείθω τοὺς φίλους τοὺς συμμάχους μάχεσθαι.
- .....

2/ Translate into Greek using the particles τε - καί :

- I have both sisters and brothers.
- .....

- Both the teacher and the students are in the school.
- .....

- you (sing.) always lie and drink wine.
- .....

### g) γε

1/ The particle γε has been elided from these sentences; replace it where you think it should go (some help is offered in brackets):

- τάδε μέντοι ὁμολογῶ ἐγὼ τούτῳ (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [At least, about this!]
- .....

- νίκη δ' ὑμῖν ἔσται, ὥς μοι δοκεῖ (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [Maybe I'm the only one who thinks so.]
- .....

2/ Translate into Greek using the particle γε :

- I admire this man, at least as sailor.
- .....

- I at least won in the battle, you fled.
- .....

### h) δῆ

1/ The particle δῆ has been elided from these sentences; replace it where you think it should go:

- καὶ ἐγώ, ἔφη, καὶ σὺ πολλὰ τοῦ ἀρέσκειν ἔνεκα τῇ πόλει καὶ εἶπομεν καὶ ἐπράξαμεν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- .....

- Θηραμένης μὲν οὕτως ἀπέθανεν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [Yes, Theramenes.]
- .....

- σὺ γὰρ ἐν μὲν τῇ δημοκρατίᾳ πάντως μισοδημότατος ἐνομίζου (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [Yes, you.]
- .....

2/ Translate into Greek using the particle δῆ :

- Then indeed he decided to fight.
- .....

- No doubt he is the fastest of all runners.
- .....

### i) δήπου

1/ The particle *δήπου* has been elided from these sentences; replace it where you think it should go:

- καλλίστη μὲν γὰρ δοκεῖ πολιτεία εἶναι ἢ Λακεδαιμονίων (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [At least from the outside]
- .....

- οἶσθα δὲ ὅτι καὶ βασιλεὺς ὁ Περσῶν πλουσιώτατος ἀνθρώπων ἐστίν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [Maybe you know it?]
- .....

2/ Translate into Greek using the particle *δήπου* :

- Probably he knows that Pericles is in the city.
- .....

- Probably we must go to Athens.
- .....

### j) δῆτα

1/ The particle *δῆτα* has been elided from these sentences; replace it where you think it should go:

- οὐ, ἔφη (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- .....

- ἐσπέρας, μάλα γε ὄψε ἀφικόμενος ἐξ Οἰνός (Plato, *Protagoras*). [Yes, during the evening.]
- .....

2/ Translate into Greek using the particle *δῆτα* :

- Certainly not, he said.
- .....

- Certainly, it seems that the students want to read that book.
- .....

**κ) ἤ μήν**

1/ The combination ἤ μήν has been elided from these sentences; replace it where you think it should go:

- ἐγὼ ἔπαθόν τι τοιοῦτον (Plato, *Apologia*).

.....

- ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας, πολλά γέ μοί ἐστι τοιαῦτα συγγεγραμμένα (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*). ✧ ἔφη can't begin a sentence.

.....

2/ Translate into Greek using the particles ἤ μήν :

- I assure you that I have a lot of books.

.....

- Take for granted that the Athenians will conquer the Persians.

.....

**λ) καίτοι**

1/ The particle καίτοι has been elided from these sentences; replace it where you think it should go:

- ἐλεύθερον εἶναι ἐγὼ μὲν οἶμαι ἀντάξιον εἶναι τῶν πάντων χρημάτων (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

.....

- οὐκ ἄπειρός γε αὐτῶν ἦν (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).

.....

2/ Translate into Greek using the particle καίτοι :

- And yet he is our best soldier.

.....

- And yet students always arrive late.

.....

**μ) μέντοι**

1/ The particle μέντοι has been elided from these sentences; replace it where you think it should go:

- τὰς ναῦς παρέδωσαν Λυσάνδρῳ (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [Yes, the ships.]

.....

- κάκεϊνος προθύμως ὅπερ ἐδείθη ὁ Κῦρος ἔπραξεν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). [Yes, he himself.]
- .....

2/ Translate into Greek using the particle μέντοι :

- But certainly the teacher taught how they had to do this.
- .....
- However, after saying this to the assembly, he left the city.
- .....

### η) μήν (οὐ μήν ἀλλά)

1/ The combination οὐ μήν ἀλλά has been elided from these sentences; replace it where you think it should go:

- φιλοτίμως πρὸς ἀλλήλους εἶχον, περὶ καλλίστων ἐν ἐκείνοις τοῖς χρόνοις ἐφιλονίκησαν (Isocrates, *Panegyricus*).
- .....
- καίπερ τούτων οὕτως ἐχόντων, ἃ νομίζω εἶναι δίκαια, ἐρῶ πρὸς ὑμᾶς (Demosthenes, *Contra Eubulidem*).
- .....

2/ Translate into Greek using the combination οὐ μήν ἀλλά :

- This is difficult; and nevertheless I'll try to do it.
- .....
- He betrayed the city; and nevertheless the citizens praised him.
- .....

### ο) οὐκοῦν

1/ The particle οὐκοῦν has been elided from these sentences; replace it where you think it should go:

- ἔφη ὁ Φαρνάβαζος, ἀπλῶς ὑμῖν ἀποκρίνομαι ἅπερ ποιήσω (Xenophon, *Hellenica*). ✧ ἔφη can't begin a sentence.
- οἱ δὲ ναῦται δῆλον ὅτι ἔσονται ἢ εἴλωτες ἢ μισθοφόροι. ὑμεῖς μὲν τούτων ἠγήσεσθε (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

2/ Translate into Greek using the particle οὐκοῦν :

- These books are excellent; therefore, we must read them.
- .....



- He is a good man; therefore, you must praise him.
- .....

### p) οὐκουν

1/ The particle οὐκουν has been elided from these sentences; replace it where you think it should go:

- αἰσχύνῃ οὕτω μώρως ἐξαπατώμενος; (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- .....

- καὶ Θηβαῖοι εὐεργετούμενοι ἡγεμονεύειν αὐτῶν ἔδωκαν Ἀθηναίοις; (Xenophon, *De Vectigalibus*).
- .....

2/ Translate into Greek using the particle οὐκουν :

- The Athenians fight well; therefore, we must not fight against them.
- .....

- You are right; therefore, I can't say that you lie.
- .....

### q) τοίνυν

1/ The particle τοίνυν has been elided from these sentences; replace it where you think it should go:

- λέγε, ἔφη, αὐτῷ, ὦ Κέβης, τάλιθῃ (Plato, *Phaedo*). [Speak, then!]
- .....

- ἔστι τὸ μὲν τοῖς θεοῖς προσφιλὲς ὄσιον, τὸ δὲ μὴ προσφιλὲς ἀνόσιον (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- .....

2/ Translate into Greek using the particle τοίνυν :

- Now then, let's do this now quickly.
- .....

- Therefore, what you have done is good for the city.
- .....

## i) Hellenisms: peculiarities and idioms

### 1. (unapplied in this book)

### 2. Non-verbal expressions

[137]

#### a) Adverbs or prepositions involved

1/ Match the following expressions with their meanings:

THOSE OVER THERE / PEOPLE OF THOSE TIMES / PEOPLE OF OLD TIMES / PEOPLE OF NOWADAYS / THE GOVERNMENT

οἱ τότε .....	οἱ ἐν τέλει .....
οἱ νῦν .....	οἱ πάλαι .....
οἱ ἐκεῖ .....	

2/ Read these sentences:

- οἱ ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ παῖδες τὸν διδάσκαλον θεῶνται.
- αἱ ἐκ τῆς οἰκίας πάρθενοι πρὸς τὰς Ἀθῆνας ἔρχονται.
- τοὺς ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ στρατιῶτας ἀποκτείνουσιν οἱ πολέμιοι.
- καὶ ταῦτας [τὰς ἀμάξας] τότε οἱ σὺν βασιλεῖ διήρπασαν (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- οἱ τε Πελοποννήσιοι ἐπικαταβάντες τοὺς ἐν τῷ ποταμῷ μάλιστα ἔσφαζον (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- συνήγαγε στρατιώτας καὶ ἐκ τῶν ἐν τῇ ἠπειρῷ Ἑλληνίδων πόλεων (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

3/ Translate into Greek using the parenthetical construction for the words in italics:

- *The weapons that are in the house* are nice.
- .....

- *The goddesses that go towards the Olympus* bring presents for the Sun.
- .....

- *The soldiers that come from the battle* want to sleep.
- .....

4/ Using the Greek sentence as a model, translate the English one into Greek:

- τοὺς ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἀνθρώπους μισοῦσιν οἱ ἰατροί.

The assembly hates the soldiers who are in the triremes.

.....

- οἱ νῦν πρὸς τὰς Ἀθήνας βαίνοντες δῶρα φέρουσιν.

The children that go now towards the school carry books.

.....

- διὰ τί τοῦτο τοῖς ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ δίδωσ;

Why do they give this to those who are in the lawcourt?

.....

- τί ποιοῦσι αἱ ἐκ τῆς οἰκίας;

What do those (fem.) that are going out of the agora say?

.....

- οἱ μὲν ἔνθα ὄντες σοφοί εἰσιν, οἱ δὲ ἐκεῖ οὐκ.

Those who are here are valiant, but those who are there are not.

.....

◇

- οἱ ἐν κινδύνῳ τελευτᾶν οὐ βούλονται.

Those who are in the battle want to flee.

.....

- τοῖς δὲ στρατιώταις παρήγγειλεν ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι ὡς ἐν Ἄιδου δειπνοποιησόμενους (Plutarch, *Apophthegmata Laconica*).

He said that Socrates was already in the house of Hades.

.....

- οἱ σύμμαχοι ἠναγκάσθησαν ὀψὲ τῆς ἡμέρας ναυμαχῆσαι (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

All the citizens arrived at the assembly late in the day.

.....

- οἱ δὲ διήλλαξαν ἐφ' ὧτε εἰρήνην μὲν ἔχειν ὡς πρὸς ἀλλήλους (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

The Spartans departed on the condition that the Athenians would embark in their ships.

.....

## b) Adjectives or participles involved

Complete the sentences with one of the expressions below:

- ✧ Note that the English words are not the literal translation of the Greek expression.

τί παθῶν / αὐτοῖς ἀνδράσιν / τῷ τυχεόντι / εἴ τις καὶ ἄλλος / ἄσμενος / τί βουλόμενος / αὐτοῖς ἀνδράσιν

- αἱ δὲ ἀπὸ Συρακουσῶν νῆες ἅπασαι ἐάλωσαν [men and all] .....  
(Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἦν γὰρ ὁ Κλεώνυμος εὐθύς ἐκ παίδων ἐπίδοξος, [above anybody else] ..... , ἀνὴρ ἔσεσθαι σπουδαῖος (Plutarch, *Agessilaus*).
- [With what purpose] ..... ἦκεις ὡς ἡμᾶς; (Plutarch, *Brutus*).
- καθάπερ εἴρηται, οὐκ ἔστιν πιστεῦσαι [the first one you meet] .....  
(Athenaeus, *Deipnosophistae*).
- κάγῳ τούτων οὐδὲν ἐνθυμούμενος οὐδ' ὑπονοῶν ἐκάθευδον [happily] .....  
(Lysias, *De Caede Eratosthenis*).
- ἀναδησάμενοι ἀπῆγον (τὴν ναῦν) εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον [men and all] .....  
(Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- [Because of what bad experience] ..... ἔργον οὕτως ἀλλόκοτον ἔπραξας;  
(Plutarch, *De Sera Numidis Vindicta*).

## c) Cases of unexpected agreement

In each of the following sentences, state where there is an unusual agreement:

- φασὶ γάρ, ὅτε φωνήεντα ἦν τὰ ζῷα, τὴν οἶν πρὸς τὸν δεσπότην εἰπεῖν ... (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- .....

- τὰ χρήματα ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ ἐστίν.
- .....

- ἔστιν οἱ τὴν ἀκρόπολιν οὐκέτι εἶδον.
- .....

- πάντα τὰ στρατόπηδα διεφθάρη.

- τὰ γὰρ μειράκια τάδε πρὸς ἀλλήλους οἴκοι διαλεγόμενοι θαμὰ ἐπιμέμνηται Σωκράτους καὶ σφόδρα ἐπαινοῦσιν (Plato, *Laches*).

- τὸ πλῆθος οὐκ ἐβουλήθησαν πολεμεῖν.

#### d) The personal construction

1/ Transform these sentences into impersonal construction:

- οὐ δοκῶ σοι ἀληθῆ λέγειν, ὦ Ἴων; (Plato, *Apologia*).

- σύ μοι δοκεῖς ἐπαινέσασθαι καὶ τὸ εὖρημα αὐτοῦ, τὴν ἄμπελον καὶ τὸν οἶνον (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods 18*).  
✧ Zeus is praising everything about his son Dionysus.

- εὐδοκιμῶν δῆλός ἐστι καὶ θαυμαζόμενος (Plutarch, *Septem Sapientium Convivium*).

- ἐλέγετο δὲ ὁ στόλος εἶναι εἰς Πισίδας (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

- ἐλέγετο δὲ τρία καὶ εἴκοσιν ἔτη ἐν τοῖς ἀδύτοις ὑπόγειος ὤκηκέναι (Lucian, *Philopseudeis*).

2/ Transform these sentences into personal construction:

- λέγεται ὅτι ἡ Λυσιστράτη χθὲς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν καταλαβεῖν ἐκέλευσεν.

- ἐλέγετο ὅτι πᾶσαι αἱ κόραι ταύτας τὰς βίβλους ἀνέγνωσαν.

- δῆλόν ἐστιν ὅτι ὁ Περικλῆς σοφώτερός ἐστιν τῶν ἄλλων πολιτῶν.

- δῆλόν ἐστι ὅτι ὑμεῖς ταύτην τὴν βίβλον οὐκ ἀνέγνωτε.
- .....

### e) Idioms with οἷος and ὅσος

Read these sentences and answer the questions:

- ἄρα λέγεις τὰ τοιάδε, **οἷον** πολλοὶ ἐν πολέμῳ βοηθήσαντες ἐταίρω ἢ οἰκείῳ τραύματα ἔλαβον καὶ ἀπέθανον, οἱ δ' οὐ βοηθήσαντες, δέον, ὑγιεῖς ἀπῆλθον; (Plato, *Alcibiades*).
- λιμένας ἔχετε, ὧν ἄνευ οὐχ **οἷόν** τε ναυτικῇ δυνάμει χρῆσθαι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἦγεν [τὸ στράτευμα] ὡς **οἷόν** τε τάχιστα (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- θέμενος δὲ τὰ ὄπλα **ὅσον** τρία ἢ τέτταρα στάδια ἀπὸ τῶν φρουρῶν ἡσυχίαν εἶχεν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

- ▷ In what sentence does οἷον or ὅσον have the meaning of “around”? .....
- ▷ In what sentence does οἷον or ὅσον have the meaning of “being able”? .....
- ▷ In what sentence does οἷον or ὅσον mean “for example”? .....
- ▷ In what sentence does οἷον or ὅσον have the meaning of “as ... as possible”? .....

### f) Idioms of group

For the following sentences, give a translation for the idioms of group highlighted in bold type:

- τὰ τε ἄλλα γὰρ καὶ **τὰ τοῦ πολέμου** διὰ τούτων εὐτυχοῦντες ἠσθάνοντο (Xenophon, *Cynegeticus*).
- .....

- πῶς ἐπανορθώσομεθα **τὰ τῆς πόλεως** καὶ βελτίῳ ποιήσομεν; (Isocrates, *Antidosis*).
- .....

- καλῶς τὰ τῶν θεῶν καὶ **τὰ τῆς τύχης** ἔχει (Euripides, *Phoenissae*).
- .....

- ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτοῖμα αὐτοῖς **τὰ τῆς παρασκευῆς** ἦν, ... (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- .....

- οἱ δὲ Ἀθηναῖοι, ὡς ἦσθοντο **τὰ τῆς ναυμαχίας**, ... (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- .....

- **τὰ τῆς θεοῦ** μὲν πρῶτον ὡς καλῶς ἔχει φροντιστέον μοι (Euripides, *Iphigenia Taurica*).
- .....

- καλῶς **τὰ τῶν θεῶν** καὶ τὰ τῆς τύχης ἔχει (Euripides, *Phoenisae*).
- .....

### g) Strange constructions with a comparative

For the following sentences, give a translation for the idioms highlighted in bold type:

- τοῦτο **βέλτιον** ἐποίησεν ἢ τῆς γνώμης.
- .....

- τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἀναγκάζεσθαι **περαιτέρω τοῦ μετρίου** μηκύνειν τὰς ὁδοὺς χαλεπὸν [ἔστιν] (Xenophon, *Memorabilia*).
- .....

- πολλοὶ ἀπῆλθον **πρωαίτερον τοῦ δέοντος** (Plato, *Theaetetus*).
- .....

### h) Special meaning of the imperfect

1/ Read these sentences and answer the questions:

- οἱ παῖδες, τὸν λῦκον ἰδόντες, ἐξαίφνης **ἔτρεχον** πρὸς τὸν ποταμὸν.

▷ The highlighted imperfect means... a/ were running      b/ started to run      c/ tried to run

- ποῦ ἦν ὁ Περικλῆς; οἱ πολῖται **ἐζήτησαν** αὐτόν.

▷ The highlighted imperfect means... a/ were looking for      b/ started to look for      c/ tried to look for

- ὅτε πάντες μοι ἐπέθεντο, ἐγὼ **ἤμυνόμην**, ἀλλὰ ἠττήθην.

▷ The highlighted imperfect means... a/ was defending myself      b/ started to defend myself  
c/ tried to defend myself

2/ Translate into Greek using an imperfect for the expressions in italics:

- The messengers *started to tell* the matter.
- .....

- The crowd *tried to go* towards the mountain.
- .....

- The children *were playing* in the courtyard.
- .....

### i) Contractions

1/ Contract these pairs of words:

καὶ ἔάν	.....	καὶ εἶτα	.....
τὸ ἔργον	.....	ὁ ἄνθρωπος	.....
καὶ ἐγώ	.....	τὰ ἀληθῆ	.....

2/ Rewrite these contractions as separate words:

κάμέ	.....	κάν (≠ κᾶν)	.....
ἄνθρωπε	.....	ἐγῶμαι	.....
ἐγῶδα	.....	προὔργου	.....
τάργυριον	.....		

3/ Read the following sentences and identify the contractions:

- ὁ μὲν οὖν Κῦρος ἀπὸ Κύρου τοῦ παλαιοῦ τοῦνομα ἔσχεν (Plutarch, *Artaxerxes*).
- κάμῃ τὸν Ἑρμῆν ἀπέστειλεν ὁ Ζεὺς (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods* 20).
- ὀνομάζουσι μέντοι αὐτόν, ὡς ἐγῶμαι, Μέλιτον (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- τὸν γὰρ ἀδελφὸν αὐτῆς ἀποκτείνας ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐβουλεύετο κάκεινῃν ἀνελεῖν (Plutarch, *Artaxerxes*).

### j) Gnomic aorist

Rewrite these sentences changing the verb into the present tense:

- οἱ φυγόντες οὐκ ἐτιμήθησαν ὑπὸ τῶν πολιτῶν.
- .....

- τὰ καλὰ ἀεὶ ἐθαύμασαν οἱ ἄνθρωποι.
- .....



### k) Some other idiomatic uses:

Read these sentences and state the meaning of the expressions highlighted in bold:

- οὐκ ἔσθ' ὅπως ἂν ἐνθάδε μείναιμι (Plato, *Symposium*).  
.....
- οὐκ ἔσθ' ὅπως οὐκ εἶ παράσιτος, φίλτατε (Athenaeus, *Deipnosophistae*).  
.....
- οὐκ ἔσθ' ὅπως οὐκ εἶ σὺ γεννάδας ἀνὴρ (Aristophanes, *Ranae*).  
.....
- ὡς δὲ ἀφίκετο εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον καὶ ἔγνω ὁ Ἀρχίδαμος ὅτι οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι οὐδὲν πω ἐνδώσουσιν, οὕτω δὴ ἄρας τῶ στρατῶ προυχώρει εἰς τὴν γῆν αὐτῶν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).  
.....
- ἐπειδὴ μέντοι ἀντιπαραπλέοντας ἐώρων αὐτούς, οὕτω δὴ ἀναγκάζονται ναυμαχεῖν κατὰ μέσον τὸν πορθμόν (Thucydides, *Historiae*).  
.....

### 3. Verbal expressions

[138]

a/ A series of alternate exercises. In some, you must replace the English expressions with the Greek from the list; in others you must deduce which English expression corresponds to the meanings in bold type:

TO ENJOY GOOD FAME / TO BE / ALMOST / TO MAKE A SPEECH / TO DENY

- οἱ μὲν θεράποντες **ὀλίγου ἐδέησαν** πάντες ἀπολέσθαι (Dionysius Halicarnasensis, *Antiquitates Romanae*).

The idiom means .....

- εὐδοξία δ' ἐστὶν ὅταν τις **εἴ ἀκούῃ** (Diogenes Laertius, *Vitae Philosophorum*).

The idiom means .....

- ἐσιώπων ἐγὼ καὶ ταῦτα **οὕτως ἔχειν** ἡγοῦμην (Lysias, *De Caede Eratosthenis*).

The idiom means .....

- ἐπελθόντες ἐπὶ τὴν σύγκλητον **λόγους ἐποιήσαντο** (Polybius, *Historiae*).

The idiom means .....

- οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται **οὐκ ἔφασαν** ἰέναι (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

The idiom means .....



*πολλοῦ δεῖ / κακὰ ἔλεγον / μέγα φρονεῖς / δίκην δίδωμι / ἀγαθὰ ἐποίουν / οἷός τ' εἰμί*

- [You are arrogant] ..... , ὃ Ἡρα, ὅτι ξύνει τῷ Δί (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods* 16).
- ἀλλὰ [not at all] ..... μάτην ταῦτα γεγονέναι (Plutarch, *De Facie in Orbe Lunae*).
- ἐγὼ γὰρ ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ [pay a penalty] ..... σοι, ἦν ἄν σὺ τάξης (Aristophanes, *Vespae*).
- οὐδὲ γὰρ [I am able] ..... λέγειν ἔγωγε οὐδ' ... (Xenophon, *Cyropaedia*).
- οἱ πολῖται [insulted] ..... τὸν Περικλέα καὶ [treated well] ..... τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγούς.



TO DISDAIN / TO HONOUR / TO CONSIDER IMPORTANT / TO BE ABLE / TO INSULT

- τὸ μὲν πρῶτον **κακῶς ἔλεγον**, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ πληγὰς ἐνέτειναν ἐμοί (Demosthenes, *Or.* 54).

The idiom means .....

- χρόνον μὲν οὖν πολὺν ἐν **τιμῇ** τὸν Γάϊον ἤγε (Plutarch, *Brutus*).

The idiom means .....

- αἰσχρὸν γὰρ μοί ἐστιν ἐκεῖνον **περὶ πλείονος ποιεῖσθαι** ἢ τὴν ὅλην πόλιν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

The idiom means .....

- τὸ μὲν ἀληθὲς οὐκ **ἔχω εἰπεῖν** (Lucian, *Dialogues of the Gods* 20).

The idiom means .....

- **οὐδενὸς ἐποιήσατο** ὁ στρατηγὸς τὴν ἤτταν.

The idiom means .....



*ἐν αἰτία εἶχον / τί παθῶν / ἔπαθεν ὑπό / μέγα λέγε / οἷός τ' ἦν / κακῶς ἀκούειν*

- ἄνθρωπε, [for what reason] ..... ἔργον οὕτως ἀλλόκοτον ἔπραξας; (Plutarch, *De Sera Numinis Vindicta*).
- [To have bad fame] ..... οὐ μέλει θανόντι μοι (Euripides, *Alcestis*).

- τοὺς ἑαυτῶν στρατηγούς αὖθις [they blamed] ..... (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἦκε γὰρ παρ' ἐμὲ Δίφιλος ἔωθεν δακρύων καὶ διηγῆσατό μοι ἃ [was done to him by] ..... σοῦ (Lucian, *Dialogi Meretricii*).
- ὁ δὲ Κρίτων, ἐπειδὴ οὐχ [was able] ..... κατέχειν τὰ δάκρυα, ἐξανέστη (Plato, *Phaedo*).
- ὡγαθέ, ἔφη ὁ Σωκράτης, μὴ [boast!] ..... (Plato, *Phaedo*).



TO BE / TO BE ABLE / TO THINK / TO HAVE IN HIGH ESTEEM / TO USE ALL RESOURCES / TO BE KILLED

- ἄγουσι δ' αὐτὸν ἐν τιμῇ καὶ δύναται μέγιστον ἐν τοῖς κάτω (Lucian, *Menippus*).

The idiom means .....

- οἱ δὲ Ἀθηναῖοι ἀκούοντες ταῦτα ἀθύμως μὲν εἶχον (Xenophon, *Hellenica*)

The idiom means .....

- οὗτος μὲν οὖν δίκαια ἔπαθεν ὕστερον· ἐν Θράκῃ γὰρ παρὰ Σεύθῃ πολυπραγμονῶν τι ἀπέθανεν ὑπὸ Νικάνδρου (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

The idiom means .....

- ἔχω δὲ καὶ τοιαῦτα εἰπεῖν (Lysias, *Pro Milite*).

The idiom means .....

- λέξατε οὖν πρὸς με τί ἐν νῶ ἔχετε (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

The idiom means .....

- ἐθέλω δ' ἐπὶ πᾶν ἰέναι μετὰ τῶνδ' (Aristophanes, *Lysistrata*).

The idiom means .....



*ἔπαθεν ὑπὸ / ἐμποδὸν ἐστίν / ἡσυχίαν ἄγειν / τὸν πόλεμον ἐποίησαντο / πολλοῦ δεῖ / ὀλίγου ἐδέησεν*

- ἐκείνους μὲν [to remain quiet] ..... ἐκέλευσεν, αὐτὸς δὲ κατέβαινεν εἰς τὸ πεδῖον (Plutarch, *Lucullus*).
- ἡ πόλις [was on the brink of] ..... ἐκ βάρθρων ἀναιρεθῆναι (Dionysius Halicarnasensis, *Antiquitates Romanae*).
- τί νῦν [prevents] ..... ἡμῖν βουλομένοις σχολάζειν μετ' ἀλλήλων; (Plutarch, *Pyrrhus*).

- ... ὡς θεοὺς οὐ νομίζω· ἀλλὰ [it is not so] ..... (Plato, *Apologia*).
- πολλά δι' αὐτὸν ὁ δῆμος εἶ [was treated by] ..... τοῦ βασιλέως (Plutarch, *Demetrius*).
- ὥσπερ τι δεινὸν ἐκ τούτου παθόντες ὀργῆ τε [they waged war] .....  
(Dio Cassius, *Historiae Romanae*).

b/ Translate into Greek using the idiomatic expressions seen in the previous sentences for the parts in italics:

- I *give a lot of importance* to books.

.....

- That soldier *almost* died in the battle.

.....

- We *are* really *far away* from knowing everything.

.....

- Pericles *enjoyed good fame* among the Athenians.

.....

- I *can* cross the river.

.....

- The citizens *insulted* the messenger.

.....

- They *have* the politicians *in high esteem*.

.....



**ALIA****a) Elementary rules for accentuation**

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Position of the accent
3. Types of accent
4. Position and kind of accent
5. Changes in the accent
6. General tendencies
7. Enclitics

**b) The dual**

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. The article
3. Declensions
4. Pronouns
5. Verbal forms

**c) Homeric dialect**

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Article
3. Declensions
4. Adjectives
5. Pronouns
6. Prepositions
7. Spelling
8. Suffixes
9. Verbal forms
10. Conjunctions
11. Particle **κῆν**

**d) Words that are easily confused**

1. Non-verbal forms
2. Verbal forms

## a) Elementary rules for accentuation

### 1. (unapplied in this book)

### 2. Position of the accent

[139]

Place the acute accent ( ' ) on the requested syllable:

On the antepenult:      θαλαττα	On the ultima:            ναυτικον
On the penult:            ἔργον	On the antepenult:      μεγεθος
On the ultima:            ἀδελφη	On the penult:            δικη
On the penult:            μαχη	On the antepenult:      οικημα
On the antepenult:      στρατοπεδον	On the penult:            γενος

### 3. Types of accent

[140]

Place the requested accent on the requested syllable:

ἐπειδη      [grave, ultima]	μαλιστα      [acute, antepenult]
ἔλειν      [circumflex, ultima]	ἀνεστελλοντο      [acute, antepenult]
λογικον      [acute, ultima]	πολυ      [grave, ultima]
ὀρμησαντες      [acute, antepenult]	ἦσαν      [circumflex, penult]
χειμωνος      [circumflex, penult]	στρατιαν      [acute, ultima]
ἡμερα      [acute, penult]	ἀδικοιντο      [circumflex, penult]
εἰσβολαι      [grave, ultima]	

### 4. Position and kind of accent

[141]

▷ An acute accent can be...

a/ only on the ultima      b/ on any of the last three      c/ only on the penult      d/ never on the ultima

▷ A grave accent can be...

a/ only on the ultima      b/ on any of the last three      c/ only on the penult      d/ never on the ultima

▷ A circumflex accent can be...

a/ only on the ultima or the penult    b/ on any of the last three    c/ only on the penult    d/ never on the ultima

## 5. Changes in the accent

[142]

In the first place a word with its accent is given. Later, we find the same word without the accent and either in another case or with another word following it. Write the accent for the same word again but taking any possible change into account (but it may well be that there is no change):

✧ Example: καλή / καλη αγορά > καλή αγορά

τόν / τον αἰθέρα > .....

νεανίας / νεανίου > .....

διδάσκαλος / διδασκαλου > .....

σοφαί / σοφαι γυναῖκες > .....

πρός / προς τὴν > .....

δηλός / δηλου > .....

πομπαῖς / πομπαις καὶ > .....

ἄξιος / ἄξιου > .....

ἦλθον / ἦλθομεν > .....

## 6. General tendencies

[143]

a/ Write the accents on the genitives (singular or plural) of these nouns of the 1<sup>st</sup> declension:

ἀγορά > ἀγορας                                  ἀρετή > ἀρετης                                  νεανίας > νεανιων

γνώμη > γνωμων                                  ναύτης > ναυτων

b/ Write the accents on the nominative and dative plurals for these nouns of the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> declensions:

θεά            Nom. pl. θεαι            Dat. pl. θεαις                                  ἰατρός        Nom. pl. ἰατροι        Dat. pl. ἰατροις

συμφορά    Nom. pl. συμφοραι    Dat. pl. συμφοραις                                  ποταμός     Nom. pl. ποταμοι     Dat. pl. ποταμοις

c/ Write the accents on these accusative plurals:

Nom. pl. ναῦται        Acc. pl. ναυτας        (1<sup>st</sup> declension)                                  Nom. pl. θώρακες    Acc. pl. θωρακας    (3<sup>rd</sup> declension)

Nom. pl. γνώμαι        Acc. pl. γνωμας        (1<sup>st</sup> declension)                                  Nom. pl. κήρυκες     Acc. pl. κηρυκας     (3<sup>rd</sup> declension)

Nom. pl. ἀσέβειαι     Acc. pl. ἀσεβειας     (1<sup>st</sup> declension)



**7. Enclitics****[144]**

In the first place we will find a word with its accent. After the dash we find the same word again but followed by the enclitic τε. Write the necessary accentuation on the word (it may well be that there is no change):

νυκτὸς / νυκτος τε

ἀγορά / ἀγορα τε

λέγοιμι / λεγοιμι τε

κομίζουσι / κοιμιζουσι τε

ὀπλῖται / ὀπιται τε

ἀγῶνας / ἀγωνας τε

ἀκούω / ἀκουω τε

πλῆθος / πληθος τε

▷ How would you accentuate the combination οὐκ ἔστιν ?

.....

b) The dual

**1. (unapplied in this book)****2. The article**

[145]

Write the article in the dual as requested:

Gen. fem. ....	Dat. fem. ....
Nom. masc. ....	Nom. fem. ....
Acc. neuter ....	Gen. neuter ....
Dat. masc. ....	

**3. Declensions**

[146]

a/ Write the requested endings for the dual:

	<i>1<sup>st</sup> declension</i>	<i>2<sup>nd</sup> declension</i>	<i>3<sup>rd</sup> declension</i>
Nom.	.....	.....	.....
Voc.	.....	.....	.....
Acc.	.....	.....	.....
Gen.	.....	.....	.....
Dat.	.....	.....	.....

b/ Decline these words in the dual with the article:

	ἀγορά, -ᾶς	ἄγγελος, -ου	παῖς, παιδός
Nom.	-	-	-
Voc.	-	-	-
Acc.	-	-	-
Gen.	-	-	-
Dat.	-	-	-

c/ Read these sentences:

- ἐστὸν δὲ δύο λόφοι ἡ Ἰδομενὴ ὕψελώ (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

- εἰσὶν δὲ οὗτοι οἱ οὐδὲν ἄλλο οἰόμενοι εἶναι ἢ οὗ ἂν δύνωνται ἀπρὶξ **τοῖν χειροῖν** λαβέσθαι (Plato, *Theaetetus*).
- ἐὰν δὲ **τοῖν δυοῖν ὄροι**ν τρίτον προσγένηται ἐξῆς, αὐτὰ μὲν τρία ἔσται (Plato, *Parmenides*).
- ἐν νῶ ἔχω **τοῖν ἀνδροῖν** παραδοῦναι ἐμαυτόν (Plato, *Euthydemus*).
- οἱ Κορίνθιοι **ταῖν θεᾶν** ἐπωνόμασαν (Plutarch, *Timoleon*).

d/ Write in dual the words that are given in brackets in plural:

- ἀράμενος ..... πέτρον μέγαν ὁ Ἄμομφάρετος καὶ καταβαλὼν πρὸ τῶν ποδῶν τοῦ Παιουσανίου, ... (Plutarch, *Aristides*). [ταῖς χερσὶ]
- ἐγὼ μὲν γὰρ φημι χρῆναί σε πάντων ἀφέμενον τῶν ἄλλων δυοῖν ..... προσέχειν τὸν νοῦν (Isocrates, *Ad Archidamum*). [τούτοις]
- φαίνεται μοι, ὥσπερ καὶ ὀνομάζεται δύο ταῦτα ὀνόματα, πόλεμός τε καὶ στάσις, οὕτω καὶ εἶναι δύο, ὄντα ἐπὶ δυοῖν ..... (Plato, *Respublica*). [τισι διαφοραῖς]
- σκέψασθε, πρὸς θεῶν, τὴν τύχην δυοῖν ..... (Sophocles, *Aíax*). [βροτῶν]

#### 4. Pronouns

[147]

a/ Write these pronouns in the requested form of the dual:

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>
αὐτή	.....	.....	.....	.....
οὗτος	.....	.....	.....	.....
ἦδε	.....	.....	.....	.....
τόδε	.....	.....	.....	.....
ἐγώ	.....	.....	.....	.....
σύ	.....	.....	.....	.....

b/ Read these sentences and identify the dual forms (pronouns or not) in them:

- κυρία δ' ἦδ' ἡμέρα εἰ χρὴ θανεῖν νῶ (Euripides, *Orestes*).
- αὐτοῖν δὲ τούτοις οὐδεὶς ἔστιν ὅστις οὐκ ἂν φήσειεν ... (Isocrates, *Antidosis*).
- Νῶ δ' εἰσίσωμεν, ἵνα προσεύξῃ τὸν θεόν (Aristophanes, *Plutus*).

- φέρε δὴ, τούτοις τοῖν τέχναις ἡμῖν τὸν βασιλικὸν ἐν ποτέρῳ θετέον; (Plato, *Politicus*).

c/ Aristophanes' lines about what they teach in Socrates' school. Underline the six dual forms:

- εἶναι παρ' αὐτοῖς φασὶν ἄμφω τῷ λόγῳ, τὸν κρείττον', ὅστις ἐστί, καὶ τὸν ἥττονα. τούτοις τὸν ἕτερον τοῖν λόγοις, τὸν ἥττονα, νικᾶν λέγοντά φασι τὰδικώτερα. (Aristophanes, *Nubes*).

## 5. Verbal forms

[148]

Underline the dual forms, including the verbal ones, in these sentences:

- Λυσίμαχος καὶ Μελησίππος εἰς συμβουλήν παρεκαλεσάτην ἡμᾶς περὶ τοῖν υἱέοις (Plato, *Laches*).
- Μήδεια ἔχει γούνα ἤδη τὸ ξίφος, τῷ δ' ἀθλίῳ καθήσθον γελῶντε, μηδὲν τῶν μελλόντων εἰδότε, καὶ ταῦτα ὁρῶντε τὸ ξίφος ἐν ταῖν χεροῖν (Lucian, *De Domo*). ✧ Lucian tells us of the moment when Medea is about to kill her two sons.
- οὐκοῦν ἐν γε σώματι περὶ δύο παθήματα τούτω δύο τέχνα τινὲ ἐγενέσθην; (Plato, *Sophista*).
- ἀλλὰ πίθεσθ' ἄμφω δὲ νεωτέρῳ ἐστὸν ἐμεῖο (Homer, *Iliad*).
- τῆς δὴ ταλασιουργικῆς δύο τμήματά ἐσθον, καὶ τούτοις ἐκάτερον ἅμα δυοῖν πεφύκατον τέχναις μέρη (Plato, *Politicus*).

c) Homeric dialect

**1. (unapplied in this book)**
**2. Article**

[149]

Rewrite the article (that in Homer usually has the value of a demonstrative pronoun) in its Attic form:

τῆς ἐπιτέτραπται ... .....

τοῖο δ' Ἀπόλλων εὐξαμένου ἤκουσεν. ....

τάων ἐκ πασέων ... .....

τοῖσι δ' ἀνιστάμενος ... .....

τοὶ δ' ὄκα θεῶ ἑκατόβμην ἔστησαν. ....

**3. Declensions**

[150]

Rewrite the words in bold in their Attic form:

 Μῆνιν ἄειδε θεὰ **Πηληϊάδεω Ἀχιλῆος** οὐλομένην .....

 μάχη **πεδίοιο** .....

 αὐτοὺς δὲ ἐλώρια τεῦχε **κόνεσσιν οἰωνοῖσί τε** .....

 μεσσηγὺς Σιμόντος ἰδὲ **Ξάνθοιο ῥοάων** .....

 ἄριστος ἐνὶ **Θρήκεσσι** τέτυκτο .....

 ἔ**πεα** πτερόεντα προσηύδα .....

 φάος **ἠελίοιο** .....

**4. Adjectives**

[151]

Rewrite the words in bold in their Attic form:

πολέες δ' ἀμφ' αὐτὸν ἐταῖροι .....

πολέος δέ οἱ ἄξιος ἔσται .....

 Ζεὺς ἤθελ' θάνατον **πολέεσσι** γενέσθαι .....

 πτωχῶ **βέλτερόν** ἐστί κατὰ πόλιν ἢ ἐ κατ' ἀκροῦς .....

πολύ **φέρτερόν** ἐστὶν .....

Ἰαχαιῶν **φέρτατός** ἐσσι .....

## 5. Pronouns

[152]

Rewrite the words in bold in their Attic form:

κέκλυτε νῦν καὶ **ἐμεῖο** .....

**ἄμμες** ἐπαυσάμεθα πολέμοιο .....

**τύνη** δ' ἔστηκας .....

οὐ **σευ** ἔγωγε σκυζομένης ἀλέγω .....

ἀλλὰ πύθεσθε καὶ **ἄμμες** .....

πατὴρ **τεός** εἰμι .....

Ἰαπόλλωνι ἄνακτι, **τόν** ἠὔκομος τέκε Λητώ .....

πονήσομαι **ὄττεό** με χρή .....

**τεῦ** δάμαθ' ἴκωμαι ἀνδρῶν; .....

**τέων** αὐτε βροτῶν ἐς γαῖαν ἰκάνω; .....

## 6. Prepositions

[153]

Rewrite the words in bold in their Attic form:

ἄκρην **κάκ** κορυφήν .....

ποταμοὺς δ' ἔτρεψε νέεσθαι **κάρ** ρόν .....

σεο πατρός **ἐνὶ** μεγάροισιν .....

ἔστι δέ μοι μάλα πολλά, τὰ **κάλλιπον** ἐνθάδε ἔρρων .....

ἐρύσσασθαι **ποτὶ** Ἴλιον ἠνεμόεσσαν Τρῶες ἐπιθύουσι .....

ἔβη θεὸς **ἄμ** πόνον ἀνδρῶν .....

## 7. Spelling

[154]

Rewrite the words in bold in their Attic form:

τόδε **ἴδμεν** ἐνὶ φρεσίν .....

τοὶ ἐγὼν ἐρίηρος ἐταῖρος **ἔσσομαι** .....

ἢ οἱ **γούνατ'** ἔκυσσε καὶ ἔλλαβε χειρὶ γενείου .....

οὐ τοι ἀπόβλητον ἔπος ἔσσεται ὅττι κεν εἴπω .....

**ὅττι** τάχιστα .....

## 8. Suffixes

[155]

Give a translation for the words in bold:

ἠϋτε βοῦς **ἀγέληφι** μέγ' ἔξοχος .....

χείμαρροι ποταμοὶ **κατ' ὄρεσφι** βέοντες .....

**βίηφι** δὲ φέρτεροι ἦσαν .....

ἦλθε δ' Ἀθήνη **οὐρανόθεν** .....

ἐλθὼν **τηλόθεν** ἐξ ἀπίης γαίης .....

αὐτὸν δὲ κλαίοντα ἐπὶ νῆας ἀφήσω **ἀγορήθεν** .....

**οὐρανόθι**, Ἰλιόθι .....

## 9. Verbal forms

[156]

Rewrite the words in bold in their Attic form:

εἰ δὲ σὺ καρτερός **έσσει** .....

αἰὲν ἀριστεύειν καὶ ὑπείροχον **έμμεναι** ἄλλων .....

φημι θεάων **έμμεν** ἀρίστη .....

αὐτοὺς δὲ ἐλώρια **τεῦχε** κύνεσσιν .....

Τρώων **ρήξε** φάλαγγα .....

τὸν δὲ σκότος ὅσσε **κάλυπεν** .....

ᾠς **φάτο** .....

Τρώων πόλιν **είσορόωντες** .....

μέλλεις δὲ σὺ **ἴδμεναι** .....

ἀλλ' ἔκ τοι **έρέω** [combine] .....

**ἀπό** δὲ χλαῖναν **βάλε** [combine] .....

## 10. Conjunctions

[157]

Rewrite the words in bold in their Attic form:

μίμνετε πάντες εἰς ὃ **κεν** ἄστν μέγα Πριάμοιο ἔλωμεν .....

ἐνθά με κῦμ' ἀπόερσε **πάρος** τάδε ἔργα γενέσθαι .....

**ἦμος** δ' ἠέλιος κατέδν .....

ἀλλὰ σοὶ ἐσπόμεθ' **ὄφρα** σὺ χαίρης .....

## 11. Particle κέν

[158]

Replace the particle κέν with the particle ἄν and read the sentences (they may be just part of a sentence):

εἰ **κεν** θάνατον φύγοιμεν

✧ But would we really have this particle here in Attic? Why?

.....  
 ἄλλοι τε Τρῶες μέγα **κεν** κεχαροῖατο θυμῶ

νῦν γάρ **κεν** ἔλοι πόλιν εὐρυάγνιαν Τρώων

οὐ τοι ἀπόβλητ' ἐστὶ θεῶν ἐρικυδέα δῶρα ὅσα **κεν** αὐτοὶ δῶσιν

## General exercises

In this selection of whole verses (not disconnected bits as in the previous exercises), the Homeric forms have been highlighted in bold. Read them and make sure you know what these forms mean:

- **ἦμος** δ' ἠριγένεια φάνη ῥοδοδάκτυλος Ἥώς,  
**τῆμος** ἄρ' ἀμφὶ πυρὴν κλυτοῦ Ἴκτορος ἔγρετο λαός.
- ἡμεῖς δ' ἀθρόοι ᾧδε κατὰ στρατὸν εὐρὺν Ἀχαιῶν  
 ἴομεν **ὄφρα κε** θᾶσσον ἐγείρομεν ὄξυν Ἴφρα.
- ὡς εἰπὼν ὄτρυνε **πάρος** μεμαυῖαν Ἀθήνην,  
**βῆ** δὲ κατ' Οὐλύμποιο καρῆνων ἀΐξασα.
- εὖ γὰρ δὴ τότε **ἴδμεν** ἐνὶ φρεσίν.
- Ἄτρεΐδη, τί με ταῦτα διείρειαι; οὐδέ τί σε χρή  
**ἴδμεναι**, οὐδέ ...



- ἀλλ' ὄδ' ἀνὴρ ἐθέλει περὶ πάντων **ἔμμεναι** ἄλλων,  
πάντων μὲν **κρατέειν** ἐθέλει, **πάντεσσι** δ' ἀνάσσειν.
- εἰ μάλα καρτερός **ἔσσι**, θεός που σοὶ τό γ' ἔδωκεν.
- ἧ μὴ τίς σ' αὐτὸν κτείνει δόλφ **ἢ βίηφι**;
- οἶδα γὰρ **ὅττι** κακοὶ μὲν ἀποίχονται πολέμοιο.
- καὶ τὸν μὲν **μετὰ χερσὶν** ἐρύσατο Φοῖβος Ἰαπόλλων.
- **ἄμ** πεδίον συλήσετε τεθνηῶτας.
- ὡς δὴ ἐγὼ γ' ὄφελον μάκαρός νύ **τεν ἔμμεναι** υἱὸς  
**ἀνέρος**, ...
- ὦ μοι ἐγὼ, **τέων** αὐτὲ βροτῶν ἐς γαῖαν ἰκάνω;
- τὼ κεν δὴ πάλαι **ἄμμε** ἐπαυσάμεθα πτολέμοιο.
- ... ὕστερον αὐτὲ μαχησόμεθ' εἰς ὃ **κε** δαίμων  
**ἄμμε** διακρίνη, ...
- φεῦγε μάλ' εἴ τοι θυμὸς ἐπέσσυται, οὐδέ σ' ἔγωγε  
λίσσομαι εἵνεκ' **ἐμεῖο** μένειν' ...
- Ζεῦ πάτερ οὐ τις **σεῖο** θεῶν ὀλοώτερος ἄλλος.
- νῦν δ' εἶμι Φθίην δ', ἐπεὶ ἧ πολὺ **φέρτερόν** ἐστὶν  
οἴκαδ' **ἴμεν** ...
- ... **πολέες** δ' ἐν νηϊ ἐκάστη  
Ἄρκάδες ἄνδρες ἔβαινον ἐπιστάμενοι πολεμίζειν.

## d) Words that are easily confused

### 1. Non-verbal forms

[159]

Read these sentences, noting the meaning of the words in bold type as well as the similarities within each group:

- ἔλυσεν **αἰνόν** ἄχος ἀπ' ὀμμάτων ἼΑρης (Sophocles, *Aiāx*).

- **αἴνως** δὲ πόλιν τάνδε πελασγῶν ἐχέτω (Aeschylus, *Supplīces*).

◇

- Ἀλκιβιάδης δὲ τοῖς ὄρκοις οὐκ ἐτύγχανε παρών, **ἀλλὰ** περὶ Σηλυμβρίαν ἦν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*),

- ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ **ἄλλα** πολλὰ (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

◇

- **ἄρα** οὐχ οὕτω; (Plato, *Euthyphro*).

- ταῦτ' **ἄρα**, ὡς ἔοικεν, μισεῖται τε ὑπὸ τῶν θεῶν καὶ φιλεῖται (Plato, *Euthyphro*).

◇

- Ζεὺς **αὐτός** πολλὰς ἐπωνυμίας ἔχει.

- **αὐτός** μὲν περὶ ἦλθεν εἰς Σηστόν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

- ὀνομάζουσι μέντοι **αὐτόν**, ὡς ἐγῶμαι, Μέλητον (Plato, *Euthyphro*).

- οὐ μέντοι ἴσως βιάσεται **αὐτόν** (Plato, *Phaedo*).

◇

- τὴν γε **βασιλείαν** ἦν ἤρξε Κρόνος πολλῶν ἀκηκόαμεν (Plato, *Politicus*).

- Κύρω **βασιλεία** ἦν καὶ παράδεισος μέγας (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

- - τίς ἐστὶν ἡ **βασιλεία**; - καλλίστη κόρη (Aristophanes, *Aves*).

◇

- **διὰ** τὴν προδοσίαν ἀπέφυγεν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

- τὸν δ' Ἑλένη μύθοισιν ἀμείβετο **διὰ** γυναικῶν (Homer, *Iliad*).



- εἰ τοῦτο ποιεῖς, μῶρος εἶ.



- ὁ Σώκρατες, οὗτος μέντοι ὁ ἔπαινός ἐστιν καλός (Plato, *Laches*).
- ὁ ἐποίησας ἔπαινόν ἐστιν.



- Κῦρος δὲ Φαρναβάζω εἶπεν ἢ παραδοῦναι τοὺς πρέσβεις ἑαυτῷ ἢ μὴ οἴκαδέ πω ἀποπέμψαι (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἦ που, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, ἀγνοεῖται ὑπὸ τῶν πολλῶν ὅπη ποτὲ ὀρθῶς ἔχει (Plato, *Euthyphro*).



- ὁ γε ἀποθανὼν πελάτης τις ἦν ἐμός (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- ἐγὼ δ' ἦν τοῦτο δρᾶς ἀντάσομαι (Aristophanes, *Ecclesiazusae*).



- καλὴ θεά ἐγένετο (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).
- ὦ σεμνοτάτη βασιλεία θεά, πότνι' Εἰρήνη (Aristophanes, *Pax*).



- συμπάντες δὲ ἐγένοντο τετρακισχίλιοι καὶ μύριοι (Thucydides, *Historiae*).
- ἔτι δ' Ἀρμόδιος καὶ Ἀριστογείτων καὶ Μιλιτιάδης καὶ μύριοι ὅσοι (Diogenes Laertius, *Vitae Philosophorum*).



- εἰσὶ μὲν γὰρ οἱ κηδόμενοι τῶν πολιτῶν λέγουσιν ἅ λέγουσιν, εἰσὶν δὲ καὶ οἴους σὺ λέγεις (Plato, *Gorgias*).
- Πάτροκλος δὲ οἱ οἴος ἐναντίος ἦστο σιωπῇ (Homer, *Ilias*).



- ἔφευγον οἱ ἄλλοι πρὸς τὸ ὄρος (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ἐπεὶ δὲ διήλθε Λυδίαν καὶ Φρυγίαν, παρεγενήθη πρὸς τοὺς ὄρους τῆς Κιλικίας (Diodorus Siculus, *Bibliotheca Historica*).



- ἰδόντες δὲ ἀλλήλους οὐδὲ τέτταρα πλέθρα ἀπέχοντας, τὸ μὲν πρῶτον ἔστησαν ἀμφοτέρω (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ὁ τε Παισαυσίας οὐ προσῆγεν οὐδὲ ἐμάχετο (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

- οἱ δὲ Ἄχαιοι πεποιηκέναι τε οὐδὲν ἐνόμιζον αὐτόν, ὅτι πόλιν οὐδεμίαν προσειλήφει **οὔτε** ἐκοῦσαν **οὔτε** ἄκουσαν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- οἱ δ' Ἀθηναῖοι ἠπόρουν τί χρὴ ποιεῖν, **οὔτε** νεῶν **οὔτε** συμμάχων αὐτοῖς ὄντων **οὔτε** σίτου (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- ◇
- οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Φαρνάβαζος, ἀπλῶς ὑμῖν ἀποκρίνομαι ἅπερ ποιήσω (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).
- οὐκοῦν ἔγωγε, ᾧ Σώκρατες, ἔφη, ἔχω παρὰ ταῦτα ἄλλο τι λέγειν οὐδέ πη ἀπιστεῖν τοῖς λόγοις (Plato, *Phaedo*).
- ◇
- καὶ ἐγώ τοι, ᾧ φίλε ἐταῖρε, **ταῦτα** γινώσκων μαθητῆς ἐπιθυμῶ γενέσθαι σός (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- οἱ ἔπειτα γινόμενοι **ταῦτά ταῦτα** περὶ αὐτοῦ νομίζουσι (Plato, *Phaedrus*).
- οὐ γὰρ **ταῦτά** οἶμαι ἐστὶν τά τε δίκαια καὶ τὰ συμφέροντα (Plato, *Alcibiades*).
- ◇
- ἔστιν δὲ δὴ τῶν οἰκείων **τις** ὁ τεθνεώς (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- **τίς** ἢ ὠφελία τοῖς θεοῖς τυγχάνει οὔσα ἀπὸ τῶν δώρων ὧν παρ' ἡμῶν λαμβάνουσιν; (Plato, *Euthyphro*).
- ◇
- Χίμαρρος ἠγεῖτο, πολεμιστῆς μὲν ἀνὴρ **ὠμός** (Plutarch, *Mulierum Virtutes*).
- διὰ τί χαλεπώτερον [ἐστὶ] τὰ μακρὰ ξύλα ἀπ' ἄκρου φέρειν ἐπὶ τῷ **ὄμφῳ** ἢ κατὰ τὸ μέσον, ἴσου τοῦ βάρους ὄντος; (Aristoteles, *Mechanica*).
- ◇
- ἡ σελήνη ἀπὸ τοῦ ἡλίου ἔχει τὸ **φῶς** (Plato, *Cratylus*).
- τί δράσεις; πότερα φάσανον χερὶ λαβοῦσα **φῶτα** βάρβαρον κτενεῖς ἢ φαρμάκοισιν; (Euripides, *Hecuba*).

## 2. Verbal forms

[160]

Read these sentences, noting the meaning of the verbs in bold type as well as the similarities within each group, and write the verb from which each form comes:

- **αἶρεῖ** τῇ πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ Ποτιδανίαν καὶ τῇ δευτέρᾳ Κροκύλειον (Thucydides, *Historiae*).

It comes from the verb .....

- πλήρες δ' ἐν χεροῖν λαβῶν δέπας  
πάγχρυσον **αἶρει** χειρὶ παῖς Ἀχιλλέως (Euripides, *Hecuba*).

It comes from the verb .....



- **δει** οὖν ὑμᾶς, ὥσπερ καὶ τιμῶν μεθέξετε, οὕτω καὶ τῶν κινδύνων μετέχειν (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

It comes from the verb .....

- ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος αὐτὸν ἔπαισεν, **ἔδησε** δ' οὐ (Xenophon, *Anabasis*).

It comes from the verb .....



- συμβουλευέτε τὰ ἄριστα ὑμῖν δοκοῦντα **εἶναι** (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

It comes from the verb .....

- ὁ δὲ αὐτοὺς εἰς Λακεδαιμόνα ἐκέλευεν **ιέναι** (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

It comes from the verb .....

- οἰμῶζας δ' ἔπος **εἶναι** δυσθρήνητον ἐβουλήθη (< Sophocles, *Antigone*).

It comes from the verb .....

- νομίζω ἀπὸ Βυβλίνων ὄρων Νεῖλον **ιέναι** σεπτὸν εὐποτον ῥέος (< Aeschylus, *Prometheus Vincetus*).

It comes from the verb .....



- πᾶσαν ὑμῖν τὴν ἀλήθειαν **ἐρῶ** (Plato, *Apologia*).

It comes from the verb .....

- πότερον ἔχων αὐτὸ οὐ ἐπιθυμεῖ τε καὶ **ἐρᾷ**, εἴτα ἐπιθυμεῖ τε καὶ ἐρᾷ, ἢ οὐκ ἔχων; (Plato, *Symposium*).

It comes from the verb .....



- ἀλλ', ὦ μακάριε Φαῖδρε, γελοῖος **ἔσομαι** παρ' ἀγαθὸν ποιητὴν ιδιώτης αὐτοσχεδιάζων περὶ τῶν αὐτῶν (Plato, *Phaedrus*).

It comes from the verb .....

- χάριν γε **εἴσομαι**, ἐὰν ἀκούητε (Plato, *Protagoras*).

It comes from the verb .....



- ἐμοῦ γὰρ πολλοὶ κατήγοροι γεγονασί πρὸς ὑμᾶς καὶ πάλαι πολλὰ **ἤδη** ἔτη (Plato, *Apologia*).

It comes from the verb .....

- ἐμαυτῷ γὰρ συνήδη οὐδὲν ἐπισταμένῳ ὡς ἔπος εἰπεῖν, τούτους δὲ γ' **ἤδη** ὅτι εὐρήσοιμι πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ ἐπιστάμενους (Plato, *Apologia*).

It comes from the verb .....



- εἰς τοσοῦτον ἀμαθίας **ἦκα** ὥστε οὐδὲν οἶδα.

It comes from the verb .....

- ἤδη τὰς βίβλους αὐτῷ **ἦκα**.

It comes from the verb .....



- αἱ γὰρ τριήρεις τῶν Ἀθηναίων πολλῶ πλείους **ἦσαν** (Xenophon, *Hellenica*).

It comes from the verb .....

- οἱ πολῖται **ἦσαν** τοὺς στρατιώτας νικήσαντας.

It comes from the verb .....



- εὖ **ἴσθι** ὅτι οὐχ ἐκὼν ἐξαμαρτάνω ἀλλ' ἀμαθία τῇ ἐμῇ (Plato, *Phaedrus*).

It comes from the verb .....

- εὐτυχῶν μὴ **ἴσθι** ὑπερήφανος (Diogenes Laertius, *Vitae Philosophorum*).

It comes from the verb .....



- **μέλλω** γὰρ ὑμᾶς διδάξειν ὅθεν μοι ἡ διαβολὴ γέγονεν (Plato, *Apologia*).

It comes from the verb .....

- πῶς δ' οὐ **μέλλει**, ὦ μακάριε, τὸ σοφώτατον κάλλιον φαίνεσθαι; (Plato, *Protagoras*).

It comes from the verb .....

- εἴμι' Ὀδυσσεὺς Λαερτιάδης, ὃς πᾶσι δόλοισιν  
ἀνθρώποισι μέλω (Homer, *Odyssea*).

It comes from the verb .....

- εἰ δὲ νεώτερος ὁ διδάσκων ἔσται οὐδὲν μοι μέλει (Plato, *Laches*).

It comes from the verb .....



- Ἴπποκράτης γὰρ παρ' ἐμὲ ἀφικόμενος οὐ πείσεται ἄπερ ἂν ἔπαθεν ἄλλω τῷ συγγενόμενος τῶν σοφιστῶν  
(Plato, *Protagoras*).

It comes from the verb .....

- οὗτος ὁ μαθητὴς αἰεὶ σοι πείσεται, ὦ Σώκρατες.

It comes from the verb .....